

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00359965 1

St. Juliana.

~~Period.~~
~~Printed.~~
eng.

492
73

þe *Liſlade*

///

of

St. Iuliana,

FROM

TWO OLD ENGLISH MANUSCRIPTS OF 1230 A.D.

WITH

Renderings into Modern English,

BY THE

REV. O. COCKAYNE, AND EDMUND BROCK.

EDITED BY THE

REV. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A.,

ST. JOHNS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE;

EDITOR OF LEECHDOMS STARCRAFT AND WORTCUNNING, ETC. ETC.

38037
6/10/96.

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY, BY
N. TRÜBNER & CO., 8 AND 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXXII.

PR
1119
AZ
no. 51

51.

HERTFORD :
PRINTED BY STEPHEN AUSTIN & SONS.

P R E F A C E.

It had been my purpose, in editing þe following text, to take some vivacious notice of any criticisms on þe last treatise I had undertaken for þe Early English Text Society; but so long a time has elapsed since "Hali Meidenhad" appeared, þat þe public interest in attack and defense, lunge and parry, must have long since died away. Whatever I say, þerefore, must be sobered down into temperance and calm; must be simply þe result of þe toil of þe student and translator.

My critics made some easy and cheap fun out of þ and ƿ: none of þem seemed to have any distinct notions on þe subject. I have lately, elsewhere, stated facts; þat þe earliest MSS. favour þe ƿ, and use it in combinations of all kinds, employing it, wiþ few exceptions, all ƿrough a volume, and seeming to forget þ almost entirely: later writings use þ more by far þan þe ƿer form. Much learning arises in reviews out of moþer wit; to supply þe void of known truþ, a certain inborn þeory is developed; and because Mr. Novice ƿinks þe Saxons ought to have made a difference, between þorn in ƿick, and þorn in þæt, he holds opinion þat þey did. Þen some bold assertor tells us þat all deviations from his doctrine are corruptions of þe Norman scribes, as if Frenchmen had written for King Ælfred. Now I hold þat in our modern times it is very difficult to separate þe sounds, þe utterance in some instances is distinctly discernible, but in ƿers þe two change places easily. It is to be concluded þat, using þe characters indifferently, þe English writers held þe sounds to be identical.

An Edinburgh reviewer, a known writer, finds what he considers a mistranslation on page 36 of "Hali Meidenhad." "Þe hound at þe hide" is, to his ears, not sense. When a householder kills a sheep or ox, þe hide is valuable eþer for

use or sale; it stinks; it is þefore ðrown over þe palings, or over a pole outside þe house: a hungry dog, a lean dirty dog, ranging about, smells flesh, or guts, or blood, or hide, and coming, pulls at, and drags þe reserved skin: and þat does it no good; broomsticks and stones drive away þe ruffian. "But," says he, "Hude is a well-known word in Anglo-Saxon, signifying Hearth." Some trace of Hude as Heorð may be found at p. 223 of þe folio edition of þe "Laws and Institutes," but þe intervention of a friend and þe courtesy of þe reviewer himself have made me aware that it is þe Scottish usage which makes þe word "well known," and þat þis sense is recorded by Jamieson, as any may see.

Anoþer gentleman of dialectic fame writes about Steap: and þe greater part of his remarks may be summed up by observing þe Latin *Altus*, *high* or *deep*; similarly we might understand steap. He quotes Percy Folio, vol. i. p. 467:

Heere in this ground deepe
is a water strong and steepe.

Such a river seems to me to run at a steep gradient, or a fall of one foot in four: and so to deserve þe epiþet "strong." And I find I have noted two additional places out of "Salomon and Saturn," line 570, *Se steapa gim, þe bright gem*, and line 827, where þis word is applied to fire.

Neverþeless I will not conceal from þe reader, whose edification is þe main point, þat a new and unexpected signification has come before me: þe passage quoted in St. Marharete, p. 108, from Hom. I. 456, is a translation from þe Latin published in *Acta Sanctorum*, Aug. 25 (not 24), and Steape eagan represents *Oculi grandes*. And here I must leave þis word.

Under þe word Ranged in þe glossary of þe Cleveland Dialect some remark about Rondin is made.

On p. 4, St. Marharete, last line, Makelese, it is suggested, should be interpreted *Matchless*: and to þat I submit.

From want of subscribers enough to þe Early English Text Society, þis Juliana has taken so long to appear in type þat some

want of cohesion has crept into my association of ideas about it. Þe text on þe left page has been edited by Mr. Brock, from whose views I have taken one or two suggestions. To þe word Maumez I demur: it should come into type, I believe, as Maumets, but a Zed is on þe MS. Þat Zed I read as TS, or oþerwise, I hold þe MS. Z to be like Zeta, a double letter such as it is in Italian, and to be a contraction for TS, and not well exprest by a modern Zed. In þe Domesday Book occurs a Gozet explained by nobody: now if we take Zed as TS, Cotset is easy enough to understand, and a suitable interpretation may be assigned it, even when occurring in company wiþ Cotarii.

It gives me some pain to say, þat I believe þe story of St. Margaret is convicted of forgery by þe indulgences which in þe earliest MSS. conclude þe piece. One would not rudely tear a doll from a child's arms, denouncing it as a waxwork sham; but readers of Old English are probably rid of early sentiment, and prepared to look Truþ in þe face. Þe name of Juliana has never been so popular in England as þat of St. Margaret: her story may be read in þe Acta Sanctorum, Feb. 16, and in þe Codex Exoniensis in alliterative verse, wanting some leaves. She is a fabulous personage.

Mr. Mortons opinion þat þe Ancren Riwle, and, by way of corollary, my suggestion þat "Hali Meidenhad" ʒ þe early lives of St. Margaret, Juliana ʒ Caðerine were written by bishop R. le Poor, grows more acceptable þe more I consider it. Some account of þe nunnery at Tarent is given in þe New Monasticon (Vol. V., 619):—"Though Ralf de Kahaines was the original founder, bishop Poor, who became bishop of Salisbury in 1217, was þe principal one, and has sometimes had þe foundation exclusively ascribed to him;" say the editors. Herbert le Poor, bp. of Sarum, died 6 Feb., 1217, and was succeeded by Richard le Poor, translated from Chichester; died 15 April, 1237. Who so likely to interest himself? What call could an ordinary priest have to recommend an unwelcome rule of hard self denial to noble ladies? What influence, if he

had intruded himself upon þeir consciences? Even in þese days, when very commonplace mediocere scholars often arrive at þe upper steps of þe prelatie stairs, a bishops name has weight wiþ fashionable ladies.

The auðor of þese little tracts exhibits a fair amount of learning: þe illustration about þe jacinet ⁊ þe carbuncle comes from þe dialogues of St. Gregorius; St. Cyrillus Hiersolymitanus (Catech. xii. p. 106), and St. Iohannes Chrysostomos (vol. i. p. 94 ult., p. 122, 31 ed. Savile), so far countenance þe doctrine þat sin led to commerce of man wiþ woman, as þat þey teach þat Adam knew not Eve, his wife, till after their expulsion from Paradise. Þis opinion was founded on þe circumstance þat þe text (Gen. iv. 1) follows þe account of þe expulsion: and doubtless, as still prevalent, was opposed in verse by Milton. It would sunder þe Creator of þe universe from þe Deity to be worshipped, if it had any real support in our Scriptures, but such considerations are even now sometimes excluded in ðeological tenets, and were of no avail in þe ðirteenð century. Þe doctrine þat an eternal reward of a hundredfold is reserved to virginity, of sixtyfold to widowhood after one marriage, of ðirtyfold to þe married, is compactly þus stated by Augustinus, as matter of discussion; “Sive virginalis vita in centeno fructu sit, in sexageno vidualis, in triceno autem coniugalis” (de S. Virginitate xlvi.).

We recognize, þefore, in our writer for þe nuns of Tarent Kaines, a scholar competently instructed in þe history and writers of his profession; one who would be kindly heard, when he spoke, by þose whom he wished to persuade; and one whose eyes were turned to Tarent: and he will be bp. R. le Poor.

“From Lelands words þat *Tarent nunry of late stode about Crayford bridge over Stowre ryvar, lower þan Blanford*, it is inferred þat þe demolition of þe buildings of þis house took place at an early period after þe Dissolution. All traces of its buildings have long disappeared.”

Its records are not in any public collection.

JULIANA.

JULIANA.

Royal MS.
17 A. xxvii.
[Leaf 56.]

Her cumfeð þe uie of seinte iuliane. ant telleð of liffæde hire.

IN ure lauertes luue þe is feader of frumſchaft. ant on his deorewurðe funes nome. ant o þes haligafteſ. þat glideð of ham baðen. alle lewede men. þat underftonden ne mahen latines ledene. liðin. ⁊ luſtnin ane meidenes liffæde. þat is of latin iturnd into engliſch. þat te lif hali lefdi. in heouene luuie us þe mare. ant of þis lihinde lif: leade us wið hire ern*dunge. þe is icoren of criſt into þe eche of heouene.

*[Leaf 56, back.]

[MODERNIZED.]

Here begins the life of St. Juliana, and tells of her life.

In the name of God, let all unlearned men listen to the life of a maiden.

In the love of our Lord, who is father of creation, and in the name of his precious Son, and in (the name) of the Holy Ghost, that glides from them both, let all unlearned men who cannot understand the Latin language, hearken and listen to the life of a maiden, which is turned from Latin into English, that the life-holy lady in heaven may love us the more, and from this lying (deceptive) life lead us with the intercession of her who is chosen of Christ, into the eternal (life) of heaven.

JULIANA.

Ʒ þe feaderes Ʒ i þe sunes Ʒ i þe hali gastes *Mome*. Her
 Beginneð þe liflade. ant te passiuu of seinte Juliene. Bodl. MS. 34.
[Fol. 36b.]

IN ure lauerdes luue þe feader if of frumscheft. ant
 iþe deore wurðmunt of his deorewurðe sunes. Ʒ iþe
 heinge of þe hali gaste. þe of ham ba glideð. an godd
 unagin euch godeful. Alle leawede men. þe understonden
 ne mahen latines ledene. lideð Ʒ lusteð þe liflade of a
 meiden. *þat if of latin iturnd: to englishe leode. wið *[Fol. 37.]
 þon þat teof hali leafdi. in heouene luue us þe mare. Ʒ
 þurh þis lihnide lif. leade us to þat eche. þurh hire eadi
 erndunge. þat crist if swiðe icweme. lihnide; dis-
appointing.

[MODERNIZED.]

In þe name of þe Faþer, and of þe Son, and of þe Holy
 Ghost. Here beginneð þe life, and martyrdom of St.
 Juliana.

In þe love of our Lord, who is Faþer of all creation,
 and in þe glory of his precious Son, and in þe extolling
 of þe Holy Ghost who proceeded from þem boð, one God,
 wiþout beginning, full of every good, all ye lewd men,
 who cannot understand the Latin language, hear ye and
 listen to þe life of a maiden which is turned from þe
 Latin into þe English language to þe end þat þis holy
 lady in heaven may love us þe more, and þrough þis
 loaned life, may lead us to þe eternal one, by her blessed
 merits, which are very acceptable to Christ. Translated from
the Latin.

þeof meiden. ant tis martir. wes iuliane inempnet. in nichomedes burh. ⁊ of heðene cun icumen. ant hire fleſchliche feder wes affrican ihaten. of þe heðene meſt þeo þat criſtene weren : derfliche droh ham to deaðe. ah heo as þeo þat te heouenlich feder luuede. leafde al hire aldrene lahen. ⁊ bigon to luuien þene liuiende laerd þe luſſum godd. þat wiſſeð ant weldeð al þat is on worlde : ⁊ al þat iwraht is. þa wes biþon time as redegunge telleð. Maximian þe modi keifer ine rome heinde ant heriende heðene mawmez. wið unmeð muchel hird ⁊ undukti duheðe. ⁊ fordemde alle þeo : þe on drihtin bilifden. þes Maximian luuede an heh mon of cunne ant eke riche of rente elewſius wes ihaten. ant weren as feolahes þurh muche freontſchipe. þis meidenes feder ⁊ he. weren ſwiðe wel togederes: as he ſumchere iſeh

The maiden was named Juliana.

Her father Africanus persecuted the Christians; yet she loved the living God.

Maximian the emperor had a friend named Eleusius.

This maiden and this martyr was named Juliana, in the city of Nicomedia, and (was) come of heathen kin, and her fleshly father was called Africanus, greatest of the heathen. Those that were Christians, he strongly drew them to death. But she, as one whom the heavenly father loved, left all her parents customs, and began to love the living Lord, the lovesome God, that directs and rules all that is in the world, and all that is wrought (created). Then was at that time, as the reading tells, the proud Maximian emperor in Rome, extolling and praising heathen idols, with an immensely great company and unworthy dignity; and he condemned all those who believed on the Lord. This Maximian loved a man high of kin and also rich in revenue. He was called Eleusius. And they were as companions through great friendship. This maidens father and he were very well together. As he on one occasion saw

Peof meiden ⁊ teof martyr þat ich of munne ; wes Juliene inempnet. i Nichomedese burh. Al of heaðene cun icumen ⁊ akennet. ⁊ hire fleshliche feader affrican hehte. þe heande ⁊ heafcede mest men þe weren cristene. ⁊ droh ham þurh derue pinen to deaðe. Ah heo af þeo þat te hehe heouenliche lauerd hefde his luue ileuet. leafde hire ealdrene lahen ⁊ bigon to luuien þen aa liuierende goð þe luffume lauerd. þat schupte alle schaftef ⁊ wealdeð ⁊ scheaftes. wisseð efter þet his wil is. al þat ischeapen is.

Wes ipon time af þe redunge telleð. þe modi Maximien keifer irome. heriende. ⁊ heiende heaðene maumez. wið unimeað muchel hird. ⁊ wið heh duheðe. ⁊ forðemde alle þeo þe o drihtin bilefden. þes mihti maximien luuede an eleusium biuoren monie of his men. Akennet of heh cun. ⁊ swiðe riche of rente. ⁊ zunge mon of zeref. þes zunge mon eleusius. þat þus wes wel wið þe king. hefde inune feolahschipe to affrican. ⁊ wes iwunet ofte to cumen wið him *to his in. ⁊ iseon his dohter.

*[Fol. 37b.]

þis maiden and þis martyr of whom I make mention High birth of Juliana. was named Juliana, in þe town of Nicomedia, come entirely, and descended from a heaþen race, and her fleshly faþer was called Africanus, who vexed and insulted very much men þat were Christians, and drew þem ðrough doleful pains to deað. But she, as one þat had lent her love to þe high heavenly faþer, left her parents customs, and began to love þe everliving God, þe lovesome Lord, who created all creation and ruleð and directeð according as his will is, all þat is created.

In þat time, as þe reading telleð, þe moody Maximian Date. was emperour in Rome, glorifying and extolling heaðen mammets, wiþ an immensely great following, and wið high dignity, and condemned all þose who believed in þe Lord. þis mighty Maximianus loved one Eleusius before many of his men, born of a high race, and very rich in revenue, and a young man in years. þis young man Eleusius, who was þus well wiþ þe king, had close fellowship wiþ Africanus, and was accustomed often to come wið him to his dwelling and to see his daughter.

hire utnume feir. ant freoliche. he felde him iwundet.
 þat wið uten ^{healsom} lechnunge of hire libben he ne mahte.
 Affrican wifte wel þat he wif ^{freo} freo boren. ⁊ þat him
 walde bicumen a freo boren burde. ant ȝettede him
 his dohter. ⁊ wes fone *ihondfald al hire unwilles.
 ah heo trufte on him þat ne trukeneð namon: þat
 trufteð treowliche on him. ant euch deis dei eode
 to chirche to leornen godes lare. ȝearnliche to witen
 hu ha mahte beft witen hire unweommet. ⁊ hire meið-
 had wiðuten man of monne. Elewfius þe luuede hire
 longe hit him þuhte. þat tis dede nere idon. þat
 heo ibroht were þurh wedlac to bedde. ah as ha wende

Eleusius fell in her exceptionally fair and noble, he felt himself
 wounded, so that without healing of her he could not
 live. Africanus knew well that he was gently born, and
 that a gently born bride would (well) become him; and
 granted him his daughter; and (she) was soon hanelled
 all against her will. But she trusted on him that fails no
 man who trusts truly in him; and at each days dawn (day),
 she went to church to learn Gods lore, earnestly to know
 how she might best keep herself unspotted, and her maiden-
 hood without commerce of man. To Eleusius, who loved
 her, it seemed long, that this deed were not done, that she
 were brought through wedlock to bed. But as she thought

and her father
 granted her to
 him.

But she was seek-
 ing how she
 might keep her
 virginity un-
 spotted.

As he hefde en chere bihalden swiðe ðeorne hire ut-
 numne feire. ⁊ freoliche ðuheðe; felde him iwundet
 in wið in hið heorte wið þe flan þe of luue fleoð. swa þat
 him þuhte þet ne mahte he nanef weif wið ute þe lechnunge
 of hire luue libben. Ant efter lutle frounde wið ute long
 ſteuene. wef him feolf ſonde to Affrican hire feader. ⁊
 biſohte him ðeorne þat he hire ðeue him. ⁊ he hire walde
 menkin wið al þat he mahte. Af þe þing i þe world
 þat he meaſt luuede. Affrican wiſte þat he wef ſwiðe freo
 iboren. Ant walde wel bicumen him a freo iboren burde.
 ⁊ ðetede him hið bone. Ha wef him ſone ihondſald þah
 hit hire unwil were. AH ha truſte upon him þat ne
 truked na mon. ha trewliche him truſte on. ⁊ eode to
 chirche euche daheðef dei. to leornin godeſ lare. biddinde
 ðeorne wið reowfule reameſ. þat he wiſſede hire o
 hwuche wife ha mahte witen hire meiðhað from monef
 man vnwemmet.

Elewſiuſ þat luuede hire þuhte sw[i]ðe longe þat
 ha neren to brudlac ⁊ to bed ibrohte. ah heo forte

As once he had very earnestly beholden her exquisitely fair and ladylike youð; he felt himself wounded within his heart, wið þe arrow which flieð from love, so þat it seemed to him, þat he could nowise, wiðout þe medicine of her love, live. And after a little time wiðout a long tale, he was himself his messenger to Africanus her faþer, and besought him earnestly, þat he would give her to him, and he would grace her wið all þat he was able, as þe þing in þe world, þat he most loved. Africanus knew þat he was very gently born, and þat a gentleborn bride would well suit him, and he granted his request. She was soon hanselled to him, þough it were against her consent. But she trusted upon him þat deceives no man: she truly trusted in him and went to church at every days dawn, to learn Gods lore, praying earnestly wið rueful cries, that he would direct her in what way she might preserve her maidenhood from mans commerce, unstained.

Juliana loved by Eleusius.

Given to him by her father.

To Eleusius, þat loved her, it seemed very long, that she were not to bridal and to bed brought, but she to

hire fummef weis to witene, fende him to feggen. þat nalde ha
 lihten fwa lahe ne nehlechen him for nan liuende mon. er
 þen he were under Maximian heheft in rome þat is heh reue.
 Sone fo he iherde þis. he bi-ȝet et te keifer þat he ȝettede

¹ Altered from *hem.* him¹ reue to beonne as þat he iȝirnd hefde. ant he as me

þa luuede. lette leaden him into ture. ⁊ te riche riden in.

⁊ tuhen him ȝont te tun: from strete to strete. ant al þe
 tur wes bitild. þat he wes in. wið purple wið pal. ⁊ wið

² MS. ciclatur. ciclatun. ⁊ deorewurðe claðes. as þe þat heh þing hefde to
 heden. ant þa he hefde þis idon: he fende hire to feggen.
 þat he hefde hire wil iwraht. ⁊ heo ſchulde his wurchen.

Iuliane þe edie ihesu criftef leouemon of his bliffule
 luue balde hire ſeoluen. fende him to onſwere. *bi
 an of hire fonden. Elewſiuſ wite þu hit wel ireadi.
 wraðði fo þu wraðði. no lengre nulich hit heolen

*[Leaf 57, back.]

Juliana sent him word that she would not approach him till he were High Reeve. He procured this dignity from the emperor;

to guard herself in some way, she sent to him to say that she would not descend so low, nor approach him for any living man before he were, under Maximian, highest in Rome, that is, High Reeve. As soon as he heard this, he procured from the emperor that he should grant him to be reeve, as that which he had desired; and he, as man loved (to have it) then, caused him to be led into a tower; and ride into his province; and they drew him about the town, from street to street. And all the tower that he was in was awned with purple, with pall, and with ciclatoun and precious cloths, as he that high things had to heed. And when he had done this, he sent to her to say that he had wrought her will, and she ought to work his.

Juliana the blessed, Jesus Christ's beloved, with his blissful love, made herself bold, sent to him as answer, by one of her messengers, "Eleusius, know thou it well ready, be as wroth as thou mayst, no longer will I conceal it

and then told her he had wrought her will.

Juliana boldly replied that

werien hire wið him summe hwile : *fende him to feggen.
 þat nalde ha nawt lihten fe lahe to luuien. Ne nalde ha
 neolechin him for na lliuende mon. ear þen he were under
 Maximien. heheft i Rome. þat if heh reue. He afe
 timliche af he hefde iherd þif. biþet ed te Keifer þet he
 ʒette him al þat he walde. ⁊ lette af me luuede þa leaden
 him i cure up o fowr hweolef. ⁊ teon him ʒeon te tun
 pron from strete to strete. Al þe cure ouertild þat he wef
 itohen on : wið purpres ⁊ pelles, wið ciclatunf ⁊ cendalf
 ⁊ deorewurðe claðef. As þe þat fe heh þing hefde to
 heden. ant fe riche reffchipe to rihten ⁊ to readen. þa
 he hefde þuf idon. fende hire þus to feggen hire wil
 he hefde iwraht. Nu hiſ ha ſchulde wurchen. Juliene
 þe eadie ihesu criftef leofmon of hiſ bliſſufule luue balde
 hire ſeoluen, ⁊ fende him al openliche bi fonde to
 feggen. þis word ha ſend te for nawt þu haueft iſ-
 wechte. wreaðe fe þu wreaðe. Do þat tu do wult nule
 ich ne ne mei ich lengre heolen hit te ʒef þu wult

*[Fol. 38.]

she was
→ high RJuliana
reue

defend herself against him for some while, sent to him
 to say, that she would not condescend to love so low,
 nor would she come near him for any living man, till he
 should be under Maximianus, þe highest in Rome, þat is
 þe High Reeve. He, as soon as he had heard þis, pro-
 cured from þe emperor þat he should grant him all þat
 he would, and so ordered þat, as man would have it þen,
 he was led about in a chariot upon four wheels, and
 drawn þrough þe town from street to street. All þe
 chariot was over awned, in which he was drawn, wið
 purple and palls, wið ciclatoun and sindon and precious
 cloðs, as one þat had so high þings to take heed for,
 and so mighty an office to direct and to advise in. When
 he had done þus, he sent to her to tell her he had
 wrought her will, and now she should work his. Juliana
 þe blessed, Jesus Christs leman, out of his bliſſufol love,
 made herself bold, and sent to him all openly by a messen-
 ger to say; þis word she sends þee; for nought hast þou
 toiled, be as wrað as þou may, do as þou do wilt; I will
 not, nor can any longer conceal it from þee: if þou wilt

She requires in
him high official
rank.

þe. 3ef þu wult leauen þe lahen þat tu list in. ant leuen
 in godd feder. 7 in his deorewurðe fune. 7 iþe hali gaft.
 ichulle wel neomen þe. 3ef þu nult no : þu art wundi of me.
 7 oðer luue sech þe. þa þe reue iherde þis : he wreððede
 him swiðe. 7 hire feder cleopede. ant feng on to tellen
 him. hu his dohter droh him from deie to deie. ant efter
 þat he wende to habben his iwil so ha him þis word
 fulliche sende. Bi þat ilke godd quoth hire feder þat me
 is lað to gremien beo hit soð þat tu seist to wraðer heale
 feide ha hit. ant nu ichulle o great grome al biteachen hire
 þe. to wurchen þi wil. 7 al þat te wel likeð as mit tin
 ahne. 7 me cleopede hire forð biuoren hire feder. 7 he
 feng feire to fondin his dohter Mi deorewurðe dohter hwer
 fore uorfakestu þi fy. ant ti selhðe. þe weolen ant te
 wuznen þat walden awakenin ant waxen of þi wedlac. þat

if he would be-
 come a Christian
 he should have
 her; but not
 otherwise.

Then the reeve
 complained to
 her father, who
 swore that if it
 were true, he
 would hand her
 over to Eleusius
 to do as he
 pleased with her.

Her father strives
 by fair words to
 turn her from
 her purpose;

from thee; if thou wilt leave the customs that thou
 liest in, and believe in God the Father, and in his precious
 Son, and in the Holy Ghost, I will indeed take thee; if
 thou wilt not, thou art quit of me; and seek thee another
 love." When the reeve heard this, he became very wroth,
 and called her father, and began to tell him how his
 daughter drew him on from day to day, and after he
 thought to have his will, she strangely sent him this
 word. "By that same God," quoth her father, "whom
 I am loth to anger, be it true that thou sayest, to (her)
 sorrow she said it, and now I will in great anger alto-
 gether give her up to thee to work thy will and all that
 pleases thee, as with thine own." And she was called
 forth before her father; and he began fairly to try his
 daughter: "My precious daughter, wherfore forsakest
 thou thy victory and thy happiness, the wealth and the
 joys that would arise and grow out of thy wedlock, which

leauen. þe lahen þet tu liueft in ant leuen i godd feader. ⁊ in his deorwurðe sune. ⁊ i þe hali gaft folkene froure. an godd *þat if igret wið euchef cunnef gode: Ich chule wel neome þe. ⁊ þef þat tu nult no: þu art ^{asert} windi of me: ⁊ oðer luue fech þe. Þa þe hehe reue iherde þif ondfwere: bigon to wreðen fwiðe: ⁊ cleopede hire feder forð. ⁊ feng on to tellen. hwuch word ha fende him. Efter þat he wende forte hebben idon al þat he wilnede. Affrican hire feader wundrede him fwiðe. ⁊ bigon to swerien. bi þe ilke godes þat me if lað to gremien. beo hit foð þat tu feiift: to wraðer heale. ha fehð hit. ant ich wulle o great grome al biteachen hire þe: ⁊ tu do hire. al þat tu wult. He þonkede him. ⁊ heo wef icleopet forð. ⁊ Affrican hire feader feng on earft feire on; to lokin þef he mahte wið eani luue speden. Juliene quoð he mi deorewurðe dohter. sei me hwi þu forsakeft. þi fy ⁊ ti felhðe: þe weolen ⁊ te wunnen. þe walden awakenen. ⁊ waxen of þe wedlac þat ich reade þe to: hit nis nan

*[Fol. 38b.]

-Jul. grom.

leave þe customs þat þou livest in and believe in God þe Faþer, and in his precious Son, and in þe Holy Ghost, the Comforter of the world; One God þat is magnified wið good of every kind, I will readily take þee, and if þou wilt not do þat, þou art quit of me, and seek þee anoþer love. When þe high reeve heard þis answer, he began to be very wrað, and called her faþer forð, and began to tell him what a word she had sent him, after he supposed he had done all þat she demanded. Africanus her faþer wondered at it much, and began to swear, "By þe same gods, whom it is grief to me to anger, be it true as þou sayest, to her sorrow she saið it, and I will in great anger altogeþer hand her over to þee, and do þou to her all þat þou wilt." He ðanked him, and she was called forð, and Africanus her faþer began first to look fairly on her, to see if he might wiþ any love speed. "Juliana," asked he, "my precious daughter, tell me why þou abandonest þe triumph and happiness, þe felicity and joys, which would spring up and grow out of þe wedlock þat I advise þee to. Tis no

Juliana demands the conversion of Eleusius.

She is urged by her father to wed Eleusius.

ich þe to reade. for he if inoh lauerd elewfius ine rome. ⁊
 tu maht beon leafdi dohter ʒef þu wel wult. Iuliane þe
 eadie onfwerede him ⁊ feide af þeo þat *ine godd hire
 hope hefde. ʒef he wule leuen an god al mihti. þenne mei
 he ſpeoken þrof ⁊ inohraðe ſpeden. ant ʒef þat he nule
 nawt. ne ſchal wiuen on me. wiue þer hiſ wil is. þa hire
 feder iherde þis : þa feng he to ſwerien. Bi mi kine-
 wurðe lauerd apollo. ant bi mi deore leafdi diane. þat ich
 muche luuie. ʒef þu haldeſt heron. ichulle leoten deor to
 teoren ant to luken þe. ⁊ ʒeouen þi fleſch : [to]¹ fuheles of
 þe luſte. Iuliane him onfwerede ⁊ foſteliche feide. ne wen
 þu nawiht leoue feder. þat tu affeare me ſwa. for ihesu
 criſt godes ſune þat ich on leue ⁊ luuie as lauerd luſ-
 fumeſt on liue. þah ich beo forbernd. ⁊ to loken limel.
 nulich heronont buhen þe nawiht þa feng eft hire [fe-
 der] on wið olhnunge to fondin ʒef he mahte eiſweis
 wenden hire heorte. ⁊ feide hire luſſumliche. þat

*[Leaf 58.]

¹ A hole in the MS.

but she declares that if he will not believe in God Almighty, he shall not marry her.

Her father then swears that he will let wild beasts tear her.

But she says though she were torn limb from limb, she will never give way.

I counsel thee to? for Eleusius is lord enough in Rome, and thou mayest be lady, daughter, if thou wilt." Juliana the blessed answered him, and said, as one who had her hope in God, "If he will believe in God Almighty, then may he speak of it and succeed quickly enough, and if he will not, he shall not marry me, let him marry where his will is." When her father heard this, then began he to swear: "By my royal lord Apollo, and by my dear lady Diana, whom I much love, if thou holdest to this, I will let beasts tear and rend thee asunder, and give thy flesh to fowls of the air." Juliana answered him, and softly said, "Think not, dear father, that thou mayest terrify me so, for (by) Jesus Christ, Gods Son, on whom I believe, and whom I love as lord, lovesomest in life, though I be burnt up, and plucked asunder limbmeal, I will not, as regards this, bow to thee." Then began her father again with flattery to try if he might in any way turn her heart, and told her lovesomely that

eðelich þing. þe reffchipe of rome. ant tu maht ʒef þu wult. beon burhene leafdi. ⁊ of alle þe londes þe þerto liggeð. Juliene þe eadie ontfwerede him ⁊ feide. [ʿaf þeo þat ine godd hire hope hefde.] ʒef he wule luuien. ⁊ leuen godd. al mihti; þenne mei he [ʿfpeoken] þrof. ⁊ fpeden inoh reaðe. for ʒef he þat nule no; ich fegge þe þat foð if. ne fchal he wiuen on me. Sei nu hwet ti wil is. affrican wreaðede ⁊ *fwor swiðe deopliche. for þe drihtfule godd apollo mi lauerd. ⁊ mi deore leafdi þe deorewurðe diane þat ich muche luuie. ʒef þu haldest her on; ich fchal leote wilde deor to luken ⁊ to teore þe ⁊ ʒeoue þi flefch fode to fuhelef of þe lufte. Juliene him ondfwerede. ⁊ softeliche feide. Ne lef þu nawt leoue feader þat tu offeare me fwa; ich fwerie aʒein. þe ihesu crift godes fune. þat ich on leue. ⁊ luuie af leofukeft. ⁊ luffumest lauerd. þat ich ewic beo forbearnd baðe lim ⁊ lið ileitinde leie. Nulle ich þe her onont þreaté fe þu þreate buhe ne beien.

¹ From MS. R.

*[Fol. 39.]

[A]ffrican feng eft on. ⁊ to fondin ongon ʒef he mahte eanif weif olhnunge wenden hire heorte: ⁊ leof-
 eft MS.

contemptible þing þis prefecture of Rome, and þou mayest, if þou wilt, be lady of þe town, and of all þe lands þat belong þereto." Juliana, þe blessed, answered him and said, "If he will love and believe in God Almighty, þen may he speak of it; and speed quickly enough: for if he will not, he shall not swive on me. Say now what þy will is." Africanus was wrað and swore very deeply. "Before the lordly god Apollo, my master, and my dear lady, þe precious Diana, whom I much love, if þou holdest to þis, I shall make wild beasts lacerate and tear þee, and give þy flesh as food to fowls of þe air." Juliana answered him and softly said, "Believe not, dear faþer, þat þou canst terrify me so; I swear on þe oþer hand; by Jesu Christ, Son of God, on whom I believe, and whom I love as loveliest and lovesomest lord, þough I be quite burnt up, boð limb and joint in gleaming flame; I will not, as regards þis, bend nor bow to þe, ðreaten as þou mayest.

Africanus tried again, and began to attempt, if he were able, anywise, by flattery to turn her heart, and kindly

ne schulde ha nane wunne lihtliche wilnin: þat he ne schulde
 welden. wið þat ha walde hire þonc wenden. Nai quoð þat
 meiden schuldich don me to him þat is alle deoulen bitaht.
 ¶ to eche deð idemet. to furwurðen wið him world abuten
 ende. for hif wedlakef weole oðer for eni wunne. for soð
 ich hit fegge unwurð if hit me. ichulle þat he hit wite wel.

*[Leaf 58, back.] ant tu *eke mid him þat ich am iweddēt to an þat ichulle
 treowliche to halden ant wið uten les luuien. þe if unlich
 him. ¶ alle worldlich men. ne nullich him nowðer leauen.
 ne lihen for weole ne for wunne. for wa. ne for wunne
 þet 3e mahen don me. þa feng hire feder te wreððen
 fwiðe ferlich ¶ fwiðe hokerliche freinede. Me hwet if
 he þes were þat tu art to iweddēt. þat tu hauest wið uten
 me þine luue ilene[t]¹ for hwam þu leteft lutel of þat tu
 schuldest luuien. ne ich neuer þat ich wite nef wið him
 icnawen. For gode quoð þet meiden þin harm if þe

¹ A hole in the MS.

she should not easily desire any joy that she should not possess, provided she would alter her mind. "Nay," quoth the maiden, "should I join myself to him who is given up to all devils, and doomed to eternal death, to perish with him world without end, for the weal of his wedlock or for any joy? Forsooth, I say it, unworthy it is of me. I will that he should know it well, and thou also with him, that I am wedded to one to whom I will truly hold, and without falsehood love, who is unlike him and all worldly men. Nor will I either leave or deny him for wealth or for pleasure, for woe nor for joy that ye can do me." Then began her father to get wroth very strongly, and very mockingly inquired, "But what is this husband to whom thou art wedded, to whom thou hast without me committed thy love, for whom thou carest little for what thou shouldst love? Nor was I ever, that I know, acquainted with him." "Before God," quoth the maiden, "thy harm is the

Juliana declares she is wedded to one whom she will truly love.

Her father mockingly inquires who this husband is.

tede luueliche. ¶ feide hire fikerliche. þat ne schulde ha lihtliche wilni na wunne; þat ha ne schulde wealden. wið þerean þat ha walde hire wil wenden. Nai quoz ha þat niſ nawt. ſchulde ich do me to him. þat alle deoffen iſ bitaht. ¶ to eche deað fordemet. to forwurðe wið him worlt buten ende iþe putte of helle: for hiſ wedlackeſ weole oðer for ei wunne. To foðe ich hit ſegge þe. Vnwurð hit iſ me. Ich chulle þat he wite hit ful wel. ¶ tu eke mid al; ich am to an iweddet þat ich chulle treowliche wiðute leaſ luuien. þat iſ unlich him ¶ alle wortliche men. ne nulle ich neauer mare him lihen ne lea*uen. for weole ne for wunne. for wa ne for wontreaðe þat 3e me mahen wurchen.

*[Fol. 396.]

Hire feader feng on to wreaððin ſwiðe ferliche ¶ caſkede hire hokerliche. Ant hwet iſ he þeſ were þat tu art to iweddet. þat tu hauet wið ute me ſe forð þi luue ileuet. þat tu leteſt lutel. of al þat tu ſchuld-eſt luuien. Ne ich neſ neauer þat ich wite 3et. wið him icnawen. for gode quoz þe meiden þin hearm iſ þe

said to her, "þat ſurely ſhe ſhould not eaſily deſire any pleaſure, þat ſhe ſhould not obtain, provided þat þereby ſhe would alter her reſolution." "Nay," quoz ſhe, "þat iſ naught. Should I join myſelf to him, who iſ given up to all þe devils and doomed to deað eternal to periſh wiþ þem world wiðout end in þe pit of hell, for þe wealð of hiſ wedlock, or for any joy? For ſooð, I ſay to þe; unworðy it iſ of me. I will þat he know it full well, and þou alſo þerewið; I am eſpouſed to one, whom I will truly wiþout falſhood love, one who iſ unlike him and all worldly men, nor will I ever more him deny nor deſert for wealð or for joy, for woe nor for miſery þat ye may do me."

Juliana reſuſes to wed a heathen,

and declares that ſhe iſ eſpouſed

Her faþer took to getting wroð very ſtrongly, and aſked her tauntingly: "And what iſ þiſ huſband to whom þou art wedded, to whom þou haſt wiðout me ſo far þy love committed, þat þou careſt little for all þou ſhouldſt love. No, I waſ never, þat I know aſ yet wið him acquainted." "Before God," quoz þe maiden, "þy injury iſ þe

mare nawt forþi þæt tu naueft ofte iherd of him Ʒare. þæt if
 iefu godes fune. þe forto lefen moncun þæt forloren ſchulden
 beon: lette hiſ deorwurðe lif on rode. ne ich ne ſeh him
 neuer þæt me fare forþuncheð. ah ichim luue ant leue
 af on lauerde. ne ſchal me firfin him from: nowðer deouel
 ne mon. For mi lif quoð hire feder þe ſchal laðin hiſ
 luue for þu ſchalt beon i beaten. mid beſines ſwa bittre þæt

¹ MS. wraðel. tu wummon were ſchal to wraðer¹ heale iwurðen. Swa
 muche quoð ha ich iwurðe him þe leouere: So ich derure
 þing for hiſ luue drehe. þæt ti wil if: wurch nu. Ƴ he het
 hatterliche ſtrupen hire ſteortnaket. Ƴ beten hire ſwa
 luðere þæt hire leoffiche lich: liðeri al oblode. Ƴ ſwa ha
 duden fo luðere þæt te blod Ʒet adun of þe Ʒerden. Ƴ heo
 bigon to Ʒeien. Beaten fo Ʒe beaten Ʒe beliales bu*delef.
 ne mahe Ʒe nowðer mi luue ne min bileaue lutlen toward
 him mi luffum leof mi leowinde lauerd ne nullich leauen

*[Leaf 59.]

greater; not because thou hast not often heard of him long ago, that is, Jesus Christ, Son of God, who, to liberate mankind, that must have been lost, gave up his precious life on the cross. I have never seen him, which grieves me sore; but I love him and believe on him as Lord; nor shall any remove me from him, neither devil nor man." "By my life," quoth her father, "thou shalt loathe his love, for thou shalt be beaten with birches so bitterly that it shall turn to sorrow (to thee) that thou woman wert." "So much," quoth she, "shall I become the dearer to him, as I suffer more pain for his sake. What thy will is, work now." And he bade savagely to strip her stark naked, and beat her so villanously that her lovely body should lather all in blood. And so they did, so villanously that the blood gushed down from the rods. And she began to cry out, "Beat as ye will, ye ministers of Belial, ye can lessen neither my love nor my faith towards him, my lovesome dear one, my living Lord; nor will I believe

Her father then threatens her again, but all in vain.

She is stript stark naked, and brutally beaten with rods.

mare. Nawt for þi þat tu nauest iherd of him ʒare. þat if ihesu godes fune. þat forte alesen moncun þat schulde beon forloren al; lette lif o rode. Ich ne seh him neauer ⁊ þat me of þuncheð. Ah ich him luuie ⁊ wulle don. ⁊ leue on af o lauerd. Ne schal me sifren him from. Nowðer deouel ne mon. for mi lif quoð hire feader þe schal laðin hif luue. for þu schalt habbe þrof hearm ⁊ scheome baðe ⁊ nu þu schalt on alre earst. af on ernesse swa beon ibeaten wið bittere besmen. þat tu were wummon of wummones bosom to wraðerheale eauer iboren iþe worlde. See oþer Text.

Swa muche quoð þat meiden ich beo him þe leouere. se ich derfre þing for hif luue drehe. [¹wurch] þu þat ti wil if. ʒe quoð he bliðeliche. ant swiðe heatterliche. strupen hire steort naket. ⁊ leggeð se luðer*liche on hire leofliche lich: [þat] hit liðeri o blode. Me nom hire ⁊ dude swa þat hit ʒeat adun of þe ʒerden. ant heo bigon to ʒeien. Beaten se ʒe beaten ʒe beliales budelef. ne mahe ʒe nowðer mi luue ne mi bileaue lutlin towart te liuiende godd mi leofsume leofmon. þe luuewurðe lauerd. ne

¹ A word is erased in the Bodl. MS. [Fol. 41 wrongly numbered, or Fol. 40 is wanting.] ⁊ MS.

greater. Not, for all þat, þat þou hast not heard of him long since: þat is Jesu, Son of God, who to redeem mankind, which must oþerwise have all been lost, gave up life on þe cross. I have never seen him and þat displeases me; but I love him and will so do; and believe on him as on þe lord. Nor shall any remove me from him, neiþer devil nor man." "By my life," quoð her faþer, "þou shalt loape his love, for þou shalt have of it harm and shame boð, and now þou shalt first of all, by way of earnest, be so beaten wið bitter birches þat þou [shalt lament] þou wert ever born into þe world, woman of womans bosom.

to Jesus, the Son of God.

"So much," quoð þe maiden, "I shall be to him þe dearer, as for his love I suffer more pain; do þy will on me." "Yea," quoð he gaily and very savagely, "Strip her stark naked, and lay on so hard on her lovely body þat it laðer in blood." She was taken and so treated þat þe blood ran down off þe rods, and she began to cry out, "Beat ye as ye will, ye ministers of Belial, ye can diminish neiþer my love nor my belief toward þe loving God, my lovely leman, þe lo(u)eworþy Lord; nor

Juliana is beaten with rods.

ower read þat forreadeð ow feoluen. ne ower mix maw-

¹ So in MS. mex¹ þat beoð þef feondef fetlef heien ne herien. for teone ne for tintreow þat 3e mahen timbrin. Na quoð he

² falc MS. if hit fwa hit fchal² futelin fone. for ichulle biteachen mislich þi bodi to elewfium þe riche reue irome ant he fchal forfwelten ant forreden þe efter ef wille wið allef cunnes pinen. 3e quoð þif meiden þat mei crist welden. for ne mahe 3e nawt don me bute hwet he wule þeauien ow to muchelin mi mede ƿ te murðe þat lið to meiðhadef menske for euer so 3e mare merrið me her : fo mi crune bið brihtre ƿ fehere. for ichulle bliðeliche drehen euer-euch derf for mi deore lauerdes luue. ant softe me bið euch derf hwen ich him ferui þah þu me to elewfium willes biteache : ne 3eue ich for inc nowðer. þat 3e me mahen harmen. for so 3e mare me her harmeð. fo mare 3e me helpeð feoueuald to heouene. ƿ 3ef 3e me doð to deaðe

in your counsel, which betrays yourselves, nor extol and praise your dung idols, which are receptacles of the fiend, for harm nor for torture that ye can contrive." "No," quoth he, "is it so? It shall soon appear, for I will deliver thy body to Eleusius, the rich reeve in Rome; and he shall (cause thee to) perish, and bewray thee after his will with torments of every kind." "Yea," quoth this maiden, "that may Christ rule; for ye can do naught to me but what he will permit you, to enlarge my reward, and the joy that belongs to maidenhoods honour; for ever the more ye mar me here, the brighter and fairer shall be my crown. For I will blithely endure every hardship for my dear Lords love, and soft shall be to me each hardship, since I serve him, though thou willingly deliver me to Eleusius. Neither care I for you both—that ye can harm me; for the more ye harm me here, the more sevenfold ye help me to heaven. And if ye do me to death,

Her father threatens to give her up to Eleusius; but she sets his threats at naught,

saying, she will gladly suffer every hardship for her dear Lords love.

nulle ich leuen ower read þe forreadeð ow feolf. ne þe mix-maumez þe beoð þef feondef fetlef; heien ne herien. for teone ne for tintreohē þat ȝe me mahe timbrin. Na nult tu quoð affrican. hit ſchal ſone futelin. for ich chulle ſende þe nu 7 biteache þi bodi to eleuſium þe riche þat reue if ouer rome. ant he ſchal þe forreaden. 7 makie to forſwelten. af hiſ ahne wil if þurh al þet eauer far is.

ȝe quoð þiſ meiden þat mei godd welden. ne mahe ȝe nawt do me bute þet he wule þeauien 7 þolien ow to donne to mucli mi mede 7 te murhðe þat lið to meið-hadeſ menſke. for eauer ſe ȝe nu her mearreð me mare: ſe mi crune ſchal beon brihttre ba 7 fehere. for þi ich chulle bliðeliche 7 wið bliðe heorte drehen eauer euch derf. for mi leofmones luue þe luſſume lauerd 7 foſte me bið euch far in hiſ ſeruife. þu wult þu ſeiſt aȝeoue me to eleuſium þe luðere. a ȝef *me for nawiht ne ȝeoue ich for inc nowðer. Þet ȝe mahen ane pine me here. Ah hit ne hearmeð me nawt ah helpeð 7 heueð up 7 makeð

*[Fol. 41b.]

will I believe in your counsel, which betrays yourselves, nor extol nor glorify your dunghill mammals, which are homes of þe fiend, for harm nor for torture, þat ye can contrive." "No, wilt þou not," quoð Affricanus, "it shall soon appear; for I will send þe now and grant þy body to Eleusius, þe powerful, þat is prefect over Rome, and he shall bewray þee and make þee to perish, þrough all þat is painful, according as his will is."

"Yea," quoð þis maiden, "þat God can rule; nor are ye able to do aught to me, except he will to permit and endure þat you should so do to enlarge my reward, and þe joy þat belonged to þe grace of maidenhood: for in whatsoever measure ye mar me þe more in þat same shall my crown be boð brighter and fairer. þerefore I shall bliðely and wiþ gay heart ſustain every hurt for my lemmans love, þe lovely Lord, and soft to me is every sore in His service. þou wilt, þou saiſt, give me to Eleusius þe odious; Give me to him, for naught care I for eiþer of you, þat ye are able only to pain me here: but it harmeð me not, but riſeð me up. and makeð

She defies her torturers.

hit bið me deorewurðe ant ich schal þer þurh bliðe bi-
 cumen into endelese bliffen ant ðe schulen wrecches áwei
 ower wurðes þat ðe iboren weren sinken to wraðer heale
 ow to þe bale bitter deope into helle. Hire feder affrican
 þurh þif bittre teone bitahte hire to elewfium þe luðere
 *reue. ant he lette bringen hire biuoren him to his heh
 feotel af he set in dome af reue of þe burhe af he biheold
 ant iseh hire leofliche leor lilies iliche ⁊ rudi af þe rose ⁊
 hire leofliche schape ! He sikede af þing þat fare were
 iwundet his mod feng to heaten ant his meari to melten
 ant wiðinnen bernde of þe heate of hire luue swa þat him
 þuhte þat he ne bede na mare blisse in þisse liue bute
 hire bodi ane to wurchen his wille ant feng on toward
 hire sweteliche to seggen. Mi lif ant mi leouemon. mi
 lefdi ðef þu wel wult biþench þat in rome richest am

*[Leaf 59, back.]

it shall be precious to me, and I shall thereby blithely enter into endless bliss, and ye wretches shall—alas! your fates that ye were (ever) born—sink to your misery, to the bitter bale, deep into hell.” Her father, Africanus, through this bitter vexation, handed her over to Eleusius, the wicked reeve. And he caused her to be brought before him to his high seat, as he sat in judgment, as reeve of the city. When he beheld and saw her lovely complexion, like a lily and ruddy as the rose, and her lovely shape, he sighed as a thing that was sorely wounded. His mind began to heat and his marrow to melt; and he burned within with the heat of her love, so that it seemed to him that he could ask no greater bliss in this life, except her body only, to work his will. And he began toward her, sweetly to say, “My life and my leman, my lady, if thou wilt, consider that I am richest in Rome,

Juliana is given up to Eleusius, and brought before his judgment seat. As he looks upon her, his passions are roused,

and he tries to move her by fair words.

mine murhðes monifalde in heouene. ant þef þe doð me to deað. hit bið deore to godd. ⁊ ich schal bliðe bicumen to endelese bliffen. ant þe schulen wrecchef wei ower wurðes. þat þe weren i þe worlt iboren ⁊ i broht forð se wraðer heale þe schule finken adun to far ⁊ to eche sorhe. to bitterneffe ant to bale deope into helle.

[A]ffrican hire feader bitterliche iteonet bitahtte hire eleusium þe luðere reue of rome ⁊ lette bringen hire biuoren his ehfiðe. af he set ⁊ demde. þe hehe burh domef. Af he bifeh ⁊ biheold hire luffume leor lilief ilicneffe ⁊ rudi ase rose. ⁊ under hire nebscheft al se freoliche isehapet; weorp a sic af a wiht þat fare were iwundet. His heorte feng to heaten ⁊ his meari mealten þe rawen rahten of luue þurh euch lið. of his limes. ⁊ inwið bearnde of brune swa ⁊ cwakede af of calde. þet him þuhte in hef þonc. þet ne bede he iþe worlt nanef cunnes bliffe. bute hire bodi ane. to wealden hire wið wil efter þat he walde. ⁊ bigon wið fwotneffe soffte to seggen.

*under his
nebscheft
a sic*

[M]i lif ⁊ mi leofmon. ⁊ leafdi þef þu wel wult ase

my joys manifold in heaven, and if ye do me to deað, þat my deað is precious before God, and I shall in joy reach endless bliss; and ye shall, ye wretches, weep your fates þat ye should be born into þe world and brought forð to misery; ye shall sink down to woe and to eternal sorrow, to bitterness and to bale deep into hell."

Affricanus her faþer, bitterly vexed, gave her up to Eleusius, þe vile prefect of Rome, and had her brought before his presence, as he sat and gave judgments in þe high city court. When he viewed and beheld her lovely complexion, in likeness of a lily and ruddy as þe rose, and all below her visage, so ladylike shapen, he drew a sigh, as a wight þat was sorely wounded. His heart began to heat and his marrow to melt, þe fine ðreads of love reached þrough every joint of his limbs, and he burned wiþin wiþ heat so, and quaked as if wiþ cold, so þat it seemed to him in his ðought, þat he could pray in þe world for bliss of no sort, except only her body, to deal wiþ her wiþ his will according as he pleased, and he began wiþ sweetness softly to say.

Her father gives her up to Eleusius.

Symptoms of the malady, love, in Eleusius.

"My life and my leman and lady, if it please þee,

The lover suasive.

ant iboren heheft hwi deftu uf ba fo wa : þurh þi muchele unwit 7 wurchest fo wraðe nulli þe na mare uuel þen þi feolf waldest ah leof me were þat tu þi luðere þonc lefdest. 7 te wel schulde wið alle wunne iwurðen. 7 neauer of þi wil ne schal þe nawt wontin. ant loke alswa þe lahen af al þat cun þat tu art of icumen. 7 akennet of: leueð ant luuieð hwi leauestu ham þe' ane. 7 wurðeð þe fo laðe. ne wen þu nawt þe ane wið þi wiðdom to ouerfihen ham alle.

LEt quoð ha elewfi ant stew fwucche wordef for ne beoð ha riht nohtef. for 3ef þu cneowe ant were cuð wið þe king þat if ouer alle kingef icrunet in heouene, lutel waldestu leoten of ðower lahelese lahen þet leareð ow to luten dedliche schaften af 3e schulden to¹ *godd ant gremieð ower schuppent for þe cwike deoulen doð ham þrin on hwet 3e bileueð ant hwen fo 3e herieð ham : 3e herieð þen unhwiht ant buheð af to healent ant he wule ower hwile bitterliche 3elden. For ne wergeð he neauer to wurchen ow al þat wandreðe world á buten

¹ MS. repeats 'schulden to.'
*[Leaf 60.]

"I wish thee no more evil than thou wishest thyself."

"If thou knewest the King of kings," said she, "thou wouldst not bow before lifeless creatures."

and highest born; why dost thou cause us both such woe through thy great folly, and workest so fiercely? I will thee no more evil than thou wouldest thyself, but it would be agreeable to me that thou lefdest thy evil mind, and it should become well with thee with all joy, and naught of thy will shall ever be wanting to thee. And regard also the customs which all the race that thou art come and begotten of, believe and love. Why dost thou alone leave them? Why become they so loathsome to thee? Suppose not that thou alone with thy wisdom surpassest them all."

"Leave," quoth she, "Eleusius, and stop such words; for they are worth right naught. For if thou knewest and wert acquainted with the king who is above all kings, crowned in heaven, little wouldest thou esteem your lawless laws which teach you to bow before mortal (or lifeless) creatures, as ye should do to God, and anger your Creator, for the living devils get into (the idols) on which ye believe; and whenever ye praise them, ye praise the Evil Being, and bow as to a saviour, and he will bitterly repay your time. For he will never weary of working you all misery world without

[*A leaf, 42, is here wanting.*]

ende. Do þat tu don wult for nullich þe nan oðer don bute þef þu liðe ant leue min lare ant luuie godd al mihti ant leaue alle þe lahen þat tu list inne.

ME leof quoð elewfiuf þef me swa biluuede hit were fone ifeid þe keifer ant ikudd to þe kinge. ⁊ he me walde warpen ut of mine wike ant demen me to deaðe. ant heo him onfwerede. þef þu dredest so muchel an dedlich mon þe liueð al aþein law ant leueð al his luue in liflese schaften : on his schuppent scheome. ⁊ art offruht swa to leofen his freontschipe. schuldich þenne forsaken ihesu crift godes fune þe if ort ant ende of al. þat euer god if. þe wule hefter þif lif. þat ich lete lutel of. for his luffum luue leue wið him seolf þe fy ant þe selhðe of heouenriches wunnen. speche þu maht spillen ant ne speden nawiht þah þu me bufte ant beate af þat if bitaht te. ⁊ to derue pine don me ant te dreori deð. ne schaltu þah þu famon flea

end. Do that which thou meanest to do, for I will do no other for thee, unless thou listen and believe my lore, and love God Almighty, and leave all the customs that thou liest in."

"If thou darest a mortal man, and fearest to lose his friendship, should I forsake Jesus Christ, the beginning and end of all good?"

"My dear," quoth Eleusius, "if I were pleased to do so, it would soon be told to the emperor, and made known to the king, and he would cast me out of my office and doom me to death." And she answered him, "If thou darest so much a mortal man, who lives quite against law, and bestows all his love upon lifeless creatures to the dishonour of his Creator, and art so affrighted to lose his friendship, should I then forsake Jesus Christ, Gods Son, who is beginning and end of all that ever is good, who will, after this life which I value little for his lovesome love, [that I] live with himself [in] the victory and the happiness of heaven-kingdoms joys? Speech thou mayest spill (waste), and speed not, though thou bruise me and beat as it is given thee (to do), and put me to severe pain and to dreary death; thou shalt not, though thou, foeman, flay

will be slowly then

[*A leaf, 42, is here wanting.*]

*[Leaf 60, back.] me : ne schaltu feon *me þe sonre flakien to leuen ant te luuien godd alre gume lauerd. þe reue rudnede ant ogrome grede. strupeð hire steort naket. ⁊ strecheð hire on þe eorðe ant six men beateð hire hwil ha mahten drehen. þat ha al wef bigan mite blode ⁊ hwil ha hire beoten ha bigonne to ȝeien : þif if þe biginnunge of þe far ant te scheinome þat tu schalt drehen : bute þu to v̄f beie. ȝet tu maht ȝef þu wult burhen þe seoluen. ant ȝef þu mare wiðseift : wa wurðe him wurft þat te meft sparie. wondreðe to donne. Doð quoð ha deaðef sunef al þat te deouel hwaf driuelef ȝe beoð driueð ow to donne. lutel if me of ower luue. lasse of ower wraðe þat wite ȝe to wiffe. Nu cweðen heo wa him þenne þe ne wurche þe meft wa. þer wes forhe te feon hire leoflich lich

me, thou shalt not see me the sooner slacken to believe and to love God, the Lord of all men." The reeve reddened, and in anger cried, "Strip her stark naked, and stretch her on the earth, and six men beat her whilst they may hold out," so that she was all run over with the blood. And whilst they beat her they began to cry out, "This is the beginning of the pain and the shame that thou shalt suffer, unless thou bend to us. Yet thou mayest, if thou wilt, save thyself; and if thou longer refuseth, woe be to him worst that most spareth to work thee misery." "Do," quoth she, "(ye) sons of death, all that the devil, whose drudges ye are, driveth you to do; little care I for your love, less for your wrath, know ye that for certain." "Now," said they, "woe to him, then, who works thee not the greatest woe." There was sorrow to see her lovely body

Juliana is stript naked, and beaten by six men till she is covered with blood.

Yet she tells her tormentors that she cares not for them,

*tu for na schahlt þe sonre seo me flakien to luuien ant *[Fol. 43.]
to leuen oþen liuiende godd alre gume lauerd.

[þ]e reue feng to rudnin igrome of great heorte. ƿ het his heaðene men strupin hire steort naket. ƿ streccen oþer eorðe. ƿ hwil þat eauer six men mahten idrehen beaten hire beare bodi; þat ha al were bigoten of þe blode. Ha duden al af he bed. ƿ hwil þat ha beoten hire; bigunnen to ƿeien. þis if a biginnunge of þe far þat tu schalt; ƿ of þe scheome drehen: ƿef þu nult to ure wil buhen ƿ beien. Ah ƿet þu maht ƿef þu wult burhe þe seolfen. ant ƿef þu mare wiðseift; alre monne wurðe him wurft of wa ƿ of wontreaðe þe ne wurche þe meaft.

[D]oð quoð ha deofles limen al þat te deoffen hwaf driueles ƿ beoð driueð ow to donne. lutel me if of ower luue. leaffe of ower laððe. ƿ of þes þreates riht noht; wite ƿ hit to wisse. Nu cweden ha. wa him þe ne fondi to dei for te wurche þe wurft. þer wes forhe to feon on hire freoliche flesch hu ha ferdan þer wið. Ah heo

þou shalt not any quicker make me slow to believe in and love God, Lord of all men."

þe prefect began to redden in great anger of heart, and bade his heaþen men strip her stark naked, and stretch She is beaten again. her on þe earð, and as long as six men could hold out, beat her bare body, so þat she should be all suffused wiþ þe blood. þey did just as he bade, and while þey beat her þey began to cry, "þis is a beginning of þe soreness and shame þat þou shalt endure, if þou wilt not bow and bend to our will. But yet þou mayst, if þou wilt, protect þysself; and if þou longer refuse, let worst of all men befall to him of wo and misery, who works not most of þat to þee."

"Do," quoð she, "ye limbs of þe devil, all þat þe devil, whose drudges ye be, driveð you to do, little care I for your love, less for your hate, and for þese ðreats just noþing, know ye þat for a surety." "Now," said þey, "wo to him þat tries not to spend his life in working her worst mischief." It was þen a sorrow to see how þey dealt wiþ her ladylike flesh. But she She defies her persecutors still.

faren fo reowliche wið. ⁊ þuldliche heo hit þolede for þe luue of drihtin ant hwen ha meft far hefde fikerlukeft ha ʒeide. halden on longe ne leaue ʒe neuer. for nullich leauen þif luue for luue. ne for eie.

Þe reue þa he herde þif het hire hon up ant hongin biþe toppe. ant fwa me dude fone. ⁊ leiden fwa luðerliche on hire on each half. þat each dunt defde into hire liche þat ha al biʒet on gure blode. Lauerd godd almihti quoð heo þa. loke to þi meiden. þu fondedest abraham ant fundest him treowe þu lef me þat ich mote þe treowliche luuien. hald me min healent af þu haueft bigunnen. for nabich na mahte bute *of þi strenðe. ant on þe itrufte nawt ome feoluen ant fwuch hope ich hadde to þin help healent þat her ich hadde bihaten þe þat ne ſchal neauer mi luue ne min bileaue lutlin for na derf ne for nan wondreðe. ne for dute of deaðe þah ich hit ſchulde

*[Leaf 61.]

dealt with so ruefully. And patiently she suffered it for the love of the Lord, and when she had greatest pain, she cried out most confidently, "Hold on long, nor ever leave off, for I will not leave this love, for love nor for awe."

The reeve, when he heard this, bade hang her up and suspend by the hair of the head; and so was soon done, and they laid upon her so villanously on each side, that each blow sank into her body, so that she altogether ran with gory blood. "Lord God Almighty," quoth she then, "look to thy maiden. Thou triedest Abraham, and foundest him true; grant me that I may truly love thee. Hold me, my Saviour, as thou hast begun; for I have no might but of thy strength; and in thee I trust, not in myself. And such hope I have for thy help, Saviour, that here I have promised thee that my love and my belief shall never lessen, for no hardship, nor for any misery, nor for fear of death, though I should

and that she will never give up her love for the Lord. They hang her up by her hair, and beat her again.

She prays to God for strength.

hit al þuldliche þolede for drihtin. ƿ hwen ha felde meaft far; fikerlukeft feide. Haldeð longe *ne leaue ƿe neauer. for nulle ich leauen hiſ luue. þat ich on leue. ne for luue. nowðer ne for luðer eie.

*[Fol. 43b.]

[E]leufius iherde þiſ. ƿ feng hiſ neb to rudnin ant tendrin ut of teone. ƿ hehte ſwiðe neomen hire ƿ teon biþe top up; ƿ ſwa me dude ſone. ſwa þat ha hongede feor from þer eorðe. bi þe uaxane. ƿ leiden þa ſe luðerliche on hire on euch halue; þat euch dunt deſde in hire leofliche lich þe ƿet of þe ƿerden al o gure blode. lauerd godd almihti quoð ha loke to þi meiden. þu fondedeſt abraham. ƿ fundeſt him treowe. leſ me þat ich mote. þe treowliche luuien. Halt me healent min ihesu criſt godeſ ſune aſ þu haueſt bigunnen. for nam ich ſtrong of na þing buten of þi ſtrengðe. ƿ o þe itrufte al; ƿ nawt o me feoluen. ant her ich bihate þe. ſwuch hope ich habbe to þin help. milde godd al mihti. ne ſchal neauer mi luue. ne mi bileaue towart te lutlin ne lihen. for na derf ne for na deað; þat ich ſchule drehen.

Handwritten notes:
- he is not
as in the
word all
in Royal
d

bore it all patiently for þe Lord, and when ſhe felt moſt ſoreneſſe ſhe confidently ſaid, “Hold on long, nor ever leave off, for I will not leave hiſ love, on whom I believe, neiþer for love nor for fear.”

Eleufius heard þiſ, and began to be red in face, and to burn out of vexation, and gave orders quickly to take her and draw her up by þe hair of þe head, and ſo waſ ſoon done, ſo þat ſhe hung far from þe earð by þe hair, and þey laid upon her ſo villanouſly on each ſide þat every blow dinted into her lovely body, which ran off þe rods all in gory blood. “Lord God Almighty,” quoð ſhe, “look on þy maiden. þou temptedſt Abraham and foundſt him true; grant me þat I may be able truly to love þee. Hold me, Saviour mine, Jeſu Chriſt, Son of God, as þou haſt begun; for I am not ſtrong of any þing but of þy ſtrengð, and I truſt altogeþer in þee and not at all in myſelf, and here I promiſe þee, ſuch hope I have for þine help, mild God Almighty, never ſhall my love, nor my belief towards þee leſſen nor prove falſe, for any harm nor for any deað þat I ſhall endure.”

She is ſuſpended by the hair of the head.

She prays.

drehen. þa elewfiuf ifeh þif þat ha þuf feng on to feftnen
 hire feoluen þohte þat he walde anan don hire ut of
 dahene ⁊ bed fwiðe bringen hire brune of wallinde breaf
 ant healden on hire heauet þat hit urne endelong hire leof-
 liche bodi dun to þe helen ant fwa me dude fone. ah hire
 hende healent wifte hire unweommet. elewfiuf warð wod
 ut of his witte. ant nuſte hwet ſeggen ⁊ het fwiðe don hire
 ut of his ehfiðe. ⁊ dreihen hire into darc huf ⁊ priſunef
 pine. ant he duden ſone. Heo af ha þrinne wef in
 þeofterneffe hire ane feng te cleopien to criſt ant bidden
 þeof bone.

LAuerd godd al mihti. mi murðe ant mi mede mi
^{victory}
 fy ant mi ſelðe þu iſiſt hu ich am biſtaðet ant
 biſtonden feftne mi bileaue ſteor me ant ſtreng me. for

suffer it." When Eleusius saw this, that she thus began to
 establish herself, he thought that he would anon do her out
 of days (*i.e.* put her to death), and bade quickly bring to
 her burning of boiling brass, and pour it upon her head so
 that it might run along her lovely body down to the heels,
 and so it was soon done; but her courteous Saviour kept
 her unblemished. Eleusius became raging, out of his wits,
 and knew not what to say, and bade her quickly to be put
 out of his eyesight, and dragged into a dark house and
 prisons pain; and they did (so) soon. She, when she was
 therein in darkness by herself, began to call upon Christ,
 and to pray this prayer:—

“Lord God Almighty, my joy and my meed, my victory
 and my happiness, thou seest how I am bestead and be-
 stood; confirm my belief, steer me and strengthen me, for

Eleusius, wishing
 to take her life,
 has boiling brass
 poured over her;
 but it does not
 harm her.

Then he bids
 them drag her
 into a dark
 prison.

She prays:—
 “Lord, strengthen
 me, for

[**þ**]a eleufius feh þat ha þus feng on to feftnin hire feoluen ifoðe bileaue; þohte he walde don hire anan ut of dahene: ƿ bed biliue bringen forð brune wallinde bref. ƿ healden hit fe wal *hat hehe up on hire heaued. þat hit urne enddelong hire leofliche lich adun to hire healen. Me dude al af he het. Ah þe worldeſ wealdent þat wiſte ſein iuhan hiſ ewanigelifte unhurt iþe ueat of wallinde eoli þer he weſ idon in. þat aſe hal com up þrof; af he weſ hal meiden. þe ilke liueſ lauerd. wiſte him unwemmet. hiſ brud of þe bref þat weſ wallinde. ſwa þat ne þuhte hit hire buten aſe wlech weater al þat ha felde. Eleufiuſ wod þa nuſte hwet ſegen. Ah hehte ſwiðe don hire ut of hiſ ehfiðe. ƿ dreaien in to dorc huſ to priſunef pine ant ſwa ha weſ idon ſone.

*[Fol. 45, wrongly numbered.]

[**H**]eo af ha þrinne weſ i þeofterneſſe hire ane. feng to cleopien to criſt ƿ bidde þeof bone. lauerd godd almihti mi murhðe ƿ mi mede. mi fy ƿ al þe ſelðe. þat ich eſter ſeche þu fiſt al hu ich am biſteaðet ƿ biſtonden. feſtne mi bileaue. Riht me ƿ read me.

When Eleusius ſaw þat þus he was proceeding to eſtabliſh her in þe true faið, he ðought he would put her anon out of light of day, and bade forðwiþ bring forð fiery glowing braſs, and hold ſo glowing hot high up on her head þat it ſhould run along her lovely body down to her heels. Men did as he ordered. But þe Ruler of þe world, who ſaved Saint John hiſ evangelist unhurt in þe veſſel of boiling oil in which he was put, who came up out of it as ſound as he was a perfect maiden man, þe ſame Lord of Life, ſaved for himſelf unpolluted hiſ bride from þe braſs þat was glowing, ſo þat all þat ſhe felt ſeemed to her but as lukewarm water. Eleusius þen madly knew not what to ſay, but ordered her haſtily to be removed from hiſ preſence and dragged to a dark houſe, to priſons pain: and ſo was ſoon done.

Boiling braſs is poured on her.

(Tertullian de Preſcript. Hæret. xxxvi.)

She is ſent to priſon.

She, when ſhe was therein in darkneſs by herſelf, began to cry to Chriſt and pray þiſ prayer, "Lord God Almighty, my joy and my reward, my triumph and all þe happineſs þat ever I ſeek, þou ſeeſt how I am beſtead and beſtood; confirm my faið; direct me and counſel me,

She prays.

al mi strence is uppon þe. mi feder. ⁊ mi moder for ich
 nulle forfaken þe: habbeð forfaken me ⁊ al mi ^{nearest} nest falde
 cun me heaneð þet schulden mine freond beon: beoð me
 meft feondes ant mine hinen me beoð meft heanen ah
 habbich þin anef help ich am wil cweme ne leaf þu me
 neuer liuende lauereð as þu wifest daniel bimong þe wode
 * [Leaf 61, back.] leunf ant te þreo chil*dren ananie zacharie misael inempnet.
 biwifest unweomet from þe ferliche fur of þe furneise
 swa þu wite ant witen me to witen me from sunne. lauereð
 þurh þif leafe lif: lead me to leste to þe hauene of
 heale af þu leddest israeles folc þurh þe reade sea buten
 schip druifot ant hare fan senchest þat ham efter sohten
 afal þu mine famen ant to drif drihtin þen deouel þat
 me derueð. for ne mei na mon wið uten þi strence
 stonden him azeines lef me þat ich mote ifeon him zet

all my strength
is in thee.

all my strength is in thee. My father and my mother,
 because I will not forsake thee, have forsaken me, and all
 my nearest kindred afflict me; (they) who should be my
 friends are my greatest enemies, and my hinds are my
 greatest afflictions. But if I have the help of thee alone,
 I am content; never leave me, living Lord. As thou
 protectedst Daniel among the raging lions, and guardedst
 unhurt the three children, named Ananias, Zacharias,
 Misael, from the fearful fire of the furnace, so protect and
 preserve me to shield me from sin. Lord, through this
 false life, lead me to the lasting (life), to the haven of
 salvation, as thou leddest the people of Israel through the
 Red Sea, without ship, dryfoot, and sunkest their foes that
 pursued them; fell thou my foemen and drive off, Lord,
 the devil who afflicts me, for no man without thy strength
 can stand against him. Grant me that I may yet see him

As thou didst
 protect Daniel
 among the raging
 lions, and the
 three children in
 the fiery furnace,
 so preserve me;
 lead me to the
 haven of salva-
 tion, even as thou
 leddest Israel
 dryfoot through
 the Red Sea.

for al mi trust if on þe. Steor me ⁊ streng me for al mi strengðe if of þe. mi feader ⁊ mi moder for þi þat ich nule þe forsaken ; habbe forsake me. ⁊ al mi neffalde eun. þat schulde beo me best freond ; beoð me meast feondes. ⁊ mine inhinen ; alre meast hea[r]men. herewurðe healent. habbe *ich þin anef help. ich am wilcweme ne forleaf þu me nawt luuiende lauerd. af þu biwifest daniel bimong þe wode liunf ilatet se luðere. ⁊ te þreo children þe chearre nalden from þe lahen þat ha schulden luuien. Ananie ⁊ Azarie ⁊ Misahel inempnet. Al þu al wealdent biwifest ham unwemmet. wid þat ferliche fur i þe furneise. swa þu wunne of þe worlt wite me ⁊ were ⁊ witere. ⁊ wisse þurh þi wifdom to wite me wið funne. lauerd liuf lattow. lead me þurh þif lease. þis lutle leastinde lif ; to þe hauene of heale. Af þu leaddest israeles leode of egipte bute schip dru fot þurh þe reade sea. ⁊ asenchttest hare uan þe ferden ham efter. ⁊ tu folkes feader. aual mine vamen. ⁊ tu drihtin to drif þe deouel þat me derueð. for ne mei na monnes strengðe

*[Fol. 45b.]

for all my trust is in þee. Rule me and strengðen me for all my strengð is from þee. My faþer and my moþer, because I will not forsake þee, have forsaken me, and all my nearest kindred, þat should be best friends to me, are my greatest foes, and my indoor hinds are of all my greatest afflictions. Glory, worðy Saviour ! I have þine only help : I am content, abandon me not, Loving Lord ! as þou protectedst Daniel among þe mad lions abandoned so vilely, and þe ðree children named Ananias, Azarias, and Misael, who would not turn from þe laws þat þey ought to love. All þem, þou Allruler, þou protectedst unstained against þat frightful fire in þe furnace ; so, þou Joy of þe world, protect and defend and preserve and save me wiþ þy wisdom to save me from sin. O Lord, Guide of life, lead me þrough þis false, þis shortlasting life, to þe haven of salvation ; as þou leddest Israels people out of Egypts land wiþout ship, dryfoot, þrough þe Red Sea, and sunkest þeir foes, which marched after þem ; and do þou, Faþer of people, swallow up my foemen, and do þou, Lord, drive off þe devil þat harms me, for no mans strengð

fchent : þat weneð me to fchrenchen ant fchunchen of þe
 weie : þat leadeð to eche lif. wite me from his lað ant wið
 his crefti crokes. wite me wið mine unwines þat tu beo
 euer iheret ant iheiet in heouene ant in eorðe beo þu áá
 iblefcet af þu were ant art. ant euer schalt beon in eche
 bliffe. amen.

Þa ha hefde ibeden þuf. com a kempe of helle in
 englene heowe ant feng on to motin wið þif
 edie meiden. Iuliane þe edie mi leof. þu haueft for
 mi luue muchel idrohen ant idrehen ant haueft for
 mi luue. feorliche fan þat te wið fehteð þat oðrome
 greieð þe alles cunef pinen. ne mei ich hit þolien
 þat ha þuf merren þe na mare þu haueft inoh min
 freontfchipe of-feruet. me areoweð þi read, ah hercne
 me nuðen. wurch elewfiufes wil. for ich zeue þe leue.

confounded who thinks to make me shrink and step from
 the way that leads to eternal life. Protect me from his
 hatred and his crafty devices, guard me against my
 enemies, that thou mayst ever be praised and extolled, in
 heaven and in earth. Be thou ay blessed, as thou wert,
 and art, and ever shalt be in eternal bliss. Amen."

When she had prayed thus, there came a warrior of hell
 in form of angels, and began to discourse with this blessed
 maiden. "Juliana the blessed, my dear, thou hast borne
 and suffered much for my love, and hast for my love
 strange foes that fight against thee, that in anger prepare
 for thee pains of every kind. I cannot endure it, that they
 mar thee thus any more; thou hast sufficiently merited
 my friendship; I rue thy purpose; but hearken to me
 now. Work Eleusiuses will, for I give thee leave."

Preserve me
 from mine ene-
 mies, that thou
 mayest be ever
 praised, in hea-
 ven and earth."

A devil in angel-
 form comes to
 her, and tells
 her she has suf-
 fered enough,
 and that she may
 work the will of
 Eleusius.

Good
 enough reward

wiðuten þin stonden him to ʒeines. lef¹ me þat ich mote¹ MS. lef.
 mihti meinfulu godd iseon him ischeomet ʒet þe weneð
 me to schrenchen. ⁊ schunchen of þe nearowe wei þat
 leadeð to eche lif. loke me from his lað liuende lauerð.
 Make me war ⁊ wite me wið his cresti crokef. þat ha
 me ne crechen. were me fwa wið þen vnwiue. helpelef
 heale. þat tu beo iheiet ⁊ iheret eaure in eorðe. af in
 heouene. *Beo þu aa iblefoet lauerd af þu were ant art *[Fol. 47, mis-
 ⁊ schalt beon in eche. should be 46.]

As ha þeof bone hefde ibeden; com akempe of helle
 on englene heowe. ⁊ feng on to motin þus wið
 his meiden. Juliene mi leofmon þu haueft for mi luue
 muchel idrohen ⁊ idrahen þu haueft feorliche fan þat te
 fetteð aʒein. ha greiðið þe o grome nu allef cunnes
 pinen. ne mei ich þolien. þat ha þuf mearren þe na mare.
 þu art inoñ ifondet ⁊ tu haueft mi freondschiþe inoh
 fwiðe offeruet. me areoweð þi far. Ah [hercne] nuðe
 mi read. wurch eleufiuf wil. for ich þe ʒeoue leaue.

wiþout þine can stand against him: permit me, Mighty,
 Mainful God, to be able to see him yet ashamed þat expects
 to make me shrink and step from þe narrow way þat
 leadeð to eternal life. Protect me from his hate, Loving
 Lord, make me wary and guard me against his crafty
 crooks, þat þey may never catch me; so ward me against
 þe evil one, Safety of þe helpless, þat þou mayst ever be
 extolled and glorified for ever in earð, as in heaven. Be
 þou ever blessed, Lord, as þou wert, and art, and shalt be,
 to eternity. Amen."

When she had bidden þis bede, þere came a champion
 of hell in hue of angels, and began to discuss þus wiþ
 þis noble maiden. "Juliana, my dear, þou hast suffered
 and endured much for my love: þou hast strange foes
 þat fight against þee, þey are preparing now in rage pains
 of all sorts; I cannot endure it, þat þey should mar þee
 any more; þou hast been enough tried, and þou hast
 þoroughly enough observed my friendship. þi sore I rue.
 But hearken now to my counsel; and work þe wil of
 Eleusius, for I give þee leave."

A devil in an
 angels shape
 consoles her.

* [Leaf 62.]

þif meiden wef awun*dret fwiðe ant þah feng to freinen þuf eweðinde. hwet hwiht art tu þat fwuch word me bringeft. ich am quoð þat unwiht godes heh engel. for to seggen þe þif ifend from þe heouene. Heo awundrede fwiðe ant tah af þeo þet nes nawt of lihte bileaue on heh wið hire heorte stille bute stefne þuf to crifte cleopede

IEfu quoð ha godes fune þu art þi feder wiðdom wiðfe me nuðen hwet me beo to donne ant do me to underftonden 3ef þif if þi fonde þat me þif feið. þa com þer softe a stefne fihinde from þe heouene fihinde ant þuf eweðinde. Iuliane þe edie iblescet beo þe time þat tu iboren were. nule nawt þi leouemon þolien na þe lef þing lihen þe longe. hit if þe fstronge deouel þat ffont ter biforen þe ga neor ant nim him ant bind him heteffete godd al mihti 3eueð þe gode leue ant þe mahte hit forte donne t tu schalt him leaden efter þat te likeð ant he schal unþone in his teð cuðen þe þat tu wilneft.

Juliana is greatly astonished.

This maiden was astonished greatly, and notwithstanding began to inquire, thus saying: "What being art thou that bringest me such word?" "I am," quoth the Evil Being, "Gods archangel, sent from heaven to tell thee this." She wondered much, and yet, as one who was not of light belief, on high, with her heart, stilly without voice, thus to Christ called:—

She prays:—
"Jesus, make me to know whether this is thy messenger."
A voice from heaven answers that it is the devil, and bids Juliana bind him fast.

"Jesu," quoth she, "Son of God, thou art thy fathers wisdom; teach me now what I am to do, and give me to understand if this is thy messenger that says this to me." Then came there softly a voice descending from heaven, descending and thus saying: "Juliana, the blessed, blessed be the time that thou wert born, thy leman will by no means suffer the false thing to lie to thee long. It is the strong devil that stands there before thee. Go nigher and take him and bind him fast. God Almighty gives thee good leave and the might to do it. And thou shalt lead him according as thou pleasest; and he shall, in spite of his teeth, make known to thee what thou desirest."

Þes meiden wef awundret fwiðe of þes wordes. ⁊ af ha wef offearet; feng on to freinin. Hwet wiht *quoð* ha art tu. þat þulli word me bringest. Ich hit am *quoð* þe unwiht. godes heh engel. forte segge þe þis isent te from heouene. Ha wundrede hire fwiðe. ⁊ af þeo þe nef nawt of lihte bileaue. stille bute steauene on heh in hire heorte cleopede to criste.

IHesu *quoð* ha godes sune þat art þi feader wisdom wisse me þi wummon hwet me beo to donne. ⁊ zef þi deore wil if do me to understonden. þat þe þat þif seið me zef he beo þi fonde. ⁊ com sihinde adun softe¹ from heouene. ¹ MS. softe. asteuene þat seide. Juliene. þe eadie *iblefset beo þe ^{*[Fol. 47b.]} time. þat tu ibore were. nule nawt þi leofmon þolie na leas þing ta lihe þe longe. Hit if þe stronge vnwiht þe front ter of helle. Ga nu near ⁊ nim him. ⁊ wið þe bondef þat ter beoð bind him heteueste. Godd al mihti zeueð þe mahte for te don hit. ⁊ tu schalt leaden him al effter þat te likeð. ⁊ he schal al telle þe vnþonc in his teð þat tu wilnest to witen. ⁊ kenne þe ⁊ cuðen al þat tu eafkest.

Pis maiden was much astonished at þese words, and terrified as she was, began to inquire, "What being," *quoð* she, "art þou þat bringest me such a message?" "I am," *quoð* þe Evil One, "Gods archangel, sent from heaven to tell þee þis." She wondered much, and as one þat was not of light belief, stilly in her heart wiþout raised voice, called on Christ.

She suspects his words.

"Jesu," *quoð* she, "Son of God, þat art þy fap̄ers wisdom, instruct me, þy handmaid, what I must do; and if it be þy dear will, cause me to understand, wheþer he be þy messenger þat saið this to me." And þere came descending down soft from heaven a voice þat þus said to her, "Juliana, þe saintly, blessed be þe time þat þou born wert; þy leman will not endure, þat any false ðing deceive þee any longer. It is þe strong Evil One of hell who stands þere." Go now near and take him and wiþ þe bonds þat be þere bind him fast; God Almighty giveð þee power for to do it, and þou shalt lead him wheresoever it pleaseð þee; and he shall tell þee all in spite of his teeð þat þou choostest to know, and shall inform þee and explain all þat þou askest."

Prays.

A voice from heaven.

þif eadie meiden af heo wef iwiffet of þen engel leop to ant
 lahte him ant feide. Swiðe fei me hwet art þu ant hwe-
 onne ant hwa þe hider fende ant he wende heowes t warð
 fwuch af he her wes unwiht of helle. lefdi quoð he lef me
 ant ich þe wule feggen. Swiðe quoð ha fei me for ich for
 ichulle þe leowfin ant leauen hwen me þuncheð. Deore lefdi
 [Leaf 62, back.] quoð *he þa ich am þe deouel belial deøflene wureft ant
 mest if awariet. for wel nis me neuer bute hwen ich makie
 moncun wurchen to wundre. ich weorp adam ant eue of
 paraifes prude. ant þene acurfede kaym to acwellen abel
 his broðer. ant te þreo children þat icoren weren beon
 iduft in þe fur of þe ofne. ant ich makede nabugodonofor þe
 king of caldey makien þe mawmez igoten of golde. ant ich
 makede þen wittie yfaye beon ifahet þurh ant þurh to deaðe.

Juliana seizes the
 devil, and asks
 him whence he
 comes, and who
 sent him.

He tells her that
 he is the devil
 Belial, who cast
 Adam and Eve
 out of Paradise,
 and caused Cain
 to slay his bro-
 ther.

This blessed maiden, as she was instructed by the angel, leapt to and seized him, and said, "Quickly tell me what thou art, and whence, and who sent thee hither." And he changed colour, and became such as he before was, an evil being of hell. "Lady," quoth he, "leave me and I will tell thee." "Quickly tell me," quoth she, "for I will loose thee and leave thee when it seems good to me." "Dear lady," quoth he then, "I am the devil Belial, worst of devils and most accurst; for it is never well with me, save when I make mankind work strangely. I cast Adam and Eve out of the pride of Paradise, and (caused) the accursed Cain to slay Abel his brother, and the three children that were chosen, to be dashed into the fire of the oven; and I caused Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Chaldea, to make the idols molten of gold; and I made the prophet Isaiah to be sawed through and through to death;

þif eadi meiden af ha wef iwiffet þurh þen engel; leop to t ilahte him. t feide. fei me fwiðe. hwet tu beo t hweonene. t hwa þe hider fende. ant he wið þat ilke feng to hwenden heowef. ant warð fwuch af he wef vnhwiht of helle. leafdi *quoð* he leaf me. t ich chulle feggen. Do fwiðe fei me for ich chulle lowfe þe t leten hwen me þuncheð.

Deore leafdi. *quoð* he þa ich hit am þe deuuel belial of alle unwreſte unwhihtef þe wurſte t meafst awarriet. for niſ me neauer wel ne neſ; bute hwen ich madeke moncun to wurche to wundre. Ich hit am. þat weorp ut adam t eue; of paraife ſelhðe. t ich hit am þat madeke caym þe acurfede acwalde hiſ broðer abel. ant ich hit am þat madeke nabugodonofor. þe kene king of caldey makien þe maumez igoten al of golde. ant ich *hit am þat madeke þat te þreo children icoren ouer þe oþre; weren iduſt to fordon iþet ferliche fur of þe muchele ouen. ant ich hit am þat madeke þen muchele witti witege yfaie. beon iſahet þurh t þurh to deaðe.

but of a difference
*[Fol. 48.]

Dis holy maiden, when she was instructed by þe angel, leapt at him and caught him, and ſaid, "Tell me quickly, what þou art and whence, and who ſent þee hiþer;" and he wiþ þat ſame took to turning colour; and became ſuch as he was an evil one of hell. "Lady," *quoð* he, "leave me and I will ſay." "Do quickly, tell me; for I will looſe þe and let go, when it ſeemeð good to me."

She ſeizes the devil.

"Dear lady," *quoð* he þen, "I am ſo, þe devil belial of all cunning evil ones þe worſt and moſt accuſed; for it is never well wiþ me nor was, but when I made mankind to work for miſchief. I am he who caſt out Adam and Eve from para-diſe joy; I am he þat made Cain, þe accuſed, ſlay hiſ broþer Abel, and I am he þat made Nebuchadnezzar, þe keen king of Chaldea, make þe molten images all of gold; and I am he þat cauſed þe ðree children, elect beyond oþers, to be daſhed into þe ſtrange fire of þe big oven to periſh; and I am he þat cauſed þe great witty profet Iſaiah to be ſawed þrough and þrough to deaðe.

The devil avows himſelf.

ƿ ich makede tenden ierusalem ant driuen hit to duſte
 þet deore godeſ temple. ant ich make[de] ifraheleſ folc
 to leuen iþat wilderneſſe þen lauerd þat heom alefde: ant
 igotene godes to heien ant te herien. ant ich þe þat refde
 þen riche iob his ahte. ƿ wrahte ſo muche wondreðe. ant
 ich am þat weſ ſum hwile þurh þe wiſe ſalomon feſte
 bitunet. ƿ ich am þe makede ſein iuhan hefdeſ bicoruen.
 ant ſeinte ſtefne mid ſtaneſ iſtenet. ƿ ich am þe þet ſpec
 þurh ſymoneſ muð þe wicche. þet weorrede euer aþein
 peter ant pawel ant ich redde nerrun: þe riche keifer of
 rome to bihefden pawel ant don peter on rode ant ich
 makede þat te cniht þurlede criſteſ ſide mit te ſpere
 ſcharpe. þah ich þe talde al dei ne mahte ich þe tellen þe
 wundref þat ich iwraht hadde ant meſt monne bone ibeon
 of alle mine breðren. Do ſei me quod þat meiden hwa
 ſende þe to me ant if meiſter ouer þe. leſdi quod he

and I made Jerusalem to be set on fire, and the dear temple
 of God driven to dust; and I made Israels people in the
 wilderness to leave the Lord who delivered them, and to
 extol and to praise molten gods. And I (am) he that
 spoiled the rich Job of his possessions, and wrought him
 so much misery; and I am he that was at one time fast
 inclosed by the wise Solomon; and I am he that made
 St. John to be beheaded, and St. Stephen stoned with
 stones; and I am he that spake through the mouth of
 Simon Magus, who warred ever against Peter and Paul;
 and I counselled Nero, the rich emperor of Rome, to
 behead Paul and crucify Peter; and I caused the knight
 to pierce Christs side with the sharp spear. Though I
 should tell thee all day, I could not tell thee (all) the
 wonders that I have wrought; and (I have) been the bane
 of men more than all my brethren."

"I am he that
 spoiled Job of
 his possessions,
 caused St. John
 to be beheaded,
 and Stephen to
 be stoned with
 stones."

"Tell me," quoth
 she, "who is thy
 master?"

"Come, tell me," quoth the maiden, "who sent thee
 to me, and is master over thee?" "Lady," quoth he,

ant ich hit am þat makede to ontenden ierusalem. ⁊ godes
deore temple to driuen al to dufte. ant ich hit am þat
makede. ⁊ readde ifraēles folc to leauen iþe wilderneffe.
þe lauerd þat alefde ham of pharaones þeowdom. ⁊ makeden
ham godes igotene. to heien ⁊ to herien. ant ich hit am þe
reafde þe riche Job his ahte. fwa þat he weolewede of
wontreðe iþe mixne. ant ich hit am þat fum chearre wef
þurh þe wiſe Salomon et halden. ant ich hit am þet makede
fein iuhan þe baptiſte beon heafdes bicoruen; ⁊ ſeinte
ſtephene iſteanet. ant ich hit am þat ſpec þurh ſimuneſ
muð. þe wicche. þe weorrede eauer aȝein peter ⁊ pawel.
ant ich hit am þe readde nerun þe riche keifer of rome to
don o rode peter. ⁊ to biheafdin pawel. ant ich makede þe
cniht to þurlin godes fide wið ſcharpe ſperes ord. þah
ich talde al dei; ȝet ich mahte tellen. for ma wundref
ich hadde iwraht; þene ich mahte munien. ⁊ ma monne
bone ibeon; þen ei of mine breðren.¹

Do ſei me quoð þe meiðen. hwa ſende þe to me :
ant hwa *if meiſter ouer þe. leafdi quoð he

¹ MS. brre-
ðren.

*[Fol. 48b.]

And I am he þat made Jerusalem be set on fire and
Gods dear temple to be driven all to dust. And I am
he caused and counselled þe people of Israel in þe wil-
derness to leave þe Lord þat released þem from Pharaohs
servitude, and to make þemselves molten gods to extol
and glorify. And I am he who robbed þe rich Job of
his possessions, so þat he wallowed up for misery on
þe mixen. And I am he þat once on a time was bottled
up by þe wise Solomon. And I am he þat caused
Saint John þe Baptist to be beheaded, and St. Stefanos
stoned. And I am he þat spoke þrough þe mouð of
Simon Magus, who warred always against Peter and
Paul: and I am he þat counselled Nero, þe powerful
emperor of Rome, to crucify Peter, and to behead Paul;
and made þe soldier to pierce Christs side with a sharp
spears point. Þough I weré to recount all day, yet I
could not tell all; for more miseries have I wrought þan
I could remember, and have been bane of more men þan
any of my breþren."

See notes to the
Koran.

Longinus.

"Come, tell me," quoð þe maiden, "who sent þe to
me; and who is master over þee." "Lady," quoð he,

* [Leaf 63.]

béelzebub * þe alde þurf of helle, ant wet were if þat he meft wurcheð. lefdi 3ef þi wil if he ifindeð al uuel ant bi þencheð al. ant fend us þenne hwider fo him þuncheð. ʒ hwa fe wel ne ſpet nawt hwen he ſent us to wrenchen eni rihtwiſe ut of þe weie ant we ne mahen þet don: þenne darie we. ʒ ne durren neuer cumen biuoren him ʒ he hatterliche hat þeo. þat haddeð iwraht efter hiſ wille þat hwer fo ha uſ findeð: beaten uſ ant binden. ʒ mare wa don uſ þen euer eni mon mahte þolien. For þi we moten lefdi: buhen to ure leowunde lauerd ant wurchen hiſ wille.

SEI me 3et witerluker quod ha hwuchef weif 3e wurcheð ant bicherreð godes children. Leſdi quod he iuliane? þe ifont ant hadde ifulet me to wraðer-heale. ich wende to habben ilead þe into þin aldrene lahen ant makien þe to leauen þe lue of þi lauerd. ant feng to fondin þe ant ich am afallet. Hwer fo euer eni mon god wule biginnen we makieð him to þenchen þonckes þer to 3ineſ ant wenden hare heorte toward oþer willes þat wulleð ham harmen. ant makien ham to

"Beelzebub," says he; "he invents all evil, and sends us forth whither he will."

"Beelzebub, the old giant of hell." "And what work is it that he most works?" "Lady, if it is thy will, he invents all evil, and considers all, and sends us then, whitherso seems him good, and whoso speeds not well when he sends us to wrench any righteous person out of the way, and we cannot do that, then we loiter and dare never come before him; and he fiercely orders those that have wrought according to his will, whereso they find us, to beat and bind us, and cause us more woe than ever any man could endure. Therefore we must, lady, bow to our living lord, and work his will."

"Tell me how ye work and deceive Gods children."

"Tell me yet more plainly," quoth she, "in what way ye work and deceive Gods children." "Lady," quoth he, "Juliana, thee I found and have followed to my ruin; I thought to have led thee into thy parents customs, and to make thee leave the love of thy Lord; and began to tempt thee, and I am overthrown. Wheresoever any man will begin good, we make him to think thoughts in the opposite direction, and to turn their hearts toward other desires that will harm them, and make them to

"Wherever a man begins to do good, we make him to think other thoughts that will harm him."

belzeebub. þe balde þurf of helle. Hwet if *quoð* ha his were. ⁊ hwet wurcheð he mest; leafdi þef þi wil if. he ifint euch uel ⁊ biþencheð hit al. ⁊ sendeð uf þenne þider as him þuncheð. ⁊ hwen we nawt ne fpedeð ne ne mahen wrenchen sum rihtwif of þe weie; we dearieð ⁊ ne durren nohwer cume biuoren him. ⁊ he heterliche hat þeo þat habbeð iwraht efter hiç wille. Hwer se ha uf ifinden. beaten uf. ⁊ binden ⁊ don uf mare wa on; þen ei mon mahte þolien. for þi we moten leafdi buhen fwiðe. ⁊ beien to ure luuewrðe feader. ⁊ wurchen alle hiç willes.

Sei *quoð* ha witerluker zet. hu ze wurchen ⁊ o hwuche wife ze bichearreð godes children. leafdi *quoð* he Juliene þe ich font. ⁊ habbe ifolhet me to wraðer heale; Ich wende iwif to leade þe into þine ealdrene lahen. ⁊ makie to leauen þe luue of þi lauerd. ant feng on to fondin þe. ah ich am aueallet. Ich chulle kenne þe nu al þat tu eafkest Hwer se we eauer ifeoð mon oðer wummon eani god biginnen; we wepnið uf aþein ham. ⁊ makieð ifwiken al þat best mahte wenden hare heorte ant [we]

“Belzebub, þe bold portent of hell.” “What is,” *quoð* she, “his work? and what workeð he most?” “Lady, if it is þy will, he discovers each evil and invents it all, and þen sendeð us hiþer as seemeð him fit; and when we have no success, nor are able to twist some rightwise person out of þe way, we loiter, and we dare not come into his presence, and he fiercely orders þem þat have wrought according to his will, wheresoever þey find us, to beat us and bind us and do us more woe, þan any man might endure; þerefore, lady, we must bow entirely, and bend to our loveworðy faþer and work all his will.”

“Say,” *quoð* she, “more distinctly yet, how ye work and in what wise ye turn astray Gods children.” “Lady,” *quoð* he, “Juliana, þee I found and have followed to my own ruin. I weened, in truð, to lead þee into þe customs of þy ancestors, and to make þee to leave þe love of þy Lord, and began to tempt þee, but I am disappointed. I will explain to þe now all þat þou askest. Wheresoever we see a man or a woman begin any good, we arm ourselves against him, and we make to cease all þat best might turn þeir heart, and we

The prince of the devils.

The devil is cross-examined; and reveals the secrets of hell.

leofen forto bidden ȝeorne þat godd binime ham þene wil
 þat we ham in warpeð. ƿ heo unftrenged þerwið ant we
 ftrenged on ham. ƿ ouerftiheð ham er ha left wenen. ƿ ȝef ha
 gað to chirche to bireowfen hare funnen. ƿ liðeliche luftnin
 hali writen lare : þer we beoð bifilukeft ant þer mare þen
 *[[Leaf 63, back.] elles hwer. to letten ham ƿ wrenchen hare þonckes *to-
 ward oðer unnute þingef. ah þeo ilke þat beoð ftalewurðe
 ha underftondeð ham ant warpeð mid ftrencðe ut of hare
 heorte hare unwrefte wil þat ich in ham warpe ƿ ȝeorn-
 liche ȝeieð efter godes grace to helpe. ant þenne meft hwen
 þe preoſt inwið þe meffe noteð godes licome þet he nom
 on þe laftelefe meiden þer if riht bileaue ant inward þone
 ant fwa icweme to godd : þet þenne biginne we to fleonne
 ant turneð to þe luſte ant þif if al þat we doð te deruen
 criſtene men ant eggin to þen ueele.

loſe (the deſire) to pray earneſtly that God may take away
 from them the deſire that we caſt into them; and they be-
 come weak therewith, and we grow ſtrong againſt them,
 and ſurmount them before they the leaſt think it. And if
 they go to church to repent of their ſins, and mildly liſten
 to the lore of holy writings, there we are moſt busy, and
 there more than elſewhere, to hinder them and twiſt their
 thoughts toward other and uſeleſſ things. But thoſe who
 are ſtalwart, they underſtand them, and with ſtrength
 caſt out of their hearts their wicked will that I caſt into
 them, and earneſtly cry after Gods grace to help, and then
 eſpecially when the prieſt in the maſſ partakes of Gods
 body which he took in the blameleſſ maiden; there is
 right belief and inward prayer, and ſo pleaſing to God,
 that then we begin to fly and turn to the air; and this is
 all that we do to harm Chriſtian men, and egg them on to
 the evil.”

“If they go to church to hear the lore of Holy Writ, we turn their thoughts to uſeleſſ things. But thoſe who are ſtrong cry to God for help; then we begin to fly and turn to the air.”

makien ham to þenchen þohtes þer toʒeines. ⁊ wendeð to oðer willef þat ham wulleð hearmin. ⁊ makieð ham forte leofe lust. forte bidde ʒerne þat godd bineo*me ham þe wil : þat we in ham warpeð ⁊ unftrengið þer wið. ⁊ we ftrenged þer wið on ham al ear¹ ha left ¹ MS. car. wenen. ⁊ ʒef we feoð ham ʒeornliche fechen to chirche. ⁊ ter fwiðe bi ham feolf bireowfin hare funnen. ⁊ leofliche luftnin hali chirche lare. þer we beoð ʒetten bifiliche ham abuten. ⁊ mare þer þen ellef hwer to letten ham ʒef we mahen. ⁊ wrenchen hare þonkef towart unnette þingef. Ah hwucche fe beoð fe stealewurðe; þat ha underftonden ham ⁊ warpeð ut wið ftrengðe; ut of hare heorte. unwreaſte willef þat ich ham in warpe. ⁊ ʒeornliche ʒeiʒeð efter godef grace to help ⁊ to heale. ⁊ þenne meaſt hwen þe preoſt in wið þe meſſe noteð godef licoe þat he nom of þat laðleſe meiden; þer if riht bileaue. ⁊ inwardliche bonen ſwa icweme to godd. þat i þat ilke time we biginneð to fleon ⁊ turneð to fluhte þis if al þat we doð i criſtemen ⁊ eggið eauer to vuele.

*[Fol. 49.]

¹ MS. car.

make 'em to ðink ðoughts in þe oppoſite direction, and we turn þem to oþer plans which will do þem harm, and we make þem leave þe deſire, earneſtly to pray, þat God would take from þem þe will, which we introduce into þem, and by which we take þeir ſtrengð away; and þus fortified overcome þem, ere þey expect it at þe leaſt; and if we ſee 'em earneſtly ſeek to go to church, and þere fully by þemſelves repent þeir ſins and affectionately liſten to Holy Church lore (Scripture lore R.), þere we are buſily engaged about þem, and þere more þan elſewhere hinder þem if we are able, and twist þeir þoughts to unprofitable ſubjects. But whoſoever are ſo ſtallwart þat þey underſtand þeſe promptings and ðrow out wiþ force out of þeir hearts þe miſchievous wills þat I ſuggeſt to þem, and earneſtly cry Gods grace for help and for healð, and moſt þen when þe prieſt in þe ſervice of þe maſſ partakeð of 'Gods body,' which he took of þat blameleſſ maiden; where true faið exiſts and inward prayer, ſo acceptable to God, in þat ſame moment we begin to flee and turn to flight. Þis is all þat we do on Chriſtian men, and egg þem on ever to evil."

ME 3e ateliche wihtef quoð þif meiden hu durre 3e
neomen ow to criftef icorne. Me feli meiden hu
derftu nu hondlin me ant halden me fwa hardeliche. bute
for þi þat tu art truſti on þi lauerd. ant ich truſte on minne
af þu deſt opinne. ant mi lauerdef wil ich wurchen þat if
meiſter ouer mixſchipe ouer al þer imei. ant 3ef ich mahte
mare ich walde beon þe fenre. ah nat i[c]h hwet me makede
her forte ſechen. bute mi muchel unſeli fið ſohte þe te
ſeonne wumme þat ſiððe ſariliche ſit hit me nē ſet me
neuer naþing fwa luðere ne fwa fwere. wei hwi nefdich
iwif hwuch weane me wef toward. ne mi kinewurðe
lauerd me ne cuðe nawt cuðen. þer of þulli *wa if of
fofter. for let me nu lefdi ant ichulle bileauen þe ant
folhen an oðer. oðer ichulle forwreien to mi meinfulde
feder ah ichulle warnen þe biforen: niſ hit nawt þe biheue.

O quod ha þreateſtu me nu wrecche. þe ſchal
iwurðen godd hit wat godes þe wurfe ant grap
a great raketehe þat heo wes mide ibunden ant bond

“But, ye hateful wights,” quoth this maiden, “how dare ye betake yourselves to Christs chosen?” “But, blessed maiden, how darest thou now handle me, and hold me so hard, but because thou art trustful on thy Lord? and I trust on mine, as thou dost on thine; and I work my lords will, who is master over wretchedness, everywhere that I can; and if I could do more, I should be the gladder. But I know not what made me seek (to come) here, unless my greatly unlucky journey sought to see thee. Woe is me! That sight, sorely it sits upon me; nothing ever sat so evil nor so heavy upon me. Alas! why had I not known what misery was before me? nor my royal lord, he could not inform me thereof. Such woe is of his foster-son, let me go now, lady, and I will leave thee and follow another; another I will bewray to my mighty father. But I will warn thee beforehand, it is not to thy advantage.”

“O,” quoth she, “threatenest thou me now, wretch? It shall turn out the worse for thee, God knows.” And she seized a great chain with which she was bound, and bound

“I know not what has brought me hither. Alas! why did I not see what misery was before me?”

Juliana seizes a great chain and binds

Me þe eateliche wihtef quoð, þat eadi wummon. hu durre þe eauer neomen ow to criftes icorene; me sei me feli meiden quoð he. hu derst tu halde me ⁊ hondlin se heterliche bute þuh þat tu art trusti o þi lauerd. ⁊ ich do af þu dest truste o mi lauerd þat if meister *of alle mixschipef ⁊ wurchen his wil ouer al ase forð af imei. ⁊ þef ich mahte forðre ich walde beo þe feinre. ah nat i hwet vnselisið made me her to fechen. bute mi muchele unselhðe sohte þe to feonne. wumme aa þat sihðe se sariliche hit fit me. ne fet me neauer na þing se luðere ne se fare. wei hwi nefde ich iwist. hwuch weane me wes towart. Ne mi kinewurðe feader ne cuðe nawt warnin of þulli wa his foster. forlet me mi leafdi ⁊ ich chulle al bileaue þe. ⁊ folhin an oþer. oþer ich chulle forwreie þe to meinfulen feader. Ah wel ich warni þe uore. hit nis nawt þin biheue. O quoð ha Juliene ihesu criftes leofmon þreates tu me wrecche; þe schal iwurðen godd hit wat godes þe wurse. ⁊ grap a great raketehes þat ha wes wið ibunden. ⁊ bond

*[Fol. 49b.]

“But, ye odious wights,” quoð þat blessed woman, “how dare ye ever betake yourselves to Christs elect?” “But tell me, seely maiden,” quoð he, “how dost þou hold me and handle me so roughly except because þou art trustful on þy Lord; and I do as þou dost, trust in my Lord, þat is master of all mischiefs, and I work his will above all þings, as far as I may, and I should be fainer if I might do so furþer. But I know not what bad luck made me seek to come here, except þat in my mickle unhap I sought to see þee. Woe is me! Ah, þat sight! it so sorely sits on me! Never did any þing sit on me so wretched nor so sore. Well away! Why had I not known what woes were coming on me! Nor my royal faþer, he could not warn of such a woe his fosterson. Let me go, lady, and I will altogeter quit þee and follow anoþer: some oþer I will betray to my powerful faþer. But well I warn þee beforehand, it is not þy behoof.”

“O,” quoð she, Juliana, Jesus Christs lemman, “dost þou þreaten me, þou wretch? to þee it shall turn out, God wot, so much þe worse.” And she seized a great chain wiþ which she was ibunden, and bound

to his ^{back} ruge ba twa his honden þat him eoc each neil & ^{ached} blakede of þe blode ant hef him up ant duſte him adun
 1 MS. steorue. ruglunge ant ſtod up on þe ſteorne¹ & nom hire ahne bondef
 & bigon to beaten þen belial of helle. ant he to rarin reow-
 liche ant te ʒuren ant te ʒeien. & heo leide ſwa luðerliche
 þat wa wef him onliue.

A Mi lefdi lef me iuliane euening wið apoſtel patriar-
 chen ilich. ant leof wið þe martirs englene ifere
 ant arcanglene freond friðe me ane hwile ich halfi þe
 ogodes half. & on his fune rode. þat we ſo muchel
 dredeð. & oþe pine ant te deð þat he droh for mon milce
 ant merce wummon haue of mi wrechedom. Stew þe
 ſtorne of helle quoð þe edie meiden nif na merci wið
 þe for þi ne aheſtu nan habben. ah ſei me ſwiðe mare of
 þe wa þat tu hauelt mid woh iwraht monne. lefdi lef me
 ant hald þine edie honden ich habbe i-blend men ant
 ibroken ham þe ſchonken & te ſchuldren *baðen. ifur
 iwarpen ant iwater. ant hare ahne blake blod to ſpitten
 ant te ſpeowen ant te an to fleon þat oðer ant hongin him

*[Leaf 64, back.]

both his hands behind him; then she thrusts him down and stands over him, beating him with her chains. He beseeches her to leave him.

to his back both his two hands, so that him ached each nail, and grew black from the blood; and she raised him up and dashed him down backwards, and stood upon the stern one, and took her own bonds, and began to beat the Belial of hell. And he (began) to roar ruefully, and to yell and to cry out; and she laid on so sorely that woe was him alive (i.e. his life was a misery).

“O my lady, leave me, Juliana, equal of apostle, like to patriarchs, and dear to the martyrs, companion of angels and friend of archangels, spare me a while, I entreat thee on Gods behalf, and by his Sons cross that we so much dread, and by the suffering and the death that he endured for man; woman, have compassion and mercy on my misery.” “Stop thee, stern one of hell,” quoth the blessed maiden; “there is no mercy with thee, therefore oughtest thou to have none; but tell me quickly more of the woe that thou hast with wrong wrought upon man.” “Lady, leave me and hold off thy blessed hands. I have blinded men, and broken their shanks and shoulders both, cast them into fire and water, and (made them) to spit and to spew their own black blood, and one to flee the other and hang him-

“Stop, stern one of hell, tell me more of the woe thou hast wrought.”
 “I have blinded men and broken their shanks, cast them into fire and water,

This a Christ... in reply...

bihinden hif rug ba twa hif honden. þat him wrong euch neil 7 blakede of þe blode. 7 duſte him ruglunge adun riht to þer eorðe. 7 ſtondinde o þe ſteorue nom hire ahne bondef 7 bigon to beaten þen belial of helle. 7 he to rarin reowliche. to ʒuren ant to ʒein. 7 heo leide on ſe luðerliche þet wa wef him o liue.

[O] mi leafdi Juliene quoð he. þu¹ euening wið apoſtel. ^{1 MS. þā. added above the line.} patriarchen ilich. 7 leof wið alle martyrf. englene feolahe : 7 archanelne freonð friðe *ane hwhile ich halfi þe o godef half. 7 on hif fune rode. þat we ſe muchel ðredeð. 7 o þe pine 7 o þe deað. þat he droh for moncun milce haue 7 merci wummon of mi wrecchedom. ^{*[Fol. 50.]}

[S]tew þe ſteorue of helle. quoð þat eadie meiden, merci nan niſ wið þe. for þi ne aheft tu nan milce to ifinden. Ah ſei me ſwiðe. mare of þe wa þat tu haueft 7 of woh iwraht mon. leafdi leaf þe hwile. 7 hald þine eadi honden. Ich hadde iblend men 7 ibroken ham þe ſchuldren. 7 te ſchonken. i fur iwarpen ham 7 i water. 7 hare ahne blod ich hadde ofte imaket ham to ſpitten 7 to ſpeowen. 7 te an to ſelein þen oþer. 7 ahon him

behind his back boð his two hands, þat every nail wrung, till it turned black wiþ þe blood, and ſhe daſhed him backwards right down to þe earð, and ſtanding on þe ſavage took her own bonds, and began to beat þe belial of hell. He began to roar ruefully, to yell and to cry, and ſhe laid on him ſo heavily þat he was tired of life.

“O my lady Juliana,” quoð he, “þou equal to apoſtles, like to patriarchs, and as dear as all martyrs, fellow of angels and friend of archangels, give me reſt for a moment, I entreat þee in Gods name, and by His Sons rood, which we ſo much dread, and by þe pain and by þe deað which he ſuffered for mankind, have milce and mercy, woman, of my wretchedneſs.” ^{The imp of hell cries amercy.}

“Stop þee, brute of hell,” quoð þat bleſſed maiden, “þere is no mercy wiþ þee, wherefore þou oughteſt to find no mercy. But tell me quickly, more of þe woe and of þe wrong þou haſt wrought to man. Lady, quit þe while and hold off þy bleſſed hands. I have blinded men and broken þeir ſhoulders aud ſhanks ; caſt þem into þe fire and into þe water, and have often made þem to ſpit and to ſpew þeir own blood, and one to ſlay anoþer, and to hang þem- ^{Juliana again questions him : and he makes confeſſion.}

feoluen. Me þu witti wummon hu wultu þat ich endi þe
 tale þat waxeð áá af ich hit telle. so feole ich habbe ifulet
 of þeo þat neren nawt ⁱⁿiblefcet af wel ase ham bihouede.
 þat ne mahte hit na mon rikenin ne tellen. of al þat uel
 iþe world hwet wultu wurfe ich am an of þe sþrungeð: þat
 hit meft of sþringeð. ant neuer ear þen nu nef ich þuf
 ihondlet. O? þu mihti. oþu meiðhad hu þu art iwepnet
 to weorren awei: aþein us. zet tu wurchest uf wurft af
 þu euer dudeft. of alle þat uf wa doð ah we schulen fechen
 efter wrake on alle þat we biwiteð þat ne schulen ha beon
 fker of ure weorre. we wulleð meidnes áá mare ⁱⁿhenen ant
 hatien. ant þah an etfterte uf: tene schulen etftunten.
 O? ihesu godes fune þat haueft iset in heh feotel meidenes
 mihte hire to muchele menfke: wa wurchestu uf þer wið.
 ant al to wel þu witeft ham þat treowlich habbeð hire
 in heorte to halden zet ha milde ant meoke beoð ah af
 meiden ah te beonne. wið þat: þe unwiht zurde þat monie
 weren awundret hwet te þuring mahte beon.

and defiled many
 who were not
 marked aright
 with the cross.

O thou mighty
 maidenhood!
 how art thou
 weaponed to
 war against us!"

self. But thou, witty woman, how wilt thou that I
 end the tale that waxeth ever as I tell it? So many
 have I fouled of those that were not blessed (with the
 sign of the cross) as well as it behoved them, that no
 man could reckon or tell it. Of all the evil in the world
 (what wilt thou worse?), I am one of the springs, which it
 springs from most. And never before now was I handled
 thus. O thou mighty one! O thou maidenhood, how art
 thou weaponed to war, alas! against us! Yet thou
 workest us worst, as thou ever didst, of all that cause us
 woe; but we shall seek after vengeance on all that we
 guard, so that they shall not be quit of our war; we
 will maidens evermore humble and hate; and though one
 start away from us, ten shall stand to us. O Jesus, Gods
 Son, who hast set on high throne a maidens might to her
 great honour, woe workest thou us therewith, and all too
 well thou protectest them that truly have her to hold in
 heart, if they be mild and meek, as a maiden ought to be."
 With that the evil being yelled so, that many wondered
 what the yelling could be.

The devil begins
 to yell.

feoluen. Me witti wummon. hu wult tu þat ich endi þe. þe tale þe waxeð aa af ich telle. Se feole ich hadde i-fulet of þeo þe neren iblefcet nawt fe wel af ham bihofde; þat ne mahte hit na mon rikenin ne reden. of al þat uuel iþe world. hwet wult tu wurfe. ich am of þe sprungef. þe an þat hit meaft of fpringeð. ne neauer adet tif dei nef ich þus ihondlet. O þe mihte of meiðhad af þu art iwepnet to weorrin a ʒein uf. ʒet tu wurcheft uf wurft of al þat uf wa deð af þu dudeft so MS. eaure. Ah we schule fechen efter wrake on alle þeo þat te biwiteð. ne ne schulen ha neauer beo fker of ure weorre. we wulleð meidenef a mare heanen ʒ heatien *ʒ þah monie etfterten uf summe schulen stutten. O ihesu godes fune. þe haueft þin hehe feotel o meiðhadef mihte. hire to muche menfke. wa wurcheft tu uf þer wið. to wel þu witeft ham þe treowliche haddeð hire in heorte forte halden. ʒef ha milde ʒ meoke beon. af meiden deh to beonne. wið þat he þis hefde ifeid; bigon fwa te ʒuren þat monie weren awundret. hwet tet ʒur were.

*[Fol. 50b.]

selves. But, witty woman, how wilt þou þat I should end for þee þe tale þat ever groweð as I tell it? so many have I fouled of þem þat were not so well blest wiþ þe sign of þe cross as þey should have been, þat no man might reckon nor count þem. I am one of þe springs of all þe evil in þe world, (what wilt þou worse?) from whom it most springeð, and never till þis day was I so handled. O þe might of maidenhood, as þou art iweaponed to war against us! Yet þou treatest us worst of all þat do us woe, as þou ever didst. But we shall seek after revenge on all þem þat protect þee, nor shall þey ever be clear of our war. Maidens ever more we will humble and hate, and þough many start away from us, some shall stand to us. O Jesu, Son of God! who hast þy high ðrone in maidenhoods might, to þeir great honour: woe þou workest us þereby: too well þou guardest þem who truly keep þee to hold þee in þeir hearts, if þey be mild and meek, as a maiden ought to be." Hereupon, having þus said, he began so to yell, þat many were in wonder what þat cry could be.

He professes
nuns to be his
most potent ad-
versaries.

ÞA het þe reue fwiðe bringen biuoren him þef ha
 þe þet liuede ant heo forð ant fun*den hire. ant
 of þat grisliche: fwiðe agrifen weren ledden hire þah forð
 ant heo lec efter hire þen ladliche of helle holhinde
 þeorne. Mi lefdi iuliane ne make þu me nawt men to
 huting ant to hokere. for inoh wa me if. þah þu ne do me
 na mare. Mi feder ich habbe iloren þat neuer mare
 heonne forð: ne dar ich cumen biuoren him. lefdi quoð
 he lef me ogodef half ich halfi þe. ne beoð cristene
 men þef hit soð if þat me seið merciable ant milzful
 ant tu art buten reowðe haue merci of me for þi lau-
 erdes luee þi luffume leofmon lefdi ich þe bidde Ant
 heo leac him efter hire endelong þe cheping chepmenne
 huting. ant heo leiden him to fumme wið stan fumme
wið ban. ⁊ fletten him wið hundef ant leiden to wið
honden af he wes imaket þuf armest alre þinge. ⁊ iberde
 af ful wiht: þat ter fluhen monie. swa þat te edie meiden

*helle
 [Leaf 65.]
 fwiðe
 helle
 scanned by
 he is afraid
 wdy? heaven
 þat
 & mercy.
 him
 market
 in stone
 on new
 and a stone.*

Juliana is brought before the reeve, and draws the loathly one after her.

He beseeches her to let him go;

but she pulls him along the market.

Then ordered the reeve quickly to bring (her) before him, if she still were living. And they (went) forth and found her, and of that grisly one were much terrified, yet they led her forth, and she lugged after her the loathly one of hell, flattering earnestly: "My lady Juliana, make me not a hooting and a scorn unto men, for enough woe I have, though thou do me no more. My father I have lost so that nevermore henceforth dare I come before him. Lady," quoth he, "leave me, for Gods sake; I entreat thee. Are not Christian men, if it is true that is said, merciful and pitiful? and thou art without ruth. Have mercy on me for thy Lords love, thy lovesome leman, lady, I pray thee." And she tugged him after her along the market, a hooting of chapmen; and they laid on him, some with stone, some with bone, and slit him with hounds, and laid on him with hands. When he was thus made most wretched of all things, and behaved as a foul wight, so that many fled, so that the blessed maiden

[E]leufius þe reue het lokin ʒef ha liuede. ⁊ brugen hire biuoren him. ʒef ha were oliue. Heo þe weren ihaten forð ⁊ funden hire þus. ⁊ of þat grisliche gra weren a-grifen ſwiðe. leadden hire þah forð. ⁊ heo leac eauer efter hire þen laddliche of helle þat olhnede ſwiðe. ⁊ bed tuf ⁊ biſohte. mi leoue leafdi Juliene ne make þu me nawt men to hutung ne to hokere. þu haueſt ido me wa inoh þah þu ne do me wurfe. Ich habbe wumme forloren mi leoue feaderes freontſchipe. Ne neauer mare her on uen ne der ich cumen biuoren him. Mihti meiden leaf me o godes half ich halfi þe. ʒe beoð criſtene men. ʒef hit if foð þat me ſeið. *merciabile* ⁊ milʒfule. ⁊ tu art bute reowðe. Haue *merci* of me for þe lauerdes luue. þi luue-wurðe leofmon leafdi i þe bidde. ⁊ heo leac him eauer endelong þe cheping chapmen¹ to hutung. ⁊ heo leiden to him ſum wið *ſtan. ſum wið ban. ⁊ ſleatten on him hundes. ant leiden to wið honden.

image of wolf

¹ chāpmen, MS.
*[Fol. 51.]

[A]s he weſ imaket tuf earneſt alre þinge ⁊ berde af þe ful wiht þat ter flue monie. ſe þat eadi wummon

Eleusius, þe prefect, bid his men see if she yet lived, and bring her before him if she were alive. þey þat were bidden set forð and found her þus, and were much terrified by þat grisly wolf: yet þey led her forð, and she lugged ever behind her þe loaðly one from hell, which flattered much and þus begged and besought; "My dear lady, Juliana, make me not a hooting and contempt to men: þou hast done me woe enough, þough þou do me no worse. I have, woe is me, lost my dear faþers friendship; nor ever henceforð dare I come before him. Mighty maiden, let me go on Gods behalf I be-seech þee. Ye are Christian men, if it is true þat men say, merciful and kind; yet þou are wiþout ruð. Have mercy on me for þe Lords love, þy lovetworðy lemman, lady, I þee pray." Yet she pulled him ever along, for þe cheaping chapmen to hoot at, and þey laid on him, some wiþ stone, and some wiþ bone, and slot hounds at him, and laid on him wiþ þeir hands.

Juliana with her chained devil is broht before Eleusius.

When he was made þus most miserable of all þings and gave voice like þe foul one, so þat many fled, þat blessed woman

She flings away her imp.

wergede sum hwet ant reat him mitte ^{chain} raketehe unrudeliche
 swiðe ⁊ warp him forð efter þet from hire into a put of fulðe.
 Com baldeliche forð biuoren þene reue af he fet on his dom
 feotel. hire nebscheft schininde al af schene af þe sunne þe
 reue af he seh þif þuhte muche wunder ant *bigon to seggen.
 Iuliane þe edie sei me ant beo soð enawes hwer weren þe
 itaht þine wichecrestes þat tu ne tellest na tale of nanef
 cunnes tintreo ne ne dredest na deð ne nane cwke¹ deoulen.

[Leaf 65, back.]

¹ So in MS.

HER me heðene hund quod þe edie meiden ich
 heie ant herie godd feder ant his fulliche sune
 iesu crist hatte ⁊ te hali gast. godd af þe oðer þreo ant
 nawt þreo godes ah if an euer ihwer untwemet. he þe
 kingene king helle bule haueð ouercumen te dei belial
 baldest of helle. ⁊ þi fire sathan þat tu leuest uppon ant
 forðest ant wel bicumeð to donne ant femeð to beon
 fwuch streon: of afwuch strunðe ant euer beo acurset
 colt of swuch cunde. ah þe mihti godd þat ich á
 munne he sende me mihte ⁊ mein from þe heouene

grew somewhat weary, and pulled him with the chain
 with immense swiftness, and cast him forth after that
 from her into a pit of filth. Came boldly forth before the
 reeve, as he sat on his judgment-seat, with her face all
 shining, as bright as the sun. To the reeve, as he saw
 this, it seemed a great wonder, and he began to say,
 "Juliana the blessed, tell me and be a true informant,
 where were thy witchcrafts taught thee that thou makest
 no account of torment of any kind, nor darest any death,
 nor any living devils?"

"Hear me, heathen hound," quoth the blessed maiden,
 "I extol and praise God the Father and his wondrous
 Son, called Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, God as the
 other; three, but not three Gods, but is one ever every-
 where undivided; he, the king of kings, hath overcome
 to-day a bull of hell, Belial, boldest of hell, and thy
 sire Satan that thou believest on and holdest for father,
 and believest on as lord, and performest his behest, and
 well it becomes (thee) to do; and beseems to be such
 a progeny of such a race. And ever be accurst colt of
 such a kind (birth). But the mighty God whom I ever
 remember, may he send me might and main from heaven

She comes boldly
 before the reeve
 on his judgment-
 seat. He asks
 her where she
 learnt her witch-
 crafts.

"Hear me,
 heathen hound;
 I praise God,
 three in one, ever
 undivided, who
 this day has
 overcome Belial,
 boldest of hell."

Treatment p. 12
 done with the pen.

wergede sumhwet. ƿreat hit wið þe raketehe vnrudeliche
 ſwiðe. ƿ weorp him forð from hire awei into a put of fulðe.
 com baldeliche forð biuore þe reue af he ſet on hiſ dom
 ſeotle ſchiminde hire nebscheaft ſchene af þe ſunne. þe reue
 þa he ſeh hire. þuhte muche fullich ƿ bigon to ſeggen.
 Juliene ſei me ƿ beo soð cnawef. hwer were þe itaht þeoſe
 wicche creftel. þat tu ne teleſt na tale of nanes cunneſ
 tintreche. ne ne dredeſt nowðer deað ne cwike deoſten.

[H]er me heaðene hund *quoð þat eadi meiden.* Ich
 heie ƿ herie godd feader. ƿ hiſ fulliche ſune
 ihesu criſt hatte ƿ te hali gaſt. godd af þe oþre þreo.
 ƿ nawt þreo godeſ. Ah iſ eauer an. ƿ ihwer un-
 tweamet. He kempene king haueð to dei, ouercumen
 helles bule belial baldeſt of alle. ƿ ti fire ſathanaf þat tu
 leueſt up on. ƿ ti feader hateſt. ƿ hiſ heaſte forðeſt. ƿ wel
 bi ſemeð þe to beon. ƿ bikimeð to beo ſtreon of a ſwuch
 ſfrunde. Ah eauer beo acurſet colt of ſwuch cunde. þe mihti
 mildfulde godd þat ich aa munne. þef me mihte of heo*uene

*[Fol. 51b.]

grew somewhat weary, and pulled him wiþ þe chain very
 rudely and flung him forð away from her into a pit of
 filð. Boldly ſhe came before þe prefect as he ſat on hiſ
 tribunal, wiþ her face shimmering ſheen as þe ſun. To
 þe prefect when he ſaw her it ſeemed very ſtrange, and
 he began to ſay: “Juliana, tell me, and be a true in-
 formant; where were gotten for þee þeſe witchcrafts?
 þat þou makeſt no account of any kind of torture, and
 dreadeſt neiþer deað nor living devils.”

“Hear me, heaðen hound,” *quoð þat bleſſed maiden.*
 “I glorify and praise God þe Faþer, and hiſ wondrous Son,
 Jeſus Chriſt by name, and þe Holy Ghooſt, God as þe oþers.
 Dree but not ðree Gods, but always One and every way
 indiviſible. He, þe King of Sabaoð, hað to day overcome
 a bull of hell, Belial, boldeſt of hell, and þy ſire, Satanaf,
 on whom þou believeſt, and whom þou calleſt þy faþer,
 whoſe heſt þou performeſt; and well it beſeemeð and
 becomeð þee to be begotten of ſuch a race. But ever
 be accurſed, colt of ſuch a ſtrain, þe mighty mild God,
 whom I ever remember, gave me power from heaven,

Juliana addresses
the prefect in
terms impolite.

me forto helpen ant him forto herien. ant þe forte
fehenden ant tu þat fehucke art : fehucken herien ant
 heien. weilawei : as þu were iboren wrecche owraðer
 time. þat ti sawle t þi fari gasti schal wið þe fehucke
 pleiferen pleien in helle. Reue areow þe feoluen unfele
 mon bifih þe hei*godd ant her me. crist if so milzful
 þat he walde bliðeliche alle monne heale. ah hwa se
 obote nule gan : ne schal he beon iborhen. ze quod he
 haldestu zet uppon þi gencling. wenestu þat we beon
 *fo eð to biwihelen ah we schulen nu ifeon hu þe
 schulen futelen þine wichecrestes. t witen þe ant werien.
 t lette owode wise a fwiðe wunderfule hweol meten
 ant makien t þurh spiten hit al spaken ant uelien t
 þreuald þicke mid irnene gadien. kene te keoruen al þat
 ha rineð to af neil eniuef. þat axtreo stod iftraht on twa
 half in te twa stanene postles. þat hit af hit turnde ne
 ouer teoc nowðer abuuen ne bineoðen to þer eorðe. grifen
 him mahen þet sehen hu hit grond in hwet so hit rahte

to help me, both to praise him and to disgrace thee; and
 thou that art a devil to praise and extol devils. Well
 away! since thou wert born, wretch, in evil time, that thy
 soul and thy sorry ghost shall play with the devils
 playfellows in hell. Reeve, have pity on thyself. Un-
 happy man, regard the High God, and hear me. Christ
 is so merciful that he would gladly have all men saved; but
 whoso will not go to repentance, he shall not be saved.”
 “Yea,” quoth he, “holdest thou still to thy jangling?
 Supposest thou that we are so easy to deceive? But we
 shall now see how thy witchcrafts shall manifest thee, and
 protect and defend thee.” And on a mad wise he caused
 a very wonderful wheel to be measured and made,
 and all spitted through, spokes and fellies, and threefold
 thick, with iron goads, keen to carve all that they touch,
 as nailknives. The axletree stood stretched on two sides
 into two stone posts, so that, as it turned, it ran neither
 above, nor beneath to the earth. They might be horror-
 stricken who saw how it ground in whatsoever it reached.

“Alas! that thou
 wert born, for
 thy soul shall be
 the devils play-
 fellow in hell.”

A wonderful
 wheel is made,
 spiked with iron
 goads, keen to
 carve all that
 they touch.

him forte hearmin. ƿ te forte ſchenden. ƿ makien to ſcheomien. þat ſchalt ſwucche ſhuken. heien ƿ herien. weila af þu were iboren wrecche owraðe time. þat ti ſari ſawle. ƿ ti forhfule gaft ſchal wið ſwucche ploiueren pleien in helle. Reue areow þe ſeoluen. Vnſeli mon biſih þe. hei godd ƿ her me. ihesu if ſe milþful þat he walde bliðeliche heounef heale to alle. Ah hwa ſe obote ne geað ne ſchal he been i borhen.

[3]e quoð eleuſiuſ haldeſt tu ƿetten up o þi ƿuhelunge: weneſt tu þat we been ſe eð to biwihelin. Ah we ſchulen iſeo nu : for hit ſchal ſone ſutelín hu þi wichecreft ſchal wite þe. ƿ werien. ƿ lette o wodiwiſe a ſwiðe wunderlich hweol meten. ƿ makien ant þurh ſpítien hit al wið ſpaken ƿ felien þicke ƿ þreofalt wið irnene gadien. kene to keoruen. al þat ha rinen to ; aſe neil eniuef. ƿ ſtod þe axtreo iſtraht o twa half in to ſtanene poſtlef. þat hit. af hit turnde ne ouer toke nohwer bineoðen to þer eorðe. griſen him mahte þat ſehe hu hit gront in to hwet ſe hit of rahte.

him to harm and þee to diſgrace, and bring to ſhame; þou þat art þyſelf devil to praise and glorify devils. Well away! ſince þou wert born, wretch, in time of wrað, þat þy ſorry ſowl and þy ſorrowful ghooſt ſhall wiþ ſuch play-fellows play in hell. Reeve, berue þyſelf. Unſeely man, regard þe High God, and hear me, Jeſu is ſo merciful þat he would gladly give heavens ſalvation to all: but whoſoever will not proceed to repentance, he ſhall not be protected."

"Yea," quoð Eleuſiuſ, "doſt þou hold ſtill to þy cuckoo cry? Weeneſt þou þat we are ſo eaſy to deceive? But we ſhall ſee now; for it ſhall ſoon be plain, how þy witchcraft ſhall protect and ward þee." And in a frantic manner he had a wonderful wheel deſigned and conſtructed, and ſpitted all þrough wiþ ſpokes and fellies, ƿick and ƿreefold, and wiþ iron goads keen to cut all þat þey touched like nail knives (*now penknives*): and þe axletree ſtood ſtretched on its two ſides into ſtone poſts, ſo þat, as it turned, it overreached nowhere beneað to þe earð. One might be filled wiþ horror, who ſaw it how it ground into whatſoever it reached.

Eleuſiuſ holds her to be dealing in witchcraft,

and conſtructs a new engine of torment.

ant me brohte hire forð af belialef budel het ant bunden hire þerto harde ⁊ hetefeste. ant dude on eiðer half fore of hif cnihtef. forte turnen þat hweol on þe edie meiden. wið hondlen imaket þron so fwiðe af ha mahten: þe reue het on liue ant oleomen fwingen hit swiftliche abuten ant tidliche turnen. ⁊ heo af þe feond sputte ham te don hit.

¹ MS. unswarlich.

duden hit unsparlich.¹ þat ha bigon te breoken al af þat iftelet irn: to limede hire ant te leac lið ba ant lire. burften hire banef ⁊ þat meari weol ut: imenget wið blode. þer ha mahten far ifeon alle þat ter seten ⁊ abuten weren.

AS ha ȝeide to godd ant walde aȝeuen hire gaft into hif honden so þer lihtinde com an engel of heouene. ⁊ reat to þat hweol. swa þat hit al to refde ⁊ burften hire bondes ⁊ breken alle clane ant heo af fisch al af þah ha nefde hurtes *nowher ifelet. feng þuf to þonken godd wið honden upaheuene.

*[Leaf 66, back.]

And she was brought forth, as Belials beadle bad, and they bound her thereto hard and fast. And he set on either side four of his servants to turn the wheel upon the blessed maiden, with handles made thereon, as quickly as they could. The reeve bad (them) swing it swiftly round upon life and limbs, and rapidly turn it. And they, as the fiend spurred them to do it, did it unsparingly, so that she began altogether to break, as the steeled iron limbed her to pieces, and rent both joint and flesh; her bones burst, and the marrow welled out, mingled with blood. There they might see sorrow, all those that sat there and were around.

An angel comes down from heaven and destroys the wheel; Juliana is made whole as a fish.

As she cried out to God and was about to give up her ghost into his hands, there came alighting an angel from heaven, and reached out to the wheel, so that it all rove asunder, and her bands burst and broke all clean; and she, whole as a fish, as though she hurts had nowhere felt, began thus to thank God with hands uplifted:—

[M]e brohte hire uorð af belialef budel bet ⁊ bunden hire þerto hearde ⁊ heteuefte. he dude on eiðer half hire. fowre of hiſe enihtef. forte *turnen þat hweol wið hondlen imaket þron o þat eadi *meiden ſe ſwiðe af ha mahten. ⁊ het oliſ. ⁊ oleomen ſwingen hit ſwiftliche. ⁊ turnen hit abuten. ⁊ heo af þe deouel ſpurede ham to donne. duden hit unſparliche. þat ha bigon to broken al af þat iſtelede irn ſtrac hire in. ouer al. ⁊ from þe top to þe tan. aa af hit *turnde. to limede hire ⁊ to leac lið ba ⁊ lire. burſten hire banef. ⁊ þat meari bearft ut imenget wið þe blode. þer me mahte iſeon alre forhene meaſt þe iþat ſtude ſtode.**

*[Fol. 52.]

[A]f ha ʒeide to godd. ⁊ walde aʒeouen hire gaft in to hiſ honden; ſe þer lihtinde com an engel of heouene. ⁊ reat to þet hweol ſwa þat hit al to reafde. burſten hire bondef: ⁊ breken alle clane. ⁊ heo aſe fiſchhal af þah ha neſde nohwer hurteſ iſelet. feng to þonki þus godd wið honden up aheuene.

She was fetched forð, as belials beadle bad, and þey bound her to þis hard and fast. He set on eiþer side of her four of his servants to turn þat wheel, wiþ handles fixed þereon, upon þat blessed maiden, as strongly as þey could, and bad þem whirl it swiftly upon life and limbs, and turn it about. And þey as þe devil spurred þem to do, did it unsparingly: so þat þey began to break her into fragments as þat steeled iron found its way into her; all over, from þe top to þe toes. Ever as it turned, it tore her limb from limb, and broke boð her joints and her flesh. Her bones cracked, and þe marrow burst out all mingled wiþ blood; þere men þat stood in þat place might see þe greatest of all sorrows.

As she cried to God and would surrender her spirit into his hands, þere came all lightening an angel from heaven, and reached out to þat wheel so þat it fell all to pieces: her bands broke, and flew clean to pieces, and she, as sound as a fish, as þough she had nowhere felt any hurts, began to ðank God þus wiþ hands upraised:—

But an angel makes all riht.

DRihtin undedlich an godd al mihti al oðer unilich
 heouene wruhte ant eorðef ant alle iwrahe þingef
 þe ich þoncki to dei alle þine deden. þu makedest mon of
 lame. ant ȝeue liuende gaft ilich to þe feoluen ʒ fetteft for
 hiſ ſake al þat iſ on eorðe. ah he for gulte him anan þurh
 eggunge of eue ʒ wef iput ut ſone of paraifeſ prude ʒ
 weox ſwa hiſ team þat ne mahte hit namon tellen. ant
 funegede ſwa ſwiðe þat tu hit forſencheft al in noef
 flode. buten ahte þat tu friðedeft. þu chure ſoððen iþe
 alde lahe abraám. iſahac. ʒ iacob. ʒ hiſ children ȝeue to
 ioſep þe wef ȝungeft hap in pharaoneſ halle. longe þrefter
 þu leddeft moyſen þurh þat tu muche luuedeft buten brugge
 ant bat þurh þe reade ſea ant hiſ cunreden ʒ feddeftam
 fowrti ȝer iþe wilderneſſe wið heouenlich fode ʒ wurpe
 under hare fet hare fan alle ʒ brohteft into þat lond þet tu
 ham bihete. þer wef bi ſamueleſ dei ſaul þe forme king
 kempene kenef. in an weorre þer he wef þu dudeft in þen

“Almighty God,
 who madest
 man of clay, and
 gavest him a
 living spirit,

“Lord immortal, one God Almighty, all others unlike,
 wright (maker) of heaven and of earth, and all wrought
 (created) things, I thank thee to-day of all thy deeds.
 Thou madest man of loam (clay), and gavest him a living
 spirit, like to thyself, and settest for his sake all that is in
 earth. But he made himself guilty anon through instiga-
 tion of Eve, and was soon put out from Paradises pride;
 and his progeny grew so that no man could count it, and
 sinned so greatly that thou sankest it all in Noahs flood,
 except eight whom thou sparedst. Thou chocest after-
 wards, in the old law, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and his
 children; gavest to Joseph, who was youngest, hap in
 Pharaohs hall. Long after that thou leddest Moses,
 whom thou much lovedst, without bridge and boat,
 through the Red Sea, and his kindred; and feddest
 them forty years in the wilderness with heavenly food,
 and castest under their feet all their foes, and broughtest
 them into the land that thou promisedst them. There
 was in Samuels day Saul the first king, boldest of
 warriors. In a war wherein he was, thou gavest the

thou chocest
 Abraham,
 Isaac, and Jacob;

thou leddest
 Moses and his
 people through
 the Red Sea
 without bridge
 or boat;

in Samuels day
 thou gavest

[D] Rihtin undeaðlich. an godd. almihti alle oþre un-
lich. heouene wruhte. ⁊ eorðef. ⁊ alle iwrahte
þingef þe ich þonki to dei alle þine deden. þu makedest mon
of lame. ⁊ ȝeue him liuende ȝaft ilich to þe feoluen. ⁊ fettest
for his sake al þat iþe worlt is. Ah he forgulte him anan
þurh þe eggunge of eue. ⁊ wef iput sone ut of paraife
selhðen. weox fwa his team her. ne mahte hit na mon
tellen. Ah fwa fwiðe hit funegede. þat tu hit forfenctest
al in noeef flod bute eahte þat tu friðedest. þu chure
*feorððen iþe alde lahe abraham. ⁊ isaac. Jacob ⁊ his
children. ⁊ ȝeue to ioseph. þat wef þe ȝungefte hap
ipharaonef halle. longe þer efter þu leddest þurh moysef
þat tu se muchel luuedest. bute brugge ⁊ bat. þurh þe
reade sea al his cunredden þear af al pharaonef forde for-
drencte. ⁊ feddest ham fowrti ȝer iþe wilderneffe. wið
heouenliche fode. ⁊ wurpe under hare uet. hare fan alle.
⁊ brohtest ham þurh iosue. into ierusalemef lond þat tu
ham bihete. þer wes i Samuelef dei. Saul þe forme King
kempene icoreneft. In an weorre af he wef. þu dudeft i þe

*[Fol. 52b.]

“Lord Immortal, One God, Almighty, unlike all oþer, Juliana makes an oration, summing up the Old and New Testaments.
wright (*demiurgus*) of heaven and of earð and of all
created þings, þee I ðank to day for all þy deeds. þou
madest man of clay and gavest him a living spirit like
þyself, and settest for his sake all þat is in þe world. But
he ruined himself by guilt anon þrough þe egging on of
Eve, and was soon put out of þe joys of paradise. His
progeny grew so þat no man could count it; but it sinned
so much þat þou sankest it all in Noahs flood except
eight persons whom þou sparedst. Afterwards þou chose
under þe old dispensation Abraham and Isaac, Jacob and
his children, and gave to Josef, who was þe youngest,
good luck in Faraohs hall. Long after þat þou leddest
by Moses, whom þou so much lovedst, wiþout bridge or
boat, þrough þe Red Sea all his kindred, where all
Faraohs army was drowned; and þou feddest em forty
years in þe wilderness wiþ heavenly food, and cast under
þeir feet all þeir foes, and broughtest em by Joshua into
Jerusalems land, which þou promisedst þem. Þere in
time of Samuel was Saul þe first king, most approved of
warriors; in a war he was engaged in, þou grantedst to þe

lutle dauis þe selhe þat he floh him wið a stan to
 deaðe. þene stronge gulie ant reddest him to rixlen
 in sawmuelef riche þuf þu makest milde alle þeo muchele
 þat makeð ham meoke ant þeo þet heieð ham her leift
 ham swiðe lahe. þer *etter þa þe þuhte iþoncket beo hit
 þe. lihtest hider of heouenlich leomen t nome blod t ban
 iþe mere meiden ant were in bethlehem iboren moncun to
 heale ant to þe hirde schawdeste : þat te engel to þe
 tahten ant of þe þreo kingef were kinewurðliche iwurget.
 weoxe ant wrahtest wundref. ah her þu were ioffret t wið
 lake alefet ant iflum iurdan of sein iuhan ifulhet. þu
 heldest al unheale ant deade of deaðe. alast af þe biluuede.
 þu letest an of þe tweolue þat tu icoren hefdest chepin þe
 ant fullen. ant þoledest pinen ant passium þurh giwes read
 on rode. deideft t were idon dead in þruh of stane ant
 stepe adun t fruptest¹ helle. arise ant þin ariste cuddest
 þine icorne t fihe abauen þe steorren to þe hefte heouene
 ant cumeft king odomes dei. to demen cwike [t] deade.

*[Leaf 67.]

¹ MS. sprup-
test.

David the vic-
tory over the
great Goliath

little David the happiness to slay to death with a
 stone the strong Goliath, and appointedst him to rule
 in Samuels kingdom. Thus thou, Mild (God), makest
 great all they that make themselves meek, and those
 that exalt themselves here, thou layest them very low.
 Afterwards, when it seemed good to thee, thanks be
 to thee for it, thou descendedst hither from heavenly
 beams, and tookest blood and bone in the tender maiden,
 and wert born in Bethlehem for salvation of mankind, and
 showedst thyself to the shepherds whom the angel taught
 about thee, and by the three kings wert royally honoured.
 Grewest and wroughtest wonders, but here thou wert
 offered and redeemed with a gift, and baptized in the river
 Jordan by St. John. Thou healedest all unhealth and
 (raisedst) the dead from death. At last, when it pleased
 thee, thou lettest one of the twelve that thou hadst chosen
 barter thee and sell thee, and sufferedst pains and passion,
 through Jews counsel, on the cross; diedst and wert laid
 dead in a grave of stone, and descendedst and striptest hell;
 arosest and madest known thy resurrection to thy chosen,
 and ascendedst above the stars to the highest heaven; and
 wilt come, as king, on doomsday to judge quick and dead.

Thou wert born
in Bethlehem
and royally
honoured by the
three kings;
baptized in Jordan
by St. John,
sold by one of
thy chosen, cru-
cified by the
Jews, and laid in
a grave of stone.

Thou rosest
again and ascend-
edst above the
stars, whence
thou shalt come
as judge of quick
and dead.

lutle dauis þe felhðe. þat he slong ƿ of sloh wið a stan to
 deaðe þe stronge Golie. ƿ readdest him to rixlen isaulef
 riche. þus þu makest milde godd alle þeo muchele; þe
 makieð ham meoke. ƿ þeo þe heið ham her: leifst swiðe
 lahe. þrefter þo þe þuhte iponket hit beo þe. lihteft hider
 to uf of heouenliche leomen. ƿ nome blod ƿ ban i þat
 meare meiden. ƿ were i beðleem iboren moncun to heale.
 ƿ to þe hirden schawdest te þat te engles to þe tahten ƿ
 of þe þreo kinges were kinewurdliche iwurdget. weoxe ƿ
 wrahtest wundref. Ah ear þu were i offret ƿ wið lac
 alefet. ƿ i iordanes flum of sein iuhan ifulhet; þu healdest
 alle unhale. ƿ te deade. of deaðe. Aleaft af þe bilunede
 lettest an of *þe tweolue þat tu hefdest icoren. chapi þe. ƿ
 fullen. ƿ þoledest pine. ƿ passiun. þurh giwes read o rode.
 deidest. ƿ were idon dead. i þruh of stane. stepe adun. ƿ
 fruptest. ƿ herhedest helle. Arife. ƿ þin ariste cuddest
 þine icorene. ƿ stuhe abuuþe þe steorren in to þe hefte heo-
 uene. ƿ kimeft king o domefdei. to deme cwike. ƿ deade.

*[Fol. 53.]

little David þe happiness to sling and slay wiþ a stone
 to deað þe strong Goliah, and appointedst him to rule in
 Sauls kingdom. þus, Mild God, þou makest all þose þat
 make much of þemselves meek, and layst very low þose
 who exalt þemselves here. After þis as it seemed good
 to þe, ðanks be done to þee for it, þou descendedst hiþer
 to us from heavenly light, and took blood and bone in
 þat tender maiden, and wert born in Beðlehem for man-
 kinds salvation, and shewedst þysel to þe shepherds,
 whom þe angels instructed about þee, and wert royally
 honoured by þe ðree kings (*of þe East*). Grew and
 wroughtst wonders. But before þat þou wert offered (*in
 þe temple*) and redeemed wiþ a gift and baptized by Saint
 John in Jordans stream. þou healdest all infirm and raised
 þe dead from deað who believed on þee. þou permittedst
 one of þe twelve þat þou hadst chosen, to sell þee and make
 traffic of þee, and sufferedst pain and passion on þe cross by
 þe device of þe Jews; diedst and wert put dead into a coffin
 of stone; descendedst and strippedst and harrowedst hell;
 arose and madest known þy resurrection to þy chosen and
 ascendedst above þe stars into þe highest heaven; and
 shalt come, as king, on doomsday to judge quick and dead.

saluator
 þu art hope of heale. ant þu art rihtwiſe weole. ⁊ funfule ſalue. þu art an þat al maht ant nult nawt bute riht. ibleſcet beo þu euer. þe ah euer euch þing to herien ant to heien. ⁊ ich do deore drihtin. þin an meiden þat am. ⁊ luuie to leouemon liuende lauerd. þu haueſt for me ſwa muche iwraht wiðuten min offeruinge. beo nu bliſful godd wið me. ⁊ were me wið þeſ deuoles driueleſ. ant wið alle hiſ creſteſ. þu wurch ſwuche wundreſ for me ⁊ for þi deorewurðe nome þat te reue rudni. ⁊ *ſtheomie wið hiſ ſchucke ant tu beo iwurget áá wiðuten ende af þu art wurðe from worlde into worlde amen.

*[Leaf 67, back.]

Wið þiſ þat ha ſtutte ſtoden þe cwelleres ant ʒeiden lude ſtefne. Mihti lauerd iſ þe þat iuliane on leueð. ne nis nan godd buten he we beoð wel icnawen. Reue uſ reoweð þat fið þat we ſo longe habbeð ileuet þine reades. ⁊ wenden alle aneſ weiſ abuten fif hundret þe ſtoden ant ʒeiden alle in ane ſtefne. luuewurðe wummon we wendeð alle to him þat tu on truſteſt. Forloren beo þu reue wið falſe bileaue. ⁊ ibleſcet beo iheſu criſt mid alle hiſ icorne do þu

Thou art hope of salvation, and thou art weal of the righteous and salve of the sinful. Thou art one who canst do all and wilt do naught but right. Blessed be thou ever; thee ought everything to praise and to extol, and I do, dear Lord, who am thy maiden alone, and love thee as leman, living Lord. Thou hast wrought so much for me without my deserving. Be now with me, blissful God, and defend me against the devils drudges, and against all his crafts. Work thou such wonders for me, and for thy precious name, that the reeve may redder and be ashamed of his devil, and that thou mayst be honoured ever without end, as thou art worthy, from age to age. Amen."

Blessed be thou ever; thou hast wrought much for me;

work now such wonders for me, that thou mayest be honoured evermore. Amen."

Hereupon, when she stopped, the executioners stood and cried with loud voice: "Mighty Lord is he on whom Juliana believes, nor is there any God but he, we do indeed acknowledge. Reeve, we rue the course, that we so long have believed thy counsels." And they turned all in one way, about five hundred, who stood and cried all with one voice, "Loveworthy woman, we all turn to him on whom thou trustest. Be thou lost, reeve, with false belief; and blessed be Jesus Christ with all his chosen. Do thou

The executioners acknowledge Julianas God,

þu art hope of heale. þu art rihtwifef weole. ⁊ fun-
fulef falue. þu art an þat al maht. ⁊ nult nawt bute
riht. Iblefcet beo þu eaure. þe ah eaure euch þing heien
⁊ herien. ⁊ ich do deore drihtin þi meiden an þat ich am.
⁊ luuie þe to leofmon luuewende lauerd. þat haueft fe
muche for me iwraht. wið ute mine wurðef. Beo mi
bliffule godd wið me. ⁊ wite me wið þe deouelef driuelef.
⁊ wið hare creftef. þurch zet fwucche wundref for þi
deorewurðe nome. þat te reue rudni ⁊ fcheomie wið hif
fehucke. ⁊ tu beo aa iwurdget af þu art wurðe wurð-
munt from worlde into worlde. Amen wið uten ende.

[W]ið þif af ha ftute ftoden þe cwelleref. ⁊ zeiden lud
fteuene. Mihti lauerd if þe. þat Juliene on
leueð. ne nif na godd buten he; we beoð wel icnawen.
Reue uf reoweð ure fið þat we fe longe haddeð ileuet þine
readef. ⁊ wenden alle anef weif abute fif hundret þe ftoden
⁊ zeiden alle in a fteuene. luuewurðe wummon. we wendeð
alle to þat godd. þat tu on truffeft. *forlore beo þu reue wið *[Fol. 53, back.]
falfef bileaue. ⁊ iblefcet beo crift. ⁊ alle hif icorene. do

þou art hope of salvation; þou art weal of þe right-
wife, and falve of þe finful, þou art one þat art able
to do all; and wilt do noþing but right. Blessed be
þou ever: every þing ought to exalt and glorify þee,
and fo do I, dear Lord, þy maiden, alone as I am,
and love þee for my lemman, Loving Lord, þat haft
wrought fo much for me wiþout worð of mine. Be, O
my Bliffful God, wiþ me and protect me againft þe devils
drudges, and againft þeir crafts, by fuch wonders ftill for
þy precious name, fo þat þe prefect may redden and
be afhamed of his devil, and þou mayft be ever wor-
fhipped as þou art worðy of worfhip from age to age
wiþout end. Amen."

Hereupon, when ſhe ſtopped, þere ſtood þe execu-
tioners, and cried wiþ loud voice; "Mighty Lord is he
on whom Juliana believeð, nor is þere any God but he,
we are well affured. Reeve, we are rueful for our
course, þat we have fo long believed þy counfels." And
þey all turned in one wife, about five hundred who
ftood and cried all wiþ one voice; "Loveworðy woman,
who converteft all to þat God, on whom þou truffeft.
þou wilt be loft for ever, prefect, wiþ þy falfe belief;
and blessed be Chrift and all his elect. Do þou

The executioners
are converted.

dedlich on uf al þat tu don maht. Reue make uf ananriht miſliche pinen. tend fur. ⁊ feche hweol ⁊ greiðe hwet fo þu conſt grimliche biþenchen. forðe al þi feder wil þeſ feondes of helle. to longe he heold uf af he halt te zet. ah we ſchulen heonne uorð halden to iefu godeſ fune moneun aleſent Swa þe reue gromede þat he griſpatede azein þet wod he walde iwurðen. ant ſende o wode wiſe to maximien þe heh keifer in rome herof hwet he redde. ant he het euchan heſdes bikeoruen ant he lette ſwa don ſif hundred bi tale of weopmen ⁊ of wummen an hundred ant þritti. euchan biuoren oðer forte beon heſdes bicoruen ant ferden alle martirf feire to criſte. Elewſiuf lette hiſ men makien a mucche fur *ant bed binden hire baðe fet ant honden ant caſten hire into þe brune þer forto bernen. af ha biſeh uppard. ant ſeh þene ley leiten. ha lokede to heouene wið honden up aheouene ant þuſ to criſte cleopede wið inwarde bone.

Mildheortfule godd milce þi meiden ne leaf þu me

upon us, in deadly wise, all that thou canst do. Reeve, make for us quickly various torments; light a fire, and fetch a wheel, and prepare whatsoever thou canst savagely devise; perform all thy fathers will, the fiend of hell: too long he held us, as he holds thee still. But we shall, henceforth, hold to Jesus, Gods Son, Redeemer of mankind." The reeve was so angered, that he gnashed his teeth again, so that he would become mad; and sent on mad wise to Maximianus, the high emperor in Rome, about this, what he would advise; and he bad (him) cut off each ones head. And he had five hundred in number of men served so, and of women a hundred and thirty. Each one (pressed on) before other to be beheaded, and went, all martyrs, fairly to Christ. Eleusius caused his men to make a great fire and bad them bind her, both feet and hands, and cast her into the burning, there for to burn. As she looked upward and saw the flame blaze, she looked to heaven with hands uplifted, and thus to Christ called with inward prayer:—

"Mildhearted God, pity thy maiden; leave thou me

saying they will henceforth hold to Jesus, the Son of God.

The reeve is so angered, that he gnashes his teeth.

Eleusius has a great fire made, into which Juliana, bound hand and foot, is thrust. She prays

nu deadliche on uf al þat tu do maht. make uf reue ananriht miſliche pinen ontend fur ʒ feche hweol. greiðe on tentd MS. al þat [þu] conſt grimliche biþenchen. forðe al þi feaderf wil þef feondeſ of helle; to longe he heold uf af he halt te nuðe. Ah we ſchulen heonne forð halden to ihesu godeſ kinewurðe fune moncun aleſent. ſwa þe reue gromede þat he griſtbetede wod he walde iwurðen. ʒ fende o wodi wiſe forð to maximien. þe mihti caiſere of rome her of; hwet he readde. ʒ he ham het euch fot heafdes bikeoruen. fif hundret itald of wepmen ʒ of wimmen an hundret ʒ þritti þrunge euchar biuoren oðer forte beo bihefdet ʒ ferden alle martyrſ wið murhðe to¹ heouene. ¹ *criste crossed through.*

[E]leuſiuſ þe hwile lette hiſ men makien a muche fur mid alle. ʒ bed binden hire ſwa þe fet ʒ te honden. ʒ keaſten hire in to þe brune cwic to forbearnen. Af ha lokede up. ʒ feh þiſ lei leiten: biheolt towart heouene. wið honden aheouene. ʒ þuſ to criſt cleopede.

[N]e forleaſ þu me nawt nu iþiſ nede lauerd of liue. mildheortfule godd milce me þi meiden. ʒ mid ti

now all deadly *deeds* on us, which þou haſt power to do. Contrive for us anon, reeve, various pains; light up a fire; fetch a wheel. Prepare all þat þou canſt ſavagely ðink of; furþer all þy faþerſ will, þe fiend of hell: too long he held us *in bondage* as he holds þee now, But we, henceforð, ſhall hold to Jeſu, Gods Royal Son, Redeemer of mankind." Þe reeve waſ ſo angered þat he ground hiſ teeð, and would go mad, and ſent in a mad manner to Maximianuſ, þe mighty Kaiſar of Rome, about þiſ, what he would recommend; and he bid him carve off þe head of every one, five hundred counted up, men and women. One hundred and ðirty preſſed on, each before þe reſt, to get beheaded, and all went martyrſ wiþ joy to heaven.

They are martyred.

Eleuſiuſ, mean while, cauſed hiſ men to make a very big fire; and bad þem bind her, feet and hands, and caſt her into þe fiery heat, to burn *her* up alive. When ſhe looked up and ſaw þiſ flame flare, ſhe caſt her eyeſ to heaven wiþ uplifted handſ, and þuſ to Chriſt cried.

Eleuſiuſ prepares a fire.

"Abandon me not now in þiſ need, Lord of Life: mild-hearted God, be merciful to me þy maiden, and wiþ þy Julianas prayer.

neauer nu in þif neode ah mit ti softe grace salue
mine funnen. Iesu mi felhðe ne warp þu me neauer ut
of þin ehfihðe. bihald me ant help me ant of þisse reade
leye ref me arude me þat þeof ^{unhappy} unselie ne þurue nawt
seggen. þi lauerd þet tu luuest ant schulde þi seheld beon
hwer if he nu meiden. Nefde ha buten ifeid swa þat an
engel ne com briht af þah he bernde ant iþat ^{bright} ferliche fur
amidden riht lihte ant hit ewenchte anan euer euch sferke.
ant heo stod unweommet heriende hire hehe healent wið
lude stefne.

ÞE reue seh hit acwenct ant bigon te cwakien swa
grimliche him gromede ant set þat balefule beast
as an burft bar. þat grunde hif tuskes. ant feng on to femin
ant te grispation o þif meoke meiden. ant þohte on hwucche
wife he mahte hire awelden ant lette fecchen a feat.
t wið pich hit fullen ant heaten hit walm hat. ant

never, now in this need; but with thy soft grace salve
my sins. Jesus, my happiness, cast me never out of thine
eyesight, behold me and help me, and from this red flame
snatch me, deliver me that these unhappy men need not
say, 'Thy Lord whom thou lovest, and who should be thy
shield, where is he now, maiden?'” She had but said
so when an angel came, bright as though he burned;
and in that strange fire, right in the midst, alighted and
quenched it anon, every spark. And she stood unblem-
ished, praising her high Saviour with loud voice.

The reeve saw it quenched, and began to quake; so
savagely was he angered. And the baleful beast sat, as a
bristled boar that ground his tusks, and began to foam and
to grind his teeth at this meek maiden; and thought in
what wise he might overpower her. And caused a vessel to
be fetched and filled with pitch, and heated boiling-hot; and

to be delivered
from the flame
for the sake of
the bystanders.

An angel comes,
and lighting in
the midst of the
fire, quenches
every spark.

The reeve, seeing
the fire quenched,
begins to grind
his teeth, and
foam at the
mouth.

softe grace salue mine funnen. ihesu mi felhðe ne warp þu me nawt ut of þin ehfihðe. bihald me ant help me. ƿ̅ þif reade lei reaf ƿ̅ arude me. swa þat *tef unfeli ne þurue nawt seggen. þi lauerd þat tu leuest on. ƿ̅ schulde þi scheld beon. hwer if he nuðe. ne bidde ich nawt drihtin þif for deaðef dredneffe. Ah false swa hare lahe. ƿ̅ festne iþine icorene treowe bileaue. schwau nu mihti godd þi meinfule mahte. ƿ̅ hihendliche iher me iheiþet. ƿ̅ ihere[t] aa on ecneffe.

*[Fol. 54.]

[H]efde ha bute ifeid swa; þat an engel ne com se briht af þah he bearnde. ƿ̅ to þat ferliche fur. iþat lei lihte ƿ̅ acwente hit anan. eaueſ euch sparke. ƿ̅ heo stod unhurt þer amidheppes heriende ure healent wið hehefte steuene. þe reue seh hit acwenet ƿ̅ bigon to cwakien. se grundliche him gromede. ƿ̅ fet te balefule beaſt: af eaueſ ei iburſt bar. þat grunde hiſ tuſkeſ. ƿ̅ ſen[g] on to ſeamin. ƿ̅ griſt-beatien griſliche up o þif meoke meiden. ƿ̅ þohte wið hwuch meſt wa. he mahte hire awealden. ƿ̅ het ſecchen aueat. ƿ̅ wið pich fullen. ƿ̅ wallen hit walm hat. ƿ̅

*extinguish
candle*

soft grace salve my sins. Jesu, my joy, cast me not out of þy presence, regard me and help me, and snatch me and rid me out of þis red flame, so þat þis unseeley one need not say, 'þy Lord on whom þou believest, and who should be þy shield, where is he now?' I ask not þis, O Lord, for dread of deað, but do þou þus falsify þeir creed and fasten in þine elect þe true faið; display now, Mighty God, þy mainful might, and forðwiþ hear me, þou extolled and glorified ever to all eternity!"

She had but so said, when an angel came, as bright as if
 on fire, and alighted amidst þat perilous fire, in þat flame, and quenched it anon, every spark of it; and she stood at amidhips, *up to þe waist*, unhurt, praising our Saviour wiþ voice on highest. Þe prefect saw it quenched and began to quake, so it angered him to þe bottom of his soul, and þere sat þe baleful beaſt, as ever a bristly boar, agrinding his tusks, and beginning to foam and grind his teeð grisly upon þe meek maiden; and ðought how wiþ most woe he could get upper hand of her: and he bid fetch a vessel, and fill it wiþ pitch and heat it boiling hot, and

An angel quenches the fire.

Eleusius orders a pitchbath.

*[Leaf 68, back.] het warpen hire þrin *hwen hit wodelukeft weolle. af me
 dude hire þrin: ha cleopede to drihtin ant hit coledē anan ant
 warð hire af wunfum. af euer eni wlech weter. þat were
 iwlaht te baðien. ant leop wallinde hat up azein þeo ilke
 þat hit hefden iʒarket. ant for scaldede of ham feoluen fifti
 ant tene. ant fordude fifti al italde. þa þe reue ifeh þif: he
 rende hiſ'claðes ant toc him feoluen bi þe top. ⁊ feng to
 fiten hiſ mawmez ⁊ laſten hiſ lauerd. Swiðe quoð he ut
 of min ehſiðe. þat ich ne ſeo hire na mare er þe bodi wið
 þe buc beo ifundret from hire heaueſt.

SOne af ha þif iherde ha herede godd in heouene. ⁊
 warð ſwiðe gled. For þet heo iwilnet hefde me
 ledde hire. [⁊] hleaç forð ant heo weſ eð-luke af ha
 ſutte oþe ſtude þer ha ſchulde deð drehen. þa com þe
 ilke belial of helle. þat ha hefde ibeaten hire bihinden.
 ant gon to ʒeien. a: ſtalewurðe men ne ſparie ʒe nawiht.

Juliana is put
 into a veſſel
 full of boiling
 pitch; it ſoon
 cools and be-
 comes as pleaſant
 as a warm bath
 to her, though it
 leaps up and
 ſcalds her tor-
 mentors.

bad caſt her therein when it ſhould boil moſt furioſly.
 As ſhe was put therein, ſhe called upon the Lord, and
 it cooled anon, and became as pleaſant to her as ever
 any lukewarm water, that were warmed to bathe (in).
 And it leapt up, boiling hot, againſt thoſe ſame who had
 prepared it, and badly ſcalded of themſelves fifty and ten,
 and deſtroyed fifty, all counted. When the reeve ſaw
 this, he rent his clothes and took himſelf by the hair, and
 began to quarrel with his idols and blaſpheme his Lord.
 "Quickly," quoth he, "out of my eyesight, that I may ſee
 her no more, ere the body with the trunk be ſundered from
 her head."

The reeve orders
 her to be taken
 out of his ſight.

As ſoon as ſhe heard this, ſhe praiſed God in heaven
 and became very glad, for ſhe had deſired that. She was
 led and lugged forth, and ſhe was eaſy to lug. As ſhe
 ſtopped in the place where ſhe was to ſuffer death, then
 came that ſame Belial of hell, that ſhe had beaten, behind
 her, and began to cry, "Ah! ſtalwart men, ſpare not;

When ſhe
 reaches the place
 of execution,
 Belial comes be-
 hind her and
 encourages her
 perſecutors.

het warpen hire þrin. hwen hit meaft were iheat ⁊ wodelukeft weolle.

[A]s me dude þrin. ha cleopede to drihtin. ⁊ hit coledē anan. ⁊ warð hire afe wunfum af þah hit were a wlech beað iwlaht for þen anef in forte beaðien. ⁊ fmat up aþein þeo þe iþarket hit hefden. ⁊ for ſchaldede of ham af hit up ſcheat; *alle italde bitale. feoue fiðe tene. ⁊ forðre ʒet fiue. þa þe reue þis ifeh; rende hife claðef ⁊ toc him feolf bi þe top. ⁊ feng to f[l]iten¹ hif feont. ⁊ laftin hif¹ fiten in both MSS.

Swiðe quoð he. wið hire ut of min ehfiðe. þat ich ne feo hire nawt heonne forð mare. ear þe buc of hire bodi. ⁊ tet heaued liflefe ligger ifundret. Sone fe ha þif iherde; ha herede goð of heouene. ⁊ warð utnume glead; for þif ha hefde iwilnet. me leadde hire ⁊ leac forð. ⁊ heo wef eðluke. Af ha ſtutte iþat ſtude. þer þe forðemde ſchulden deað drehen; þa com þe illke belial þat ha hefde ibeaten feorren to bihinden ⁊ bigon to ʒeien. Aftalewurðe men ne ſpearie ʒe hire nawiht.

ordered her to be cast þerein, when it should be heated hottest and were boiling most fiercely.

When men put her þerein, she cried to þe Lord, and it cooled anon, and became as winsome to her as if it were a warm bað, tempered for þat once to baþe in; and it flew up against þem who had prepared it and badly scalded some of þem as it dashed up, all told by tale, seven times ten, and further yet five. When þe reeve saw þis, he rent his cloþes and seized himself by þe hair, and began to flite at his fiends (or mammals) and blasfeme his lord.

But the pitch cools to her.

“Quick!” quoð he, “wiþ her out of my sight, þat I may see her henceforð no more, till þe trunk of her body lie lifeless sundered from þe head.” As soon as she heard þis, she glorified þe God of Heaven, and became excessively glad, for þis she had wished. She was led and lugged forð, and she was easily (led): as she stopped in þat place where þe doomed must endure deað; þen came þe same belial þat she had beaten, far behind her, and began to cry, “Ah! stalwart men, spare her not,

Eleusius orders her beheaded.

The imp is forward.

ha haueð uf alle ^{done} ſcheome idon. ſchendeð hire nuðen ant
 ældeð hire ʒarewborh ne ſtudgi ʒe neauer. Iuliane þe edie
 openede hire ehnen ant lokede toward him. ant te bali
 blenchte. ⁊ braid him aʒeinward af an iſchoten arewe.
 wumme þat ich *libbe quoð he þa ich beo nunan ilaht ant
 ʒef ha keccheð me nu! ne findi neauer leche. igripe ha
 me enef! ne ga i neauer eft mare. ant leac him aʒeinward
 af a beore! þet unwiht. ne mahte him nawt letten. af ha
 ſchulde ſtupen ant ſtrecchen forð þe ſwire ha bed firſt ant
 feng on þuſ to learen þeo þet þer weren ant þuſ feide

Lvfeð me leoue men ant lideð ane hwile bi-
 wepeð. ⁊ bireowfeð ower funnen. ⁊ laffeð wið
 foð ſchrift. ⁊ wið dedbote. leaueð ower ^{and custom} unlahen.
 ⁊ buldeð ower boldef uppon treowe ^{with} ſtaðele þat ne
 dredeð na wind ne na weder nowðer. lokeð þat te
 heouenlich lauerd beo grundwal of al þat ʒe wurcheð.

But when Ju-
 liana looks at
 him, he is forced
 to retreat.

When about to
 ſuffer death, ſhe
 teaches thoſe
 about her :
 "Listen to me,
 dear men, leave
 your ſins, and
 build on the true
 foundation,

ſhe has done us all ſhame; put her now to ſhame, and
 yield her ready bail; ſtudy ye never." Juliana the bleſſed
 opened her eyes and looked towards him; and the bale-
 ful one blenched and jerked himſelf backwards as a
 ſhotten arrow. "Woe is me, that I live!" quoth he
 then, "I ſhall now anon be caught, and if ſhe catch me
 now, I ſhall never find a leech; let her once ſeize me, I
 ſhall never more go (out of the nooſe)." And he flung
 himſelf backward as a bear, that evil being, and could not
 hinder himſelf. When ſhe was to ſtoop and ſtretch forth
 the neck, ſhe firſt prayed, and began thus to teach thoſe
 that were there, and thus ſaid:—

"Listen to me, dear men, and hearken awhile. La-
 ment and repent of your ſins, and leſſen them with
 true ſhriſt, and with amendment; leave your evil cus-
 toms, and build your buildings upon a true foundation,
 that dreads no wind nor weather either. Look that
 the heavenly Lord be foundation of all that ye work;

ha haueð uf alle fcheome idon. fchendeð hire nuðe. 3eldeð hire 3arow borh efter þat ha wurðe is. Aftale-wurðe men doð hire biliue todeað buten abade.

Juliane þe eadie openede hire ehnen ⁊ biheold towart openenede MS. him; af he þus feide. ⁊ tet beali blencte. ⁊ breid him a3einwart bihinden hare fchuldren. af for a fchoten arewe. wumme þat ich libbe quoð he. ich beo nunan ilaht. Ah ilecche ha me eft: ne finde ich na leche. Igripe ha me eanef: ne ga i neauer mare. þrefter o grene. ⁊ leac him a3einwart af þe beare [þat] unhwiht in alre diche deoffe wei ne mahte nawt letten. Af ha fchulde ftupin ⁊ ftrecche forð *þat fwire: ha bed firft ⁊ feng on þus forte learen þeo *[Fol. 55.] þe þer weren.

Lvfeð me leoue men ⁊ liðeð ane hwile. Bireowfið ower funnen. ⁊ faluið wið foð fchrift ⁊ wið deað bote. leaueð ower unlahan. ⁊ buldef up o treowe eorðe. þat ne dredeð na ual for wind ne for wedere. lokið þet te heouenliche lauerd beo grund wal of al þat 3e wurcheð.

she hað done us all shame; shend her now; yield her ready bail according as she's worð: ah! stalwart men, do her to deað belive, wiþout tarrying."

Juliana, þe blessed, opened her eyes and cast a look The imp recoils. towards him, as he þus said, and þe baleful one blenched, and jerked himself backwards behind þeir shoulders as if at a shotten arrow. "Wo is me! þat I live," quoð he, "I shall be now anon caught: but if she catch me again, I shall find myself no leech. Let her grip me once, I shall never more move after þat out of her noose." And he flung himself backwards, did þat evil one, as a bear, in all þe devils way, and could not hinder himself. When she was to stoop down and stretch forð her neck, she prayed a moments respite, and began þus to instruct þose þat were þere.

"Listen to me, beloved men, and attend to me a Juliana makes exhortation. while. Berue your sins and salve þem wiþ true shrift and wiþ repentance, abandon your ill customs and build upon safe ground, where one need not fear a fall for wind nor for weaþer. Have a care þat þe Heavenly Lord be þe foundation of all þat ye do,

for þat stont studefast falle. cleopeð ȝeorne to godd
 in hali chirche þat he ȝeoue ow wit wel forte donne
 ant strenge ow wið his strenge aȝein þen stronge
 unwiht. þat seleð euer t̃ áá ow forte fwolhen. lusteð
 writen lare ant luuieð þrefter. wel if him þat wakeð
 wel in þis litle hwile t̃ witeð wel him feoluen. ant
 heortelichelike ofte for his sunnen. þis world weint awei
 af weter þat eorneð ant af imet fiueuen afwindeð hire
murðen ant al nis buten a lef wind þat we luuieð. leaueð
 * [Leaf 69, back.] þe leafe ant luuieð þe soðe. for we schulen *leten þis lif
 nute we neauer hwenne ant reope we of þat ripe fed þat
 we seowen swiðe ich biseche ow þat ȝe bidden for me :
 breðren ant sustren t̃ cufte ham a cof of þe alle af ha
 foden ant biheold uppard ant hehede hire stefne.

Lauerd godd al mihti þu luuest treowe bileaue ne lef
 þu to þin ifan þin ilicnesse. ah underfeng me to

which stands
 fast, whatever
 else falls. Cry
 to God for
 strength.

This world passes
 away like a run-
 ning stream; its
 joys vanish like
 a dream."

She gives them a
 kiss of peace,

for that stands stedfast, (whatever may) fall. Cry earnestly to God in holy church, that he give you wit to do well and strengthen you with his strength against the strong evil being, who lays snares ever and ay in order to devour you. Listen to the lore of scriptures and love it thereafter. It is well for him that watches well in this little while, and guards himself well and often sighs heartily for his sins. This world wends away, as water that runs, and as a dreamt dream vanish its joys; and all that we live is but a false wind. Leave the false and love the true; for we must leave this life, we never know when, and we reap of that harvest seed that we have sown. Greatly I beseech you to pray for me, brethren and sisters." And she kissed them a kiss of peace, all as they stood, and beheld upward and raised her voice.

"Lord God Almighty, thou lovest true belief; leave not thy likeness to thy foes, but [receive me to

for þat stont studeuest falle. þat falle. ȝeieð to godd in hali
 chirche. þat he ȝeoue ow wit wel forte donne. 7 strenge
 ow wið his strengðe. aȝein þe stronge unwiht þat sekeð¹ seleð in both
 eauer. 7 aa. ow to forswolhen. luftnið luftiliche hali writef
 lare. 7 liuieð þrefter. wel him þe wakeð wel. 7 i þif
 lutle hwile wit her him seoluen. 7 heorteliche fikeð ofte
 for his sunnen. þif worlt went awei. af þe weater þe
 eorneð. 7 ase sweuen imet aswint hire murhðe. 7 al nið
 bute a leaf wind þat þe ipif worlt liuieð. leaueð þat leaf
 if. 7 leoteð lutel þrof. 7 secheð þat soðe lif þat aa leasteð.
 for þif lif ȝe schulen leoten. 7 nuten ȝe neauer hwenne. 7
 reopen ripe of þat sed þat ȝe her seowen. þat if underne
 ȝeld of wa. oðer of wunne. efter ower werkes. Swiðe ich
 bifeche ow. þat ȝe bidden for me. breðren. 7 sustren. 7
 custe* ham coff of² peif alle af ha stoden. ant biheold up
 part. ant hehede hire steuene.

² MS. of.
 *[Fol. 55, back.]

L auerd godd almihti. ich þonki þe of þine ȝeouen. nim
 ȝeme to me nuðe. þu luuest ouer alle þing treowe
 bileaue. ne lef þu neauer to þi va; þin ilicnesse þat tu ruddest

for þat will stand steadfast, happen what may. Cry
 to God in holy church, þat he give you wit to do
 well and strengðen you wiþ his strengð against þe
 strong evil one, who seekeð ever and aye to devour
 you. Listen wiþ pleasure to lore of Holy Writ and live
 by it. Well tis wiþ him þat wacheð well and in þis
 little while here guards himself, and oft sigheð heartily
 for his sins. Þis world passes away as þe water þat
 runneð; and its mirð vanishes away as a dream dreamt;
 and all þat lives in þis world is but a false wind. Leave
 what is false and esteem it but little, and seek þe true
 life which lasteð for ever. For þis life ye shall quit, and
 ye never know when, and shall reap a harvest from þe
 seed ye have sown: þat is to say, an open recompense of
 woe or of happiness according to your works. Much I
 beseech you þat ye pray for me, breþren and sisters,"
 and she kissed þem boð a kiss of peace all as þey
 stood, and cast her eyes upwards and elevated her voice.
 "Lord God Almighty, I ðank þee for þy gifts, have
 a care for me now; þou lovest above all þings a true
 faið; never to þy foes leave þy likeness þat þou savedst

þe. ƿ do me in þin englene hird wið meidnef imeane. ich
 æreoue to þe mi gaft drihtin. ƿ wið þat ilke beide ƿ def
 duuelunge dun to þer eorðe fone bihefde^{le}t. ant þe edie
 englef wið hire sawle finginde fihen toward heouene.
 foððen fone þerefter com a feli wummon fophie inempnet.
 bi nicomedef burh o rade toward rome. of heh eun akennet
 ƿ nom þif meidenef bodi. ƿ ber hit in a bat biwunden
 deorliche in deorewurðe claðef. af ha weren in wettre com
 a fteorm ƿ draf ham to londe into campaine. ƿ þer lette
 fophie from þe sea a mile fetten a chirche ƿ don hire bodi þrin
 in stanene þruh hehliche af hit deh alhen to donne. þe reue

and commends
 her soul to God.
 She sinks down
 to the earth;
 and the blessed
 angels bear her
 soul to heaven.

thyself and set me in thine angels host with company of
 maidens. I give up to thee my ghost, Lord." And with
 that same, she bent and sank sinkingly down to the earth,
 soon beheaded. And the blessed angels with her soul, sing-
 ing, ascended toward heaven. Then soon after that came

Sophia takes the
 maidens body in
 a boat; and
 being driven to
 shore in Cam-
 pania, causes the
 body to be put
 in a stone coffin.

a blessed woman, named Sophia, born of high kindred,
 by the city of Nicomedia on (her) road toward Rome;
 and took this maidens body and bore it in a boat, wound
 up dearly in precious cloths. When they were on water,
 a storm came and drove them to land, into Campania.
 And there, a mile from the sea, Sophia had a church set,
 and her (Julianas) body put therein in a stone coffin,
 solemnly, as it is right to do with saints. The reeve,

of deað; þurh þi deað o rode. ne let tu me neauer deien iþe eche deað of helle. Vnderueng me to þe. ƿ̅ do me wið þine. iþat englene hird wið meidenef imeane. Ich aþeoue þe mi gaft deorrewurðe drihtin. ƿ̅ do hit bliffule godd for þin iblefede nome to ro. ƿ̅ to reſte. wið [þat¹] ilke ha¹ Not in MS. beide hire ƿ̅ beah duuelunge adun bihefdet to þer eorðe. ant te eadie englef wið þe fawle ſinginde ſihen in to heouene.

Anan þrefter ſone. com afeli wummon. bi Nichomedeffe burh o rade towart rome. Sophie weſ inempnet of heh cun akennet. ƿ̅ nom þiſ meidenef bodi. ƿ̅ ber hit in to hire ſchip biwunden ſwiðe deorliche ideorrewurðe claðef. As ha weren iwatere. com a from þat te ſchip ne mahte na mon ſteorin. ƿ̅ drof ham to drue lond in to champaine þer lette ſophie. from þe ſea a mile. ſetten a chirche. ƿ̅ duden hire bodi þrin in a ſtanene þruh hehliche af hit deh halhe to donne.

Þe reue ſone fe he wiſte. þat ha weſ awei ilead. leup
*for hihðe wið lut men into a bat ƿ̅ bigon to rowen *[Fol. 56.]

from deað by þy deað on þe cross: nor let me ever die in þe eternal deað of hell. Receive me to þyſelf and place me wiþ þy *saints* in þe company of angels togeþer wiþ maidens. I ſurrender þee my ſpirit, precious Lord! and Bliffſul God, for þy Bleſſed Name, commit it to reſe and reſt." Wiþ þat ſame ſhe bowed and bent herſelf ſinkingly down, beheaded, to þe earð, and þe bleſſed angels wiþ þe ſoul aſcended ſinging to heaven. She is beheaded.

Anon after þat ſoon, þere came a ſeely woman by Nicomedia on her way towards Rome, Sofia ſhe was named, born of high kindred, and ſhe took þis maidens body and bore it in her ſhip, wound very preciously in ſumptuous raiment. While þey were on þe water, þere came a ſtorm ſo þat no man could ſteer þe ſhip, and it drove þem to dry land into Campania. Þere Sofia had a church erected a mile from þe ſea, and placed Julianas body þere in a ſtone coffin, as ſolemnly as it is fit to deposit a ſaint. Her body receives burial.

Þe prefect, as ſoon as he knew þat ſhe was led away, leapt in hope wiþ his men into a boat, and began to row The prefect

þa he herde þif: bigon te rowen efter forte reauen hit
 ham: ⁊ iþe [fea] fenchte. for þer arifen stormes starcke
 ⁊ stronge ⁊ breken þe schipes bord. adrenchten on hare
 [Leaf 70.] þrittuðe sum an þerto eke fowre. ant warp ham adriuen to
 þe londe. þer af wilde deor limel to luken-ham ⁊ te unfeli
 sawlen funcken into helle.

Þv̄f þat edie meiden wende þurh pinen to heouenliche
 wunnen in þe nomecuðe burh nicomede hatte oþe
 fixtenðe dei of feouerelef moneð. þe fortende kalende of
 mearch þat cumeð efter. heo uf erndi to godd þe grace of
 him feoluen. þet rixleð in þreohad. ⁊ þah if an untweamet
 iheret ant iheiet wurðe he him ane af he is wurðe ant euer
 ah te beonne world abuten ende. AMEN.

The reeve rows
 after them; but
 his ship is
 broken, and he is
 drowned with
 thirty others.

when he heard this, began to row after to bereave them of
 it; and sank in the sea; for there arose storms, stark
 and strong, and broke the ships board, drowned some
 thirty of them, and also four besides; and drifted them
 to the land, where wild beasts rent them limb from limb,
 and the unhappy souls sunk into hell.

Thus the blessed
 maiden passed to
 heavenly joy at
 Nicomedia.
 May she inter-
 cede for us with
 God.

Thus the blessed maiden went through pains to heavenly
 joys, in the renowned city, called Nicomedia, in the six-
 tenth day of Februarys month, the fourteenth before the
 kalends of March that cometh after. May she intercede
 for us to God for the grace of himself, who reigns in three
 persons, and yet is one, undivided! Praised and exalted
 be he alone, as he is worthy, and ever ought to be, world
 without end! Amen.

swiftliche efter. forte reavin hit ham. ⁊ i þea sea senchen. ⁊ arifen stormes se sterke ⁊ se stronge. þat te bordes of þis bat bursten ⁊ to breken. ⁊ te sea senete him on his þrituðe sum ant þer to zet fowre. ⁊ draf him adrenchet dead to þe londe. þer ase wilde deor limmel to luken ham. ⁊ to limesden eauer euch lið from þe lire. an te unsele sawlen funken to helle. to forswelten isar ⁊ iforhe eauer.

Þvif þe eadi iulienne wende þurh pinen. from worldliche weanen; to heuerichef wunnen iþe Nomecuðe burh Nicomede inempnet. i þe Sixtenðe dei of feouerreres moneð. þe fowrtuðe Kalende of mearch þat if seoððen.

theis dai of februarye is the 14 kalend of marche.

Heo uf erndi to godd. þe grace of him seoluen. þe rixleð in þreo had. ⁊ tah if untweamet iheret ⁊ iheiet beo he him ane af he wes ⁊ if eauer in eche.

Hwen drihtin o domes dei windweð his hweate. ⁊ weo[r]pð þat dufti chef to hellene heate. He mote beon a corn i godes guldene edene. þe turnde þis of latin to englische ledene. Ant he þat her least. on wrat swa af he cuðe. AMEN.

swiftly after *her body*, to fetch it by violence from þem, and sink it in þe sea; and þere arose storms so stark and so strong þat þe planks of þe boat burst and broke to pieces, and sank him in þe sea with ƿirty oþers, and four more besides, and drove him when drowned dead to þe land; where wild beasts tore him limb from limb, and severed each joint from þe flesh, and þe unseely souls sunk to hell to perish in sore and in sorrow for ever.

pursues her lifeless corpse, and is lost at sea.

þus þe blessed Juliana passed þrough pains from temporal miseries to þe joys of þe kingdom of heaven, in þe famous town named Nikomedia, on þe sixteenð day of February, þe fourteenð of þe calends of March following.

Date of her commemoration.

May she intercede for us for þe grace of Himself who reigneð in ƿree persons and yet is undivided, glorified and extolled be He, One as He was, and is, and ever shall be.

When þe Lord on doomsday winnoweð his wheat and ƿroweð þe dusty chaff to heats of hell, may he be an elect one in Gods golden Eden who turned þis out of Latin into þe English language: and he also, least in þis matter, who penned it as well as he was able. Amen.

The translator prays for himself.

[In a sixteenth-century hand, at the bottom of page 56 of the Bodleian Text, is the following :]

Whan Judge at domesday dothe winnow his wheat
And drives dustye chaffe into hellishe heat
God make him a corne, in Eden to duell
That owt of latine this treatise did freat
And him that last wrote Amen. *A Maidwot (?)*

SEYN JULIAN

(THE LIFE OF ST. JULIANA),

FROM ASHMOLE MS. 43.

metrical romance

Seyn Julian com of heie men : as we fyndeþ iwite.
 Cristene stilliche he bicom : þat no mon ne scholde iwite.
 Maximan het þe emperour : þat heþene was þo.
 Alle cristenemen he dude to deþe : þat he miȝte of go. 4
 A gret maister he hadde vnder him : þat het elise
 He wolde þat Julian to him : iwedded scholde be.
 Wiþ hire fader and moder he spek : so þat hi were at on.
 Þo he wende to þis holi maide : and wende hadde is wille anon. 8
 Swete sire quaþ. Seyn Juliane : it ne ualleþ noȝt to me
 Bote þou were mon of more power : to be ispoused to þe.
 þis mon was glad uor þis word : to þe emperour he wende.
 Noble ȝiftes he him ȝef : and fair present him sende. 12
 So þat he made him vnder him : hext Justice of is londe.
 To don and hote wat he wolde : uor is ȝift and uor is sonde.
 þis Justice wende to Juliane : þo is power was.
 And wende hire hadde as is spouse : ac he failede of is as. 16
 þis maide him uaire vnswerde : leue sire heo sede
 Bote we be boþe of one lawe : we ne mowe noȝt be of one rede
 Cristene womman icham iwis : I ne reche ho it wite.
 * Bicome cristene for my loue : and me þou hast biȝite. 20
 Sori was þis luþer man : he nuste þo wat he miȝte.
 Wuste þis he sede¹ þe emperour : he wolde luþer þe diȝte.
 ȝif we cristene beþ boþe : we worþeþ sone dede.
 þenne our Ioie were al ido : þat we scholde to gadere lede. 24
 Ihote² icham alle cristenemen : to deþe do vp myn oþe.
 þeruore lemmon turn þi þoȝt : and haue reuþe of ous boþe.
 Leue sire quaþ þat maide : ȝif þou art adrad :
 Of þe emperour þat is erliche³ man : iwis þou art amad. 28

*agayn requ
have mo
of*

get over

*wants
to be a*

¹ Read (he sede). "if þe Emperor knew þis (said he).

² "Commanded."

³ "Earðly."

þei is power be non such : sone it wole ago.

Ac dred god þat power haþ : of ech þing euermo.

[Fol. 25b.] Swiþe sori was þis luþer man : þat he ne miþte hire þoþt wende

To habbe conseil of hire fader : after him he let sende. 32

þo hi to gadere come : to gadere hi made gret feste.

And fondede hire elene þoþt : to chaunge þoru uair biheste.

þo hi speke uairest wiþ hire : þis maide hem ʒaf answere

Icholle holde þat ichabbe itake : ʒe ne doþ me þer of no dere. 36

At o word ʒe ne turneþ me noþt : þer aboute ʒe spilleþ breþ.

Doþ me wat pyne ʒe wolleþ : uor I ne drede noþt þen deþ.

þe hi seie þat þis maide : hire þoþt chaungi nolde.

Hire fader bitok hire þe Justice : to do wiþ hire wat he wolde. 40

þe Iustice let hire strupe naked : *and* legge hire plat to grounde.

Six knyȝtes eode hire aboute : *and* made hire mony a wounde.

Hi leide hire on wiþ harde scorges : þat hi weri were.

Euer lay þis maide *and* louȝ : as hire noþing nere. 44

þo hi seie hire stable þoþt : þat heo nas in none fere.

Hi nome *and* henge hire up abem : bi þe tresses of hire here.

þer bi heo heng half an day : knyȝtes bi neþe stode.

Wiþ scourges hi leide euer vpon ; þat [heo] stremd al ablode. 48

þe more turment þat hi hire dude : þe bet hi hire paide¹

þo hi ne miþte hor wille habbe : adoun hi nome þis maide.

And bed hire turne biuore hire deþ : hire þoþt on alle wise.

And þench on hire heie kunne : *and* hire owe gentrise. 52

þo hi ne miþte uor noþing : bringe hire of hire þoþt.

A chetel wol of iwelled bras : biuore þis maide was ibroȝt.

Hi ȝote adoun aboute hire scoldren : as heo vpriȝt stod.

Bi rug *and* wombe it orn adoun : as it were flod. 56

Fram þe necke to þe fot ; ech stude it þoruȝ soutȝe.

Euer stod þis holi maide : as hire noþing ne rouȝte.

Louerd muche is þi myȝte : so muche iweld bras.

In hire woundede bodi ne greuede noþt : uair miracle þer was. 60

Wod wroþ was þo þe Justice : he het his men hire lede.

In to strong prison *and* bounde hire faste : uorte me nome oþer
to rede.²

¹ From Pacare.

² Corr. Uorte nime oþer rede.

Þo þis maide in prison was : þe deuel to hire wende.
 In fourme of an angel : and seðe þat our louerd him þuder sende. 64
 Forto saui hire fram þe deþ : and wissi hire wel to done.
 Þat heo tormentes uorte fle : dude¹ þe Justices bone.
 Vor our lord hadde of hire reuþe : and wilnede hire lif.
 And leuere hadde þen heo were ded : þat heo were iwedded to wif. 68
 Þis maide stod in grete þoꝛt : þat he hire þerto gan rede.
 And þat our lord hire so het : bi him as he seðe.
 Heo sat akne and bad our lord : þat he hire scholde lere.²
 Wel to done and warny ek : wat þe messenger were.
 As heo sat in hire orison : heo hurde a uois þat seðe.
 Be studeuast in þi bileue : and ich þe wole wel rede.
 Ac þe messenger aske wat he be : and ne haue of him no drede.
 And nym him uaste uor icholle : be wiþ þe in eche neode. 76
 Þo þe maide þis ihurde : þen deuel heo nom wel uaste.
 Heo made þe signe of þe crois : and to hire fet him caste.
 Tel me heo seðe wat þou art : oþer icholle þe quelle.
 Leuedi he seðe let me go : and icholle þe sone telle. 80
 Nay þou schalt abide her : þis maide seðe þo.
 Vorte þou me telle wat þou art : and þanne þou schalt go.
 Þo seðe he icham a deuel : ich hote belial. — Belial
 Aþen ech mannes good dede : ich can do luþer gal. — again good deeds
 Þo adam and eue wolde : in godes seruice be. — adm. o. even
 Ich hem broȝte in dedliche sunne : þoru þe apel of þe tre. — Caen
 Bitwene caym was muche loue : and abel is broþer. — Jesus or c. w.
 Ich made þoru a lutel enuye : þat on sle þat oþer. — He is de. h. b.
 Ich made ihesus on þe rode deie : ac þat we seþþe aboȝte. — m. 88
 And herodes þe children sle : þo me ihesus soȝte
 Ichabbe ymad men oþer sle : and scipes in þe se drenche. — each. v. l.
 Alle wo ichabbe anerþe ido ; þat man may on þenche. — do all. m. e.
 Ho sende þe huder quaþ þe maide : þe deuel aþen seðe. 92
 Satan oure maister þat is atom : þat schal ous alle rede.
 ȝif he send þou quaþ þis maide : to eny holi manne.
 And ȝe ne mowe him noȝt ouercome : wat deþ he wiþ þou
 þanne. 96

¹ Should do.² Compare On cneowum sittende Ælfr. Oros. III. ix.

panne ne dorre we quaþ þe deucl : biuore our maister wende.
 Oure acountes uorte zelde : æc [he] let ous of sende.
And ʒif we awer beþ ifounde : he let ous bete sore.
 þer uore wenne we fyndeþ eny mon : stable in godes lore. 100
 We fondeþ him in luþer þoʒt : to bringe myd al our miʒte.
 Ac anon he mai ous ouercome : ʒif he wole aʒen ous fiʒte.
 Vor we nabbeþ power no mon to bringe : in sunne aʒen is mode.
 Vor ihesus bynom ous þulke miʒte : þo he deide on þe rode. 104
 Of al þat ichabbe anerþe igo : so clanliche ouercome.
 Neuer Inas as ich nou am : my miʒte me is bynome.
 [Fol. 26b.] Maide uor þyn hendescipe : þou haue mercy of me.
 Let me go at þis one tyme : Ine schal neuereft derie þe. 108
 Alas þat Inadde er iwust : wat me scolde bitide.
 Certes quaþ þe maide þo : ʒut þou schalt abide.
 þis maide nom þis foule best : *and* faste it gan bynde.
 Myd a raketeie þat aboute hire was : his honden him bihinde. 112
 Myd anoþer Irene raketeie : heo bet him swiþe sore.
And euer sede þis foulde best : hende maide þyn ore.
 Haue reuþe of þi wreche prison : *and* þench þat þou art fre.
 Inabbe icome nei non : þat me dorste hondli ne ise. 116
And þou me darst þus tormenti : alas wi ne mai ich fle.
 Wi artou so strong maidenhod : þat þou ne miʒt ouercome be.
 Alas maidenhod alas : wi woltou wiþ ous fiʒte.
 Maidens ichulle euereft drede : Inabbe aʒen hem no miʒte. 120
 þe wule þis maide tormentede : þus þis foule wiʒt.
 þe Justice het þis maide uette : biuore him anon riʒt.
 þe maide nom þis foule best : *and* after hire it drouʒ.
 Leue leuedi he sede þin ore : iscend icham Inouʒ. 124
 Ne make þou namo men gawen on me : nartou corteis *and* hende.
 þench þat maidens scolde milde be : *and* bring me of þis bende.
 War¹ is kunde of þi maidenhod : þat scholde be milde *and* stille.
And þou art aʒen me so sturne : hou miʒtou habbe þe wille. 128
 So longe he on þis maide cride : as heo him drouʒ *and* ladde.
 After hire þoru cheping : þat reuþe of him heo hadde.
 A chaumbre foreine heo isei : al ope to ward þe strete.
 Vol it was of uelþhede : old *and* al uorlete. 132

¹ "Where."

- þis maide nom þis foule þing : *and* caste it amydde.
 Dai þat wolde neschere¹ bed : him biseche oþer bidde.
 Vor it was good Inou to him : bineþe *and* eke aboue.
 Wat seggeþ ʒe segge ich soþ : ne lieʒ noʒt for is loue. 136
 gut nolde þis luþer men : þat iseie al þis dede.
 Bileue on god *and* turne hor þoʒt : ac þe more hire wiþ sede.
 þo heo biuore þe Justice com : hi wolde chaunge hire þoʒt.
And bihete hire prute *and* gret nobleie : ac al ne huld it noʒt. 140
 A weol of Ire swiþe strong : biuore hire hi caste.
 Al were þe velion² aboute : wiþ rasours istiked faste.
 þe weol hi turnde aboute : þe maide þer bi hi sette.
 Depe wode in hire naked flech : þe rasours kene iwette.³ 144
 þat þo hire flech was al icorue : so depe hi wode *and* gnowe. [Fol. 27.]
 þat þe bones hi to slitte : *and* þe marw out drowe.
 þe marw sprong out al aboute : so ouercome heo was
 þat heo al mest ʒef þen gost : *and* no wonder it nas. 148
 Of al þat me drou hire tender lymes : it ne reu hire noʒt enes sore.
 Ac euer sede þat ihesu crist : þolede uor hire more.
 Glade were þo þe luþer men : þat so nei þe deþe hire seie.
 Ac our louerdes wille nas it noʒt : þat heo scholde þe ʒut deie. 152
 An angel myd a naked swerd : to þe weol aliʒte
And hew it al to smale peces : þer was godes miʒte.
And þis maide eode norþ al hol : as hire noþing nere.
 Sore dradde þis luþer men : þat þere aboute were. 156
 Our lord crist can so is fon : wen is wille is afere.
 Vif hondred turnde to him : uor þulke miracle þere.
And an hondred wemmen *and* þritti : þer ne bileuede noʒt on.
 þat þis luþer men in þe place : ne let biheuedi echon. 160
 Toward þis maide þe Justice ; uor wrapþe was nei wod.
 He let make of wode *and* col : a strong fur *and* good.
 Amydde he let þis maide caste : uor heo frobrenne scholde.
 Hi wende hire to sle anon : ac our lord it nolde. 164
 An angel þer com *and* þis fur : to spradde wide *and* drouʒ.
 Amydde þe place þe maide stod : harmles *and* glad Inouʒ.
 Heo þonkede god *and* sat akne : *and* hire orison sede.
 þe Justice sede wat scholle we do : wat schal ous to rede. 168

¹ Softer.² Fellies.³ Whetted.

- We ne scholle þis foule wiche : ouercome wiþ no dede.
 ʒif no fur ne mai hire brenne : in led we scholle hire brede.
 A chetel he sette ouer þe fur : and fulde it uol of lede.
 þis maide isei þis led boili : heo nas noþing in drede. 172
 Anon so heo was þer Inne ido : þat fur bigan to sprede.
 Fram þe chetel it hupte aboute : in lengþe and in brede.
 Sixti men and seuentene : it barnde in þe place.
 Of luþer men þat stode þer bi : þer was godes grace. 176
 Amydde þe chetel þis maide stod : al hol wiþþoute harm.
 þat led þat bolynde was : vnneþe it þoʒte hire warm.
 þe Justice bigan to wepe and crie : þo he þis isei
 Vor is men uorbarnd were : witles he was nei. 180
 Wat doþ ʒe he sede myne godes : is ʒoure miʒte ʒou bynome
 Schal a womman wiþ hire wichinge : ous alle ouercome.
 [Fol. 27b.] Helpeð¹ me nou ʒif ʒe mowe : þat we ne be brogt to scame.
 Heo ne schal me wraþþi þus nammore : Ichulle pleie anoþer
 game. 184
 Com uorþ he sede my manquellare : led þis hore fram me.
 And smyt of hire heued wiþþoute þe toun : þat ich neuereft hire ise.
 Glad was þis holi maide : þo heo wuste hire ende.
 Vor heo wuste after hire tormentes : wider heo scholde wende. 188
 Heo þonkede uaste Ihesu crist : þat after hire wolde sende.
 Go swiþe heo sede to þe quellare : and bring me of þis bende.
 As me ladde þis holi maide : toward hire martirdom.
 Belial þis foule deuel : wel glad bihynde com. 192
 Ne spareþ noʒt he sede ac heieþ uaste : þat heo of dawe be.
 Nabbeþ of hire nammore reuþe : þen heo hadde of me.
 Nolde heo noþing spare me : of al þat ich hire bad.
 Vnneþe ich dar on hire loke : so sore icham adrad. 196
 þo þis maide hurde þis : hire eien up heo caste.
 A out out þe deuel sede : holdeþ hire nou uaste.
 Leste heo efsone cacche me : and þat me vuel bitidde.
 Fle ichulle þe wule : ich mai : doþ þat ich ʒou bidde. 200
 Ac þei heo him hadde icauʒt : and ileid as elene.
 In as uair bed as heo dude er : dait þat him wolde bymene.²

¹ MS. Helped.² Bemoan.

þo heo com to þulke stude : as heo scholde biheded be.
 To our lord heo made hire orison : *and* sat adoun akne.
 þe quellare as heo bed hire beden : adrouȝ is swerd wel kene.
 He smot of hire heued fram þe bodi : þat it uel in þe grene.
 Angles were ȝare anon : hire soule uorte auonge.
 þus heo boȝte þe blisse of heuene : wiȝ tormentes stronge. 208
 Hire bodi hi lette ligge : hi nolde it burie noȝt.
 Vor bestes it scholde todrawe : *and* þat was hore þoȝt.
 A good womman þat het sophie : wonede þer biside.
 Burie heo þoȝte þat holi bodi : wat so hire scholde bitide. 212
 Vor þer nere none cristenemen : lede heo it þoȝte to rome.
 Al bi scipe to burie it þere : ac þo hi in to þe scipe come.
 þe wynd com *and* drof hor scip : in to anoþer londe.
 In to þe londe of campanye : *and* þer it gan at stonde. 216
 þo hi ne miȝte hor scip þanne bringe : hi nome þoru godes grace.
And burede þis bodi in þe se : in a wel uaire place.
 þer it is ȝut uaire honoured : ac þo þe tiding was icome.
 To þe Justice þat þis bodi was : aweil ilad *and* ynome. 220
 He nom wiȝ him uoure *and* þritti men : *and* afterward he gan [Fol. 23.]
 wende.
 ȝif he miȝte þis bodi of take : more he þoȝte it scende.
 Amidde þe se þer com a wynd : as it were uor þe none.
And caste hor scip vp to doun : *and* adreynte hem euerichone. 224
 þe Justice wreche bodi seȝþe : þe se to londe caste.
And bestes *and* foweles it to drowe : þe wile þer apece ilaste.
 þo hadde he is owe dom : þat he wolde þe maide scende.
 þus Seyn Julian þe holi maide : hir lif broȝte to ende. 228

87
 got to place
 - þus
 - bow -
 204
 Angles the
 soule

left do
 - burie
 - heart
 - cold
 212
 Sophie

216
 Camp
 - uaire
 - in se

Justice
 heart
 - take
 to
 - want

- draw
 - bodie
 - hand
 - torn
 228
 apart by

abrupt ending

Here Eulianus part lines down.



GLOSSARY.

- Adet, p. 51 = Oþ þæt.
- As, p. 81 = Ærce, gen. -an, f.
- Anal, p. 33 = *French* Avale; raper þan Arell not in dict.
- Axtreo, p. 57, *axletree*.
- Beali, p. 73 = þæt bealuwe.
- Berde, p. 53, from Bere, a *voice*, in Owl, 7 N; in Laȝamon; in Blooms; in G. Douglas. Also Holy Rood, Index. Iberde, *behaved* = Gebærde, Bed. 600, 32
- Bisteaðet, p. 31, gl. to S. Marh.
- Biwihelin, p. 57. See gl. to S. Marh, on Fiken.
- Buc, p. 71, *trunk*. Fals. Dis. MS. p. 159.
- Budeles, p. 17 = Byðelar.
- Buste, p. 24, *baste*?
- Cheping, p. 52; p. 84, l. 130.
- Ceaping, *market*. On p. 53. B. text is faulty.
- Cnawes, p. 55.
- Crechen, p. 35.
- Dai, Dait, p. 85, l. 134; l. 202. "Dehait, Dehé, Dehez, imprécation, qui a la même signification que le Væ! des Latins." Roquefort.
- Dahene, p. 31. Daȝena, a well sustained form.
- Diche, p. 73, a slip of þe pen, without sense.
- Erndi, p. 78. Æpendian.
- Fischal, p. 59. Yarrells Fishes I. p. 350.
- Ga o grene, p. 73: ambiguous.
- Gal, p. 83, l. 84: ȝal a subst. on which is built Galfull.
- Gencling, p. 56. s. ȝuhelung.
- Godes, p. 47. *of good* (in respect of) as in Greek and Latin: so Beaduweorca beteran. Chron. 937.
- ȝuhelung, p. 57, *magnificence*. In his Psalter, Ps. lxxvii. 37, Spelman has printed as gloss on *Magnificentia*, Gennelung; þis is a word of anomalous form, destitute of kið and kin. Graff gives ur Guol, *insignis*, Guollih, *gloriosus*, Guollihi, *gloria*, Guollihheit, *gloria*, Guollichon, *gloriari*; and þese glosses enable us to correct Spelman, and read Geuuelung, *magnificentia*: which makes it plain þat Mr. Brock should have read Geueling on p. 56.
- ȝetede, p. 7. See gl. to Laȝamon.
- Hap, p. 61.
- Heascede, p. 5: from, I presume, Husc; to say for Eascede would involve a figure of speech not prettily named.
- Her on uuen, p. 53, an error of þe penman for Heonne, as in R.
- Hire ane, p. 31. Scottish "Her lane."

- Hutung. Huting, p. 53.
 Ilatet, p. 33, perhaps of þe lions,
visaged, from Lates, *looks*.
 Iburst, p. 69. from Буѣт, *bristle*.
 Inune, p. 5. I read as Imane =
 gemæne.
 Iswechte, p. 2, I read as ȝe-
 rpenct.
 Kenchinde, in gl. to Hali M. read
risus excussus.
 Leirwite, in Higden ed. Gale, p.
 202, is *emenda pro corruptione*
natiuæ, it is þefore an apokate
 pate form of Foprlizeppite,
punishment for unchaste deeds.
 Hence corr. gl. H. M.
 Leoten, p. 22, p. 75, *esteem*, pr.
 Lette. Lazam. 22753.
 Leoten, p. 75, *abandon*. Lætan.
 Lihan, p. 3; p. 29 ft.; 37, *dis-*
appoint. In Lyes dict. Leogan.
 —luker, p. 71. See Hali M., p.
 25, l. 19; St. Marh., p. 23, l. 11;
 H. M. p. 41, l. 32.
 Lut, p. 77, *few*. Hali M., p. 19,
 l. 6.
 Makelese, seems *immaculate*, raþer
 þan *matchless* in St. Marh., p. 17,
 l. 16.
 Nabich, p. 28 = Ne habbe ic.
 Nam, p. 29 = Ne am = Ne eom.
 Nestfalde, p. 33.
 None, p. 86, l. 223.
 Nunan, p. 73 = Nu anan.
 Oþer, p. 27. Read Oþe, as p. 26,
 On þe: þære is out of place.
 Postles, p. 57.
 Prisun, p. 84, *prisoner*, so Wooing
 o. O. L., fol. 128, c.
- Rawen, p. 21. See Somners
 glossary: from "D."
 Se, pp. 31, 33. *so*, exaggerative.
 Moyses ferst in his lawe told
 A chyld þer xuld be born so bold
 To beþe aȝyn þat Adam sold.
 Sleatten, p. 53, *slot, let loose, laid*
on track. Þe subst. occ. Chron.
 1087, *granted þe riht to lay dogs*
on. Earles ed. p. 225 top.
 Anoþer use takes an account of
 þe game. Man þleatte þa
 ænne þearp þerþinga þær-
 ute. M. H., fol. 62, b. þe
people worried wiþ dogs a bull,
 Of bole slatyng. Alysaundre,
 200. So Halliwell in Slate
 from Yorkshire.
 Spurede, p. 59, *spurred*. MID
 rpunum, G. D., 5, b. *wiþ spurs*.
 Steorue, p. 49, gl. to St. Marh.
 Studgi, *studge*, gl. to St. Marh.
 Stutten, p. 51, gl. to St. Marh.
 Tendrin, p. 29, seems to come from
 Týndre, *tinder*, and Tenðan.
 Top, pp. 29, 71, applied here to
 þe topknot of hair.
 Unrudelic, p. 55 = Ungeþæðlice.
 Wei, p. 21, *Væ!* Wei la! wei,
wellaway, whence *Wail*. But
 Text R. is more acceptable.
 Wicche, p. 41, *magus*.
 Windi, p. 11, related to Windan
 in Ætþindan, and so forð.
 þin anes help, p. 31, *tuum ipsius*
auxilium.
 þen anes, p. 71, þe *nonce*, as spell-
 ing goes now.

CORRECTIONS.

Pp. 2, 3, titles, *read* liflade.

P. 9, line 5, *read* bižeted.

P. 53, line 12; p. 57, line 6, *read* milzfule, milzful, *for* miltsfule, miltsful.

P. 63, version line 3, *correct as opposite*.

P. 75, line 15, *uppart error of penman for* uppaṣṭ, *upwart*.



1

Generydes.

A ROMANCE IN SEVEN-LINE STANZAS.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

III

Generydes,

A ROMANCE IN SEVEN-LINE STANZAS.



EDITED FROM
THE UNIQUE PAPER MS. IN TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE
(ABOUT 1440 A.D.),

BY
W. ALDIS WRIGHT, ESQ., M.A.,
HONORARY FELLOW AND BURSAR OF TRINITY COLL., CAMBRIDGE,
EDITOR OF 'BACON'S ESSAYS,' 'THE BIBLE WORDBOOK,' ETC.; JOINT EDITOR OF THE
'CAMBRIDGE SHAKSPERE,' ETC.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXVIII.

55 & 70

CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS, BUNGAY.

P R E F A C E.

THE present version of the story of Generydes is printed from a MS. in the Library of Trinity College, Cambridge, where it forms part of the Gale collection, and is marked O. 5. 2. From the fact that in the same volume are Lidgate's *Siege of Troy* and his *Siege of Thebes*, the whole volume was catalogued as *Lidgate's Poems*, and consequently the existence of an entirely unknown poem was not suspected. When Mr. Furnivall was engaged upon his edition of the Helmingham MS. of *Syr Generides* for the Roxburghe Club in 1866, my attention was directed to some printed fragments of another version of the story in seven-line stanzas which had been discovered by Mr. Bradshaw in the binding of an old volume in our Library, Michaelis Menoti *Sermones Quadragesimales*, Paris, 1525; a volume which had formerly belonged to Edmund Castell, the well-known Oriental scholar. After copying these for Mr. Furnivall, I found some other fragments of the same version among the papers of Sir John Fenn, the editor of the *Paston Letters*, which were in the possession of Mr. Philip Frere of Dungate, who had inherited them from his father, Sergeant Frere, the nephew and adopted son of Lady Fenn. These also I transcribed and forwarded to Mr. Furnivall, and a week later, accidentally opening the volume of *Lidgate's Poems* among the Gale MSS., my eye was attracted by the name 'Generydes,' and to my great satisfaction upon further examination I discovered that the MS. contained all but one leaf of the seven-line stanza version. It is a large folio, measuring $17\frac{1}{4}$ inches by 12, vellum, and was written about the middle of the 15th century. No inference can be drawn from the fact that it is bound up with Lidgate's *Sieges of Troy and Thebes*, for it appears, upon closely examining it, to have been originally in a volume by itself, or to have formed a part of

another volume. The evidence of this is that the edges of the book are adorned with coats of arms, but these ornaments do not extend over the portion occupied by the story of Generydes, which was therefore, in all probability, originally distinct. At the end of the *Siege of Troy* occurs the signature 'Antonius Thwaites me possidet,' and at the end of the volume 'Henry Thwayts' and 'Henry Thwaites.' Anthony Thwaites may have been the son or descendant of John Thwaites of Hardingham, Norfolk, who married Anne, daughter of Sir William Knevet, and died 22 Henry VII., leaving a son Anthony (Blomefield's *Norfolk*, v. 1198, folio ed.). The book has evidently been in the Thwaites and Knevet families, for their arms are found in various combinations on the margins; and as the Thwaites arms do not appear in the first part, which contains the story of Generydes, whereas the Knevet arms are of frequent occurrence, it is possible that this may have belonged originally to the Knevet family, and may have been bound up with the Lidgate portion after the above-mentioned marriage of John Thwaites with Anne Knevet. The other coats of arms I have been unable to trace with any certainty. To do so would involve a minute and curious, but certainly lengthy investigation, and is altogether foreign to the purpose of this preface. As a further proof that the Generydes portion of the volume was originally distinct from the rest, I may add that the signatures of the quires, which, except the last, consist of eight leaves, are quite separate from those of the quires that follow, which evidently began a volume. Of the Generydes part there were originally 38 leaves, but one of these has been cut out, leaving a gap of 187 lines in the MS. after l. 4619. There are two columns in a page and an average of 45 lines in a column. The handwriting is very like that of the *Siege of Troy* and the *Siege of Thebes*, which follow, and all may have been the work of the same scribe.

The questions of the authorship of the English version and the source of the story are as obscure now as they were when Mr. Furnivall's edition of the other text appeared. I have applied to both M. Gaston Paris, and M. Paul Meyer, but neither of them has met with any French version of the story. It must have been sufficiently popular to have been twice translated into English, and

possibly may still be lying hid in some unexpected quarter. The disappearance of the original is scarcely more remarkable than the almost as complete disappearance of the printed edition, of which only a few mutilated fragments are known to exist. These, in all probability, belong to that which was licensed to Thomas Purfoote, as appears by the Registers of the Stationers' Company for the year 22 July, 1568—22 July, 1569, where the following entry occurs (*Arber's Reprint*, i. 389) :—

purfoote Recevyd of thomas purfoote for his lycense for pryntinge
of a boke intituled *GENERYDES* iiiij^d

From the poem itself we get no clue as to the original. The translator, to eke out his verse, occasionally introduces such phrases as 'the story tellith it me' (651), 'Mynne Auctour seith' (686), 'myn Auctour tellith me' (967), 'as the writeng seyth' (1081), 'myn Auctour doth wisse' (1166), 'the story doth wisse' (1348), 'the Story tellith me' (1648), 'the story makith mynde' (2131), 'I me reporte onto the letterys blake' (4526), 'as my Auctor doth write' (6002), 'in the story leke as I do fynde' (6732); but he tells us no more. In the Roxburghe Club version there is a French original spoken of, and a Latin translation from it by a clerk at Hertford, but here the information ends.

'Now of a geste that was sum tyme,
That was radde in frensh ryme :
A clerk itt in to latyn tooke
Att hertford out of a booke,
There in latin was it wretin,
As clerkes wele knowen and weteñ.'

In order that those who read the story may not be interrupted by the gap which occurs in consequence of the loss of a leaf from the MS., I give in brief the missing portion from the other version.

After the slaughter of Sir Yuell, Generydes makes his way to the ship in company with Clarionas and the lavender, and reaches Persia in safety, where they are welcomed by the Sultan, who makes a great feast in honour of their return. After the first course had been served, appear three messengers from Auferius to the Sultan, begging him to send his son Generydes to assist him in recovering his lost kingdom

of India from Sir Amelok. The Sultan, who now hears for the first time that Generydes is a king's son, offers him half Persia and his daughter Clarionas in marriage. Generydes in return asks for a hundred knights, that he may win his father's heritage, and desires that his marriage with Clarionas may be put off till he comes back as a conqueror and can make her Queen of India. The Sultan grants his request, and allows Darel and those who were knighted with Generydes to accompany him. But when the plan was communicated to Clarionas she was filled with dismay.

The story then goes on as in the text.

I have in almost all cases printed the MS. as it is written, except where there was an obvious error destructive to the sense of a passage. In such instances I have sometimes corrected the text, putting the MS. reading at the foot of the page, and sometimes have introduced the correction in the Glossary. But I have not always attempted to fill up the defective or correct the irregular lines, and have sometimes left the reader to amend the text for himself. Professor Zupitza, in the first volume of *Anglia*, pp. 481—483, has printed some conjectural emendations, some of which I had already made in the margin of my own copy. They are included in the following list of correction :—

In 34 after *pite* insert *was*. In 39 for *lesse* read *lest*, as Professor Zupitza suggests. In 146 for *sothe* read *soche*. In 307 for *also* read *al so*. In 308 Professor Zupitza conjectures that we should read *preyse* for *plese*. In 335 omit *be*. In 414 omit *to*. In 454 for *hem* read *me*, as Zupitza suggests, where the MS. has *he*. In 601 for *fourth* read *fourth with*. In 707 for *renew* read *remew = remeve*. In 864 the MS. has *tell vs att it is*, for which I originally conjectured *telle what it is*, or *telle all as it is*. I now think the true reading is *telle it as it is*. Zupitza conjectures *as att (= that) it is*; but when *at* or *att* in this poem is used as a relative it is always preceded by 'that.' See 347, 591, 4388. In 1042 for *send* read *sendeth*. In 1163 the reference to the foot-note is omitted before *Ayre*. Omit full-stop at end of 1190. In 1330 for *obeyed* read *obeye*. In 1383 after *all* insert *that*, and omit *that* in 1386. In 1446 omit the second *he*. In 1455 Zupitza conjectures *wrought* for *sought*. In

1460 Zupitza suggests that *Anasere* should be printed instead of *Anasore*, because it is made to rhyme with *prisonere* and *ther*. Perhaps he is right, though in another passage, 2061, I had changed *ther* to *thore* for the sake of the rhyme, as the form *thore* occurs in 3394, 4316. The same correction would apply to 1725 (MS. *Anasare*), 2059, 2592, 2858, to which may be added 5575. In the present text, however, the forms of the name vary between *Anasore* and *Anasare*, while in the Roxburghe Club version we find *Anazaree* and *Anazare*, and I do not feel certain that after all the instances noticed by Zupitza may not be cases of imperfect rhymes. In the various readings given from the printed fragments at p. 224 it will be seen that in 2059 the printed text has *Anazere*, but then in the next line the reading is altered to *that there were*. To proceed with the correction of the text: in 1556 omit *hoole*. In 1633 Zupitza conjectures *ye rebuke* for *he rebukith*; perhaps the single change of *he* to *ye* would be sufficient. In 1765 put a comma at the end of the line. In 2130 read *traytourly*. In 2481, 2482 something is wrong. Zupitza proposes to omit *That* in the first line. I would suggest the insertion of *it ranne* after *bak* in the second. See 2678. In side-note against 2524 for *Moutenor* read *Mountoner*. In 2576 the MS. has *hyn*, which I have corrected to *hym*, a form of *hem* which occurs more than once in the poem. Zupitza suggests *hem*. In 2682 *without moo* should not be between inverted commas. See Zupitza's note on Guy of Warwick, 719. In 2831 for *man of age* we should probably read *maner age*. In the side-note opposite 3018 for p. 60 read p. 69. In 3087 Zupitza suggests *left* for *lost*. In 3125 there is a corruption. We should probably read *Thus* for *This*, and the next word may be read *towardly* in the MS. In 3246 for *on* read *on to*. In 3297 for *to fight* read *for to fight*. In 3347 for *his* read *he his*; but there is still a corruption in the passage, as is seen from the faulty rhyme. Perhaps we should read *whanne he him understode*. In 3392 for *knew* read *knew how*. In 3412 for *take* read *to take*. In 3414 after *councell* insert *the*; and in 3416 after *sone* insert *be made*, as Zupitza suggests. In 3570 for *specially* read *speciall*. In 3635 for *swiff* read *swift*. In 3695, 3696 transfer the comma from

voyse to courte. The number of leaf 20 should be opposite 3712. In 3761 for *said* read *saide*, as MS. In 3780 omit *Iuell* and the full-stop at the end of the line, and in 3781 insert *ride* after *cowde*. At the end of 3859 omit note of exclamation. In 3921 the MS. has *on on*; perhaps we should read *and on*. In 4069 for *after now* read *now after*. In the marginal note opposite 4201 for *Four* read *A few*. For 2467 read 4267 (p. 136). In 4489 the line should be amended by reading *at all aventure*. In 4702 for *be* read *he*, as MS. In 5333 for *noo* read *non*. In 5628 for *lorde* read *lady*; and in 5651 omit *on* after *lay*. In 5664 omit *mayde*; and in 5705 for *hir* read *his*. In 5718 after *please* insert *it*. In 5821 insert *on* before *apace*. In 5858 for *ganne yei fall* read *yei fill*. In 5894 omit *ought*. In 6029 for *thorough* read *thorough out*. In 6087 for *euerychone* read *euerych*; and insert *so* before *stronge* in 6091. In 6195 for *them* read *hym*. In 6271 the metre may be amended by reading *Ther to Abide to tyme, &c.* In 6296, 6297 there is some corruption, probably due to the omission of some lines. At the end of 6443 omit comma. In 6569 for *swounyng* read *swoune*. On p. 211, l. 9614 should be 6614; and in the following line *non* should be inserted after *of*. In 6619 insert *the* before *tideng*. In 6640 for *place* read *pales* = palace. In 6693 for *in* read *in to*. In 6718 insert *was glad* or *was fayn* before *of*. There is a corruption in 6821, but I do not see my way to a restoration of the text. In 6966 read, for the sake of the metre, *All as myn Auctour doth reherse*. In the marginal note, 3435, for *untrew* read *untrue*; and add ERBYS, *sb.* herbs, 6821, to the Glossary.

Besides these there may be many others, but they are not such as to cause a reader any difficulty, and the remedy is generally very obvious.

The Glossary will, I trust, be found fairly complete.

W. A. W.

Trinity College, Cambridge.

December 7, 1878.

G E N E R Y D E S.

In olde Romans and storys as I rede, Of Inde Somtyme ther was a nobyH kyng, IentiH, curteys, fuH trew in worde and dede, Wyse and manly preuyd in euery thyng, To his people fuH good and eke lovyng, Mighty and ryche, a mañ of nobyH fame, And Auferius this was the kynges name.	1 [leaf 1] Auferius, king of India, 4 a man of noble fame, 7
This worthy prince hadde weddyd in serteyne A fayre lady, and comne of nobyH kynne ; And what pleasure he cowde for her ordeyne, That shuld be do, ther was noo lette therin ; In euery thyng he dede hyr loue to wynne, He hadde nomore to lese and that he knewe, ffor afterward she was to hyñ vntrewe.	8 married a fair lady, Serenydes, daughter to the king of Africa, 11 14 who was unfaithful to him.
Hire fader was a mañ of grete powre, And kyng of aufrike as I vnderstonde, his doughter quene of Inde as ye shall here, kepyng right grete estate withynne the lande, And aH the reme obeyed to hyr hande ; And of hyr name to telle withoutyñ lese, The story seyth she hight Serenydes.	15 18 21
This kyng of ynd, of whom I spake before, hadde a Styward a mañ of grete renown, he gouernyd the contre bothe lesse and more, Also he hadde the Rule of euery towne, And namely tho that longyd to the crowne : him for to plese the pepiH were fuH fayne, And ser amelok his name was for sertayne.	22 25 His Steward, Sir Amelok, who governed the country, 28

- was very intimate
with her. Not long after ther felle suche aqueyntaunce 29
Betwix the Quene and hym, that allway stiff
hire mynde, hyr thought, was sette to his plesaunce,
All his desire hooly for to fulfil, 32
And whenne he lyst she was aȝ atte his wille ;
Gret pite that she in suche a wyse
Shuld sette hyr wurchippe atte so litiȝ prise. 35
- One day the king, Vppoñ a day the kyng^a for his disporte 36
An hūntyng^a went onto a fayre forest,
with four or five
attendants, Whanne he was sadde to putte hym in coumfort,
he lefte his meñ at home bothe most and lesse, 39
Save iiij or v suche as hym semyd best,
And forth he gothe ther as the hartys hye,
rode a hunting
into a fair forest, his houndys were oncopelyd by and by. 42
- An hert was fownde among the holtys hye, 43
And vppe vppoñ his fete he was a noñ ;
The houndys went after with a mery crye,
The kyng rode after aȝ hym self alone, 46
Tyȝ he hadde lost his knyghtes euerychone,
and was
separated from
his companions. The houndes and the hert that was be fore,
Withynne a while they harde of theñ nomore. 49
- So rode he fourth as noo thyngge he rouȝt, 50
hys game was lost, his knyghtes forþe be hynde,
And specially on them was aȝ his thought,
For houghe they were he wyste not theñ to fynde, 53
Thus rydith he sore trobelyd in his mynde ;
The day was gone, wherefore right hertely
To god he prayd to send hym some remedy. 56
- but rode on
till he came to
a road which
led to a house, And, As god wold, hym happyd in a waye, 57
Whiche brought hym streyte to a goodly place ;
And as his goodis is redy to purvaye

- ffor good people in euery nedefuH case, 60
 With that counfort he rode a better pase,
 And whenne that he was come nygh hande *therate*, when a fair maiden opened
 A fayre mayde ther openyd hym the gate. 63 the gate
- She seid he was welcome to that ostage, 64 and welcomed
 There were nomore but she and other twayn), him.
 One of them was a man) right ferre in age, She and her mail
 The toder was hyr mayden) in *sertayne*, 67 and an old man
 To make hym chere they dede ther besy payn), were the only
 To hyr chaunbyr she brought hym) verily, and she
 Whiche was arayed right wele and richely. 70 brought him
 to her chamber,
- In that chaunber ther was an hanged bedde, 71 where was a
 Of sylk and gold fuH curyously wrought, bed with curious
 And ther vppon) a shete of launde was spredde, hangings.
 As clenly dressed as it cowde be thought : 74
 ‘And nowe,’ *quod* she, ‘that ye be hedyr brought,
 Yow to counfort is holy myn entente,
 This howse is aH atte your comaundement.’ 77
- Anone vppon) as she these wordis saide, 78
 Ther come an hert in att the chaunber dore
 AH embosed ; the kyng^t was sore dismayede,
 Semyng^t to hym), as it passid in the flore, 81
 It was the same he chased in the more ;
 This is, thought he, for me some *maner* trayne,
 And ther with [aH] she seyde to hym) ageyn) : 84
 which the king
 thought was the
 same he had
 chased.
- ‘Be not a ferde of this sodeyn) aventur ; 85
 It is for no harme, it is aH for your beste,
 This old fader he knowit very sure,
 Of vij Saugys callid the wysest 88
 That was in Rome, but *ther* he mygh^t not rest,
 ffuH wekydly he and his vj felawes
 In to the see were cast among the wawis. 91
 as the old man
 knows, who is
 the wisest of the
 7 Sages of Rome.

- When he was
cast adrift with
his fellows,
he was thrown
on the coasts
of Syria, where
my father is king,
92
And as the grace of god it wold ordeyne,
In Surre was this goodman cast a lande,
Where my fader is kyng¹ and souerayne,
Seke and very ye may wele vnderstonde ; 95
And whanne that he was founde on the sand,
he sent for hym to come and not to fayle,
And whenne he came was made chefe of his counceH.
- and became the
chief of his
council.
- He sayde the land of Surry shuld be lost 99
By a Gyaunte, and aH for love of me ;
Wherefore be his avyse in to this cost
I am come here, in lyke wyse as ye see ; 102
And forthermore I praye yow take in gre,
That I shaH in your presence declare,
As fortune wiff for youre ease and welefare. 105
- By his advice
I was sent here,
and I pray you
now pardon me
for what I
shall say,
[leaf 1, back]
- And in this case to telle the mater playne, 106
Of very trougth and make no more delayes,
This nyght *ther* shaH be goten betwix vs twayne
A child that shaH do mervelys in his dayes, 109
And moche a do he shaH haue many wayes
With grete *traveH*, and aH eskape right wele,
This old fader canne teH this euery dele. 112
- for to-night
a child shall
be begotten
between us
that shall do
wonders.
- For this cause
the hart led you
hither.
- Only for this, and for noH other thyng, 113
The hert that ye haue chased aH this daye,
he was trewly the cause of your' comyng',
And to this place he gidyd yow the weye ;¹ 116
This is the very trougth as I yow saye,
Yet most ye knowe a thyng that is be hynd,
Touchyng the quene, whiche is to yow vnkynd 119
- Yet you must
know that the
queen is untrue
to you,
- And vtterly ontrew in euery thyng ; 120
She and the Stiward bothe of on assent,
With ther sotilte and false Imageninge,

¹ MS. *wefe*.

- Yow to distroye that is ther hoole entente, 123 and with the
ffor she is hoole at his commaund[e]ment ; Steward has
And aH to do yow hurte and hynderaunce, plotted your
Whiche afterward shalbe to *your* plesaunce.' 126 death.'
- For these tidynges the kyng abasshid sore, 127 The king was
But ayenward whanne he thought on that mayde sore abashed,
Anone his cher amendid more and more,
Remembryng^t the wordis that she sayde 130
Of his abideng^t ther ; thenne he hyr prayed and asked to
To late hym^w wete the very certente, know the real
And she answerd ayen^w that myght not be. 133 cause of his
being there,
- 'This old fader that is my felaw here, 134 but she said
he canne telle that as wele as eny wight.' the old man
The kyng^t hast[ed] to here of this mater', could tell him,
And prayed that man^w that he wold telle hym^w right.
he answered hym^w and saide, 'as for that nyght
Go to your rest, for that is my counceH, and this he
To morow shaH ye knowe withoute fayle.' 140 promised to do
next day.
- Anoñ vpon^w ther soper^t was redy, 141
She *seruyd* hym^w, in¹ like wyse as hym^w ought,
And euery thing Accordeng^t by and by, At supper the
For his plesur^t trowly ther lakkyd noght, 144 lady waited
With aH deyntes trevly as cowde be thought ; upon him, and
Hyre chere, hyr porte, it was in sothe awyse,
That more goodly that cowde nomañ devise. 147
- After soper, withynne a litilH space 148
She brought hym^w to his bedde with torche light,
And eyther stode so wele in otheris grace,
That she with hym^w layde in armys right ; 151
And what plesure they hadde as for y^t nyght,
Peraventure fuH good, who so it wist,
I canne not saye, deme ye as ye list. 154

¹ MS. *and in.*

- But how that eu^{er} it was be twix them) thwayne, 155
- It so happened
that a child
was begotten,
It happith, so the writeng^t doth^t expresse,
That nyght ther was a child goten) certeyn);
After his hunteng^t and his besynesse, 158
ffor his traveH and his grete werynes
after which the
king fell asleep,
but the lady
lay awake
sighing,
he felle a slepe, and for to saye yow more
She slepyd not, but lay and syghid sore. 161
- With hyr syghenyng^t a non) with AH she wept, 162
- And on his armys dede the terys falle,
That thorough his shirte he felt it as he slept ;
Right sodenly he brayded and wooke with AH, 165
And curtesly on hyr he beganne to calle,
saying he feared
she repented of
his coming.
'I drede me sore,' quod he, 'in myn) entente
That of my comyng heder ye repente.' 168
- 'Nay,' said she,
'but my sorrow
is for your
departing.'
'Repente,' quod she, 'nay, nay, I yow ensure, 169
Your' departeng^t is cause of aH my smerte,
Only for that I do this payne endure,
ffor I shaH lose the plesur' of myn) hert, 172
And aH my Ioye, I may it not asterte,
Withoute socour' or helpe O warentice,
My disteyney hath shape it in this wyse.' 175
- 'Fair lady,' he
said, 'I hope
we shall not
part so soon,
'My fayre lady,' quod he to here Ageyne,¹ 176
'I haue good hoope we shaH not parte so sone,
And if we do, I seye yow certeyn)
My chefe counfort is aH to geder doon); 179
To morow shaH we wete or it be none,
but to-morrow
the old man will
tell us.'
This old fader that ye kepe with you here,
he shaH telle vs the trougth of this mater.' 182
- When) it was day and it was tyme to rise, 183
This old fader on to the kyng^t he goth,
And whanne he cam) he spak in this wise ;

¹ MS. *Aveyne*.

- ‘That I shaſſ ſey, leve me withoute othe, 186 At daybreak the
 This nyght is geteñ a ſone betwix yow both, old man
 Whiche ſhalbe ſuche, myn̄ auctour doti expreſſe, told him that he
 That aſſ contres ſhaſſ ſpeke of his prowesſe. 189 must leave,
- Here may ye a byde no lenger in this place, 190
 ffor very trougth for cauſes more thanne oñ ;
 But of your’ ſhirt I muſt telle yow the cauſe, and that the
 Vppon̄ the whiche hir terys feſt vppon̄ : 193 tear-stained ſhirt
 Ther ſhaſſ non̄ waſſh̄ them̄ owt but ſhe alone, could only be
 Not be no maner of craft, take this of me, washed by the
 But ſhe ſette handes therto it wiſſ not be. 196 lady herſelf.
- And now to yow, madame, thus I ſaye ; 197 The lady he
 Yow muſt departe, and I ſhaſſ telle yow whye, warned to return
 The kyng youre fader is right ſeke this day, to her father,
 And lythe ner’ vppon̄ the poynte to dye ; 200 who was dying.
 And but ye ryde this day right haſtely,
 And leve aparte aſſ other thyngt therefore, [leaf 2]
 Ye are not lyke to ſpeke wiſſ hym̄ nomore.’ 203
- When̄ he ſeid aſſ that he thought to ſeye, 204
 Ther nedid noo diſpleaſur’ to be ſougtht ;
 The kyngt̄ knewe wele ther was non̄ other way,
 They muſt departe, and that was aſſ his thought ; 207
 Thenne were they bothe ſo ferre in ſorow brought,
 Be cauſe of ther’ ſo ſodenly departengt̄,
 They cowde not ſpeke a word for erthely thyngt̄. 210
- He toke his leve in ſorowfuſſ maner, 211 The king took his
 hym for to be holde it was a grete pite ; leave in ſorrow,
 And furthe he rideti wiſſ fuſſ heuy chere,
 Wiſſ his knyghtes to mete and it wold be : 214
 And at the laſt it happyd hyñ to ſee, and in a fair
 Where as they rode in a fuſſ fayre vaile, valley fell in wiſſ
 he ſporyd his hors and theder toke the way. 217 his knights,

- They hym) perseyued sone, and forthe they went, 218
 A none they mette the kynge vpon) the waye,
 who saw that he was sad, he was no thyng^t mery to ther entente,
 That wist they wele yet durst they noo thyng^t seye, 221
 Withynne his brest he kept it day be day ;
 And whanne that he came home, I yow ensure,
 Of his counceit ther wist non) erthely creature. 224
- Now to this lady lete vs turne ageyn, 225
 Whiche to Surry hath take hir viage,
 The lady went her way to Syria with the old man and her maid,
 And in hir companye no mañ but twayn),
 hir mayde and the old man) ferre in age ; 228
 So atte last they come to the village,
 Ther for to rest as for a nyghtis space,
 A dayes Iurney owt of the kynges place. 231
- She Rode to court in grete heynesse, 232
 And furth with aH she came to the kyng^t,
 and came to her father,
 Which was febyH and sokyd with sekenesse ;
 Yet not for thy he hadde trew knowleginge 235
 Of his doughter, and gave hyr his blyssyng^t,
 who gave her his blessing,
 his land, is good, withoute eny stryffe,
 and died, And so to god he passed owt of his lyffe. 238
- There was wepyng^t and many a hevy chere, 239
 Among^t them aH grete sorow ganne they take,
 And as it is the custom) and maner^t,
 Anone they were arrayed in clothis blake ; 242
 And sone¹ vpon) ordenaunce ganne they make,
 and was royally buried.
 In aH the hast posible as for his beryeng^t,
 In RyaH wise accordyng^t to A kyng^t. 245
- This yong^t lady so goodly and so faire, 246
 The lordes aH and the Comyns of the lande,
 Be cause she was his doughter and his ayre,

¹ MS. *sone A.*

- They toke hir for ther quene I vnderstonde, 249 His daughter
And crowned hir with septer in hyr hande ; was crowned
And afterward, as is the right vsage, queen,
The lordys aH to hir dede homage. 252
- She was fuH wele belouyd in certeyne 253 and was well
Of hir lordes and of hir comenaute, beloved,
And of hir name she was callid Sereyne,
fro the first day of hir natiuite, 256 but refused to
fuH humbly they hir be sought that she marry.
Wold be maryed, for that was ther a vise,
But that she wold not in no maner a wyse. 259 Her name was
Sereyne.
- The tyme came that hir wombe be ganne to grow 260 At length, when
Som dele gretter thanne it was wont to be, her womb began
But yet she wold not it hadde beñ knowe ; to grow, she took
here mayde she callid furth in priuite, 263 counsel with her
Meden she hight, the story tellith it me, maid Medeyn,
To whom the quene hadde a right fey[th]fuH trost,
ffor to that mayde she myght sey what here lyst. 266
- And whañ she came, she told here aH the case, 267
lyke as it was of aH here aventur :
'Madame,' quod she, 'I shall with goddes grace
ffuH trewly kepe your counceH be you sure : ' 270 who promised to
be true to her,
So went she fourth hyr seosynne to endure,
TiH atte last, be goddes purvyauce, and so it went on
The tyme was come of hir delyueraunce. 273 till the time of
her delivery
arrived.
- Thenne was ther noñ of counceH saue Medeyn ; 274
Ther was no noyse, nor ther was noo cryeng,
I canne wele thynk the gretter was hir payne ;
her meny hadde noñ other knowleginge, 277
But hir sekenes was of some other thinge :
So this lady, fuH debonerly and myld,
Brought furth a sonne whiche was a threfte child. 280 She brought forth
a son ;

- but none knew
save Medeyn,
who took it to a
lavender to be
brought up. Medeyne it toke and in hir lappe it leyde, 281
She brought it streyght on to a lavender;
'This is sothely my Suster sonne,' she sayde,
'I wold it were kept in good maner.' 284
'Maistres,' seyde she, 'care not for this mater,
I shaH it bere oñ to A good noryse,
Whiche shaH it kepe right wele o warantyce.' 287
- A nurse was
found for the
child, First to a norise, as fast as euer they canne, 288
They brought the child withoute eny lese ;
And thanne to chirch to make a cristenmañ,
who was christ-
ened Generydes. And callid it be name Generydes ; 291
Thenne his moder, after aH hir disese,
Askyd medeyñ if she hadde done wele
And she seid yae, and told hir euery dele. 294
- As soon as he
could speak Whenne the tyme was come that he cowde speke and goo,
And vnderstonde what folkys did hym calle,
the queen sent for
Medeyn to bring
him to court. The quene anoñ, withoute wordes moo,
Callid Medeyñ, and she came furth with aH : 298
'Medeyñ,' quod she, 'my wiH in¹ especialH
Is for to haue my sone Generydes
In courte² with me his honour to encrease.' 301
- [leaf 2, back] To curte he came a pratye yong^r seruaunt, 302
But what he was ther wyst noo creature,
Saue only this that Medeyn was his Aunte,³
He came,
and grew up at
court, And so fourth in courte he dede endure, 305
TiH he was wexen of a goodly stature,
And ther with also IentitH and curteys,
That⁴ aH the countre⁵ right gretely did hym plesse. 308
- till one day he
asked Medeyn of
his father. Vppoñ A day he axkid of Medeyn 309
Of his ffader, and hough is moder was,
She answeyrd hym, and this she sayde ayen),

¹ MS. *is in.* ² MS. *contre.* ³ MS. *Aunte.*

⁴ MS. *Thall.*

⁵ ? *courte.*

- ‘I yow beseche of respite in this case 312
 TiH on) the morow, and thenne with goddes grace
 AH that ye haue desired now of me,
 Sone shaH ye knowe the very serteynte.’ 315
- Of his desire the quene hadde knowleginge, 316
 She sent for hym) and seid, ‘Generydes,
 Of ynde suerly your’ fader is the kyng’,
 And I your moder am withoute lese ; 319
 But ye must kepe this mater husht and pece,
 ffor ther is now) that knoweth it saue we twayne
 In aH the court, but if it be Medeyn).’ 322
- And whenne he knowe this mater very right, 323
 Streyght to the quene he seid for eny thing’;
 Besechyng’ hir of licence that he myght
 Se the courte where his fader is kyng’: 326
 ffor as hym) thought it were right wele semyng’,
 ffor to do hym) seruice as in that case,
 And rather ther thanne in a stranger place. 329
- And he wold so demene hym) furth with aH, 330
 That in the cowntre ther shuld no maner weighth,
 But if it were the kyng’ in especiaH,
 Wete what he¹ were be countenaunce or sight. 333
 The quene Answeryd and seyde, ‘aH is but right
 That ye desire, and therefore be myn) Assent
 Is and shalbe to forder your ente[nt].’ 336
- And furth with aH she callid Natanell,² 337
 A Ientiff mañ right connyng and courteyse ;
 To hym) she told this mater euery dele,
 Of hyr and of hir sonne Generydes, 340
 And who is fader was withouten) lese,
 And how that his desire in eny wise
 Is for to do his fader some seruice. 343

The queen told
 him she was his
 mother, and the
 king of India his
 father.

He begged that
 he might go to
 India to his
 father,

promising to keep
 the secret of his
 birth.

The queen en-
 trusted him to
 the care of
 Natanell,

¹ MS. *I.*

² MS. *Natavell.*

‘Therefore,’ *quod* she, ‘I *prae* yow feithfully, 344
 That ye wiþ do the pleasure that ye may
 Onto my sone, and teche hym throughely
 That att longith to hym to do or saye ; 347
 ffor his expencez and for his aray,
 ffor hors or meñ that maye be for your spede,
 he shaþ not lakke no thyng^t that hym nede. 350

whom she warned
 to beware of the
 Steward,

But be weþ ware that the Stiward knowe not this, 351
 Whiche is ontrewē and hatþ be many a daye ;
 ffor if he may knowe who is sonne he is,
 he wiþ suerly distroye hym and he maye : 354
 Wherefore whanne ye come ther this shaþ ye seye,
 A Dukes sone he is and born in Greke,
 To se the kyng^t and wurchippe for to seke. 357

and to convey a
 ring from her to
 the king.

And whanne ye maye fynd good leyser and spase, 358
 That sekerly ye may speke with the kyng^t,
 Ye shaþ me recomaunde on to his good *grace*
 ffuþ humbly, and take ye hym this ryng^t, 361
 he gave it me atte our last departeng^t ;
 When he it seth it shaþ his thought renewe,
 And suerly knowe that your *massage* is trew.^t 364

Natanel prom-
 ises to obey
 her wishes.

This Ientiþ mañ gave answer¹ in this wise : 365
 ‘Madame,’ *quod* he, ‘my wiþ is and shaþ
 To do your sone pleasure and *seruice*,
 As ye shalbe right wele content withaþ, 368
 With goddes grace and what that euer befaþ,
 Better or werse or what aventure be tyde,
 Ye shaþ wiþ wete I wiþ with hym a byde.’ 371

Furthe on his way Rideth Generydes, 372
 lakkyng^t no thing that cawde be hadde in mynde ;
 And of his labour wuld he neuer sese,

¹ MS. *an answeere.*

TiH he come streygh̄t atte Reme of ynd,	375	They come to India, to the chief city
Thenne <i>forthermore</i> as reasone wold hym bynd,		
Of dyuerse folke he asked where laye the kyng ^t :		
Att parentynne, they seid withoute feyning ^t ,	378	Parentine,
Off aH the land named the chefe Citee :	379	
Then NataneH as sone as euer he mygh̄t,		
The best loggyng ^t of aH that he cowde see,		where Natanel took a lodging,
ffor his maister he dede it redy digh̄t,	382	
And ther he toke his rest as for that nygh̄t,		
And on the morow in good and riche araye,		and on the morrow they went to court.
he went to see the kyng ^t ther as he laye ;	385	
And NataneH with hym in companye.	386	
The kyng ^t was sette and <i>serued</i> in the haH,		The king was in the hall among his lords.
With knygh̄tes and Esquyers throughely,		
In grete astate among the lordes aH ;	389	
Thanne NataneH the porter ^t ganne to calle,		
he came anoñ withoute taryeng ^t ,		
And curtesly gaue them ther welcomyng ^t .	392	
Furthe anoñ in to the halle they ganne goo,	393	
And to the kyng ^t they made Reuerence,		They made their reverence to him,
lyke as it was accordyng ^t for to do.		
Thenne NataneH in opyn audience,	396	
Before his lordes in his hye presence,		
ffuH connyngly in aH his demeanyng ^t ,		
Right in this wise he seide onto the kyng ^t :	399	and Natanel said
‘Rygh̄t noble <i>prince</i> , this Ientilman present	400	
To yow is come ferre out of his contre,		
A dukes sone of Greke born by disente,		that Generydes was the son of a duke of Greece,
here in your ^t court desireng ^t fór to be,	403	
To lerne connyng ^t and wurchippe for to see :		[leaf 3]
The Duke his ffader wold he shuld do so,		who desired to be in the king's court.
And be right gladde ye leste excepte hym so.’	406	

- When he hadde seid and made his Reuerence, 407
 The kyng^t anon thanne answeyrd to NataneH,
 And seid he was welcome to his presence,
 Be holding^t wele his face and euerydele ; 410
 Thenne that lady that harboryd hym so wele
 ffeH in his mend, and thought be his visage
 he was fuH lyke to be of hire lenage. 413
- He loked fast oñ to hym in stede fast wise, 414
 And thought alway his sonne that he shuld be :
 Whenne mete was do the kyng^t be ganne to ryse,
 To nataneH his maister thanne saide he :¹ 417
 ‘ This yong^t Esquyer is righ^t welcome to me ;
 he shaH lak noghit, I say yow for certeyn ;’
 And he righ^t lowly thanked hym ageyn. 420
- They hadde mantellys and aH of on^d makyng^t, 421
 Whiche were right sone departed bothe in fere ;
 Generydes withoute taryeng^t
 Gaue his mantiH on to the Boteler^t, 424
 Thenne Natanell, in righ^t curtes maner^t,
 To the porter he gaue that was his owne,
 In thankfuH wise the better to be knowen. 427
- Thus in the courte dwellid Generydes, 428
 Right wele belouyd of euery creature,
 So weH wexen that he was doutelys
 A very goodly man, I you ensure : 431
 With good vesage, fuH metely of stature,
 his porte, his chere, and all his behavinge
 ffuH like a Ientilman in euery thyng^t. 434
- It happyd so withynne a litiH space, 435
 The kyng^t a lone went in [a] Galery ;
 Thanne NataneH aspied where he was,

After a time,
 as the king was
 alone in a gallery,

¹ MS. *he saide.*

- And to the kyng^t he went trewly, 438
 To late hym^w wete his erand by and by,
 lyke as he was comaunded for to sey,
 And thus he seid withoute more delay : 441
- ‘Syr, if I durst be bold as in this case, 442
 My message wold I say, if it yow please,
 The quene Sereyne commandith hir to *your grace*,
 And sent yow here your’ sonne Generydes : 445
 Be cause ye sha^{ll} think it is noo lese,
 She chargyd me to take yow this ring^t,
 Ye gaue it hir atte your bothe departyng^t.’ 448
- The kyng^t toke gode awise vppon^w the reng^t, 449
 It was his owyn^w, and that anon^w he knowe ;
 To Natane^{ll} he seid withoute feyni[n]g^t,
 ‘Gramercy, frend, for your massage is trew, 452
 Ye haue brought hym^w that doth my ioye renew ;
 Whanne he come first hem¹ thought it shuld be he,
 Wherefore I *prae* yow bryng^t hym^w on^w to me.’ 455
- Thanne furth^w with a^{ll} departed Natane^{ll}, 456
 Generydes he brought on to the kyng^t ;
 Whanne he was come the kyng be held hym^w we^{ll},
 And liked hym^w right wele in euery thyng^t, 459
 God wote he was so gladd^e of his comyng^t,
 That ther cowde noman^w deme betwix hem^w twayne,
 Whiche of them^w bothe were gladder in certayne. 462
- Whanne this was do he went to his *seruice*, 463
 The kyng dede ca^{ll} on to hym^w Natane^{ll},
 And charged hym^w in eny maner wise,
 Aboue a^{ll} thyng^t that he shuld kepe hym^w welle ; 466
 Thanne *seruyd* he the quene att euery mele,
 Bothe att hir mete and soper decently,
 The whiche he dede fu^{ll} wele and manerly. 469

Natanell gave
him the ring
and message
from Sereyne.

The king recog-
nized the ring

and thanked
Natanell.

Generydes was
then brought
to the king,

and both were
glad.

After this Ge-
nerydes attended
upon the queen,

¹ MS. *he*.

- Withynne a¹ while it happyd in y^{is} wise, 470
 The quene beheld Generydes so weH,
 And liked hym so wele in his service,
 That aH hir loue on hym was euery dele, 473
 And in hyr self she cowde non other fele ;
 Withoute that she myght have his loue ageyn,
 She were on don for euere in certayne. 476
- Not long after the kyng on hunteng went, 477
 Generydes that day abode behynd,
 The quene knew that, and sone for hym she sent,
 And told hym aH that lay sore in hir mynd ; 480
 'Generydes,' quod she, 'if I myght fynd
 That ye wold loue me best and so endure,
 I shaH do yow the same I you ensure. 483
- FuH long agoo I was in this purpose, 484
 Butt thenne I myght not telle yow what I ment,
 Desireng yow to kepe this mater close,
 And lete me haue knowlage of your entent ; 487
 I promys you if ye wiH assent,
 In grete wurchippe I shaH yow wele auance,
 And alway do that may be your plesaunce.' 490
- Generydes stode stiH in grete musyng, 491
 And to the quene gaue answeere in this case :
 'Madame,' quod he, 'I am bounde to the kyng,
 To be his man her' and in euery place ; 494
 And I so moche am hold to his grace,
 That for to haue his Reme myself alone,
 I wold not be ontrew to his person.' 497
- With that he toke his leue and furth he went ; 498
 And whanne she sawe it wold non other be,
 She threte hym sore, and seid he shuld repent,

who liked him
 so well that all
 her love was
 set upon him,

and one day,
 when the king
 was gone a-
 hunting, she
 told him all,

promising him
 great worship
 if he would
 assent.

Generides said,
 'I am the king's
 man, and can-
 not be untrue
 to him,'

and took his
 leave.

- She rente hir here, a wonder thyng^t to see, 501 The queen en-
 And brought hir self clene owt of charite ; raged, tore her
 The Stiward came and sawe aH was amys, hair and threaten-
 'Madame,' quod he, 'what grete affraye is this?' 504 ed vengeance,
- 'Afraye,' quod she, 'so may ye wele it calle.' 505 telling the
 'But who did this?' quod he, 'I prae yow saye ; Steward
 Telle me the sothe, and late me dele withaH,
 ffor I shaH sone a wreke aH this arraye, 508
 What euer he be he shaH repente the daye
 That he was bold, in earnest or in game, [leaf 3, back.]
 To do to yow this villany and Shame.' 511
- 'It is,' quod she, 'that fals Generydes, 512
 Be cause he myght not haue his wiff of me ;
 ffor by noo prayour' he wold neuer sese,
 But thus he hath arayed me as ye se.' 515 that Generydes
 And whanne the Stiward hard that it was he, had offered her
 'Madame,' quod he, 'be ye no mor' displeid, violence.
 ffor in this case your' hart shaH sone be eased.' 518
- He toke a naked sward and forth he goth, 519 The Steward
 Generydes to slee if that he myght ; took a sword
 But he wist wele beforⁿ the quene was wrothⁿ, and went forth
 Wherefore be tyme he went owt of hir sight : to kill Generydes ;
 To his chaunber' the Stiward gothⁿ full right, 522
 In euery place he sought hym vppe and donⁿ,
 And he was atte his logging^t in the town, 525 but he had gone
 to his lodging
 in the town,
- Owt of daunger, and with hym NataneH 526
 To whom he told this mater aH in feere ;
 Quod he ageyn, 'here in we shaH do well
 TiH that the kyng^t come home we wilbe here, 529 and told Na-
 Thanne wiff it be good tyme to draw yow neer', tanell, who
 And do seruice like as ye did be foore, advised him to
 What euer faH they shaH preyse yow the more.' 532 await the king's
 return.

- The king came home, and Generydes served in the hall, The kyng came home, with hym his knyghtez aH, 533
Generydes, as he was wont to do,
fuff wele and goodly seruyd in the haH :
The Stiward hadde fuff grete enuy therto, 536
And in his hand he bare a staff also ;
So goth he furthe in myddes of the prese,
In grete anger threting^r Generydes 539
- Withoute reason, and seid, ' what dost yⁿ here ? 540
here is noman content of thii seruice.'
Generydes he gaue hym noñ answe^r ;
' Why spekest thou not ? ' quod he, ' thou art not wise.'
And with that word, in fuff creweH wise,
when the Steward took him by the hair and smote him, he toke hym be the heere ther as he stode,
And smote hym so that his nose braste on blode. 546
- The king, wroth to see his son wronged, And whanne the kyng^r perseyuid aH the case, 547
Thow he were wrothe ther ougHt nomañ hym blame,
To see his sonne so wrongyd as he was ;
called to the Steward, he callid oñ to the Stiward bi his name, 550
' Traytour,' quod he, ' god geve y^e uery shame,
This yong^r Squyer suerly dede noñ offence,
And thou hast smetyn hym here in my presence. 553
- Not only now thou dost me villany, 554
Butt here afore thou hast do many moo :'
and stabbed him in the arm. And with his knyff he smote hym¹ hastely
Thorough the arme, and when he hadde so do, 557
' Out of my sight I warne the that yⁿ goo.'
With that the quene was wroth in hir maner,
Thought she anoñ this towchith me right ner'. 560
- The Steward went to his castle Owt of the court the Stiward went his weye, 561
To his casteH he toke the wey fuff right,
And made hym strong^r of men and of array,

¹ MS. *hym hym*.

And euermore his thought was day and nyght 564
 To avenge hym of the kyngⁱ if that he myght; and plotted
 To that purpose he sette aH his entente, vengeance.
 And moche people he hadde of his assent. 567

Now late vs leue aH this as for A space, 568
 And to Generydes I wiH returne, Generydes was so
 So rebukyd and skomfite as he was, discomfited
 he cowde not make no chere but alwey mourn), 571 that he could not
 And lenger ther he thought not to sogeourne,¹ remain,
 But hastely to make his departengⁱ,
 And furth withaH he came to the kyngⁱ. 574

He knelid down) and seid righ^t in this wise; 575 and begged the
 'Ser, if it please your goodnesse for to hire, king
 With yow I haue contynued my seruice
 In pese and rest, and now y^e2 Stiward her' 578
 hath smete me in fuH crueH maner,
 And hath putte me to Shame in your' presence,
 And wile I wote I dede hym non) offence. 581

I may not ease my hert as in this case, 582
 That doth me harme whanne I remembre me,
 here afterward I shaH, be goddis grace,
 Think ther vppon) whanne I a seaseone see, 585
 I wiH no lenger dwelle in this contre,
 Wherefore, I you beseche, sithe it is so,ⁱ
 That ye wiH graunte me licence for to go; 588 to let him go.

And whiH I leue your' trew man shaH I be, 589
 Where euer I travelH to and fro,
 To do yow pleasur' that at lithe in me,
 ffor righ^t gretly am I holden) therto.' 592
 And whanne the kyngⁱ knew weH that he wold go, The king
 And that ther was non) other meane to fynde,
 God wote he was righ^t heuy in his mynd. 595

¹ MS. *sogeourur*.

² MS. *now is y^e*.

- and all his
knights were
sorry
- The knyghtes aH, and the squyers truely, 596
Were full sory of his sone departeng,
Notwithstandyng ther was noo remedy,
But furth he goth withoute more taryeng, 599
Right vmbly he toke leue of the kyng,
And so fourth he went thorough owt y^e haH,
ffuH curtesly he toke leue of them aH. 602
- when he took
leave.
- Generydes and
NataneH
- Generydes and also NataneH 603
To ther logging' they toke the redy waye,
And trused ther harnes euery dele,
Whanne that was do Generydes ganne saye, 606
'Now late vs here appoynt for our' Iurnay
and resolved to go
- In to what land or contre we shaH goo.'
Quod nataneH, 'that hold I wele to do : 609
- [leaf 4]
- To Surry ward, hough seye ye now be that? 610
The quene Sereyne wold right fayne se you *ther*.
'AH that is sothe,' quod he, 'but wote ye what?
In stranger' place fayne wold I that we were, 613
ffor I am now of age harmes to bere ;
And to be knyght as I see other be,
The more wurchippe the better think[eth] me.' 616
- 'AH this is very sothe,' quod NataneH, 617
'To your entent I canne right wele agree ;
Ther is a land I am remembryd wele,
Men call it Perse, a plenteuous contre, 620
Ther and [yow] wiH the Sowdon may yow see,
The whiche is knowyn bothe ferre And nere,
A myghti prince, a man of gret powre.' 623
- to Persia.
- Generydes thanne answerd in this wise : 624
'To that contre I rede we take the waye,
ffor ther we may not fayle of good seruice,

- As ye suppose, telh me what ye seye.' 627
 'Kepe stih,' quod he, 'your' purpose I yow praye,
 To myn entent ther is best abydeng',
 I wote he wiht be gladde of your comyng.' 630
- Ther hors, ther meñ, were redy euerychon, 631
 To that contre they toke the wey fuht right,
 And on hir wey so ferre fourth were thei goon,
 That of the Citee sone they hadde a sight, 634
 Theder they came be thanne it was nyght,
 And fourth withaht to ther loggyng' they went,
 The best that they cowde fynde to ther' entent. 637
- It was the best Citee of aht the lande, 638
 And mountener it hight withoute fayle,
 Therin the Sowdon was I vnderstonde,
 In a casteht fuht riche of appareht. 641
 Generydes thanne after his grete appareht,
 And Nataneht they bothe in good aray,
 To the Sowdon they toke y^e redy way. 644
- And whanne they came ther' as the Sowdon was, 645
 Ther' wer' knyghtes and Squyers many on,
 hym self walkeng' in his disporteng' place,
 They aht awaiteng' vpon his persone, 648
 Generydes and Nataneht anoow'
 Avaunsed them the sowdon for to see,
 Goffore he hight, the story tellith it me. 651
- Whanne¹ he hym saw he did to hym obeseaunce, 652
 fuht manerly and seyde right in this wise ;
 'Ser, if it be your' wiht and your' pleasaunce,
 her am I come to offer' my seruice 655
 To your' lordshippe, right as ye list to devise,
 Now please it yow to take me for your' man,
 And I shaht do suche seruice as I canne.' 658

They came to the
 chief city,
 Mountener,
 where the Sultan
 Goffore dwelt,

and found him
 walking in his
 pleasure ground.

Generydes offered
 him his service,

¹ MS. *Thanne*.

- The Sowdon stode and hard hym) euery dele, 659
 he toke good hede att hym) in euery thing^t;
 And dough^t ye not he lekid hym) right wele,
 Bothe his person) and aH his demeaneng^t, 662
 And furthwith gaue hym) his welcomyng^t
 ffuH curtesly, and seid in Ientih wise ;
 ' I am) content of you to haue seruice : 665
- What¹ is your' name ? I prae yow teH it me.' 666
 ' My name,' quod he, ' ser, is Generydes.'
 ' Generydes,' he said, ' wele mote ye thee ;
 A Ientilman) ye seme withouten) lese, 669
 And in wurchippe right lekely to encrease ;
 and was accepted. Wherefore of suche as do to me seruice
 I wiH that ye be nexst in eny wise.' 672
- The Sul'tan's daughter,
 The Sowdon hadde his dough^ter and his ayre 673
 In his palys vnder his gouernaunce,
 And for certeyne she was right inderly fayre,
 And, as the writeng^t makith remembraunce, 676
 ffuH womanly of speche and countenance ;
 In suche wise hir' name beganne to sprede,
 That euery man) spake of hir' goodlyheed. 679
- And as the Sowdon) was sett att his mete, 680
 Generydes softly he beganne to calle,
 The best deynte that before hym) was sett
 he toke it hym), and badde hym) goo with aH 683
 To his dough^ter : ' my lord,' quod he, ' I shaH.'
 So fourth he goth ther as this lady was,
 Clarionas, Mynne Auctour seith she hight clarionas. 686
- loved Generydes, This fayre lady behelde Generydes, 687
 In stedefast wise on) hym) she cast hir eye,
 AH his maners so wele it did hyr plece,

¹ MS. *That*.

- That she constreyned was in certeyn^{te} 690
 To loue hym best, it wold noⁿ other be ;
 She thought it dede hir good onⁿ hym to thynk,
 And of hir cuppe she offeryd hym to drynk. 693
- He toke it of hir hand fu^{ll} curtesly, 694
 And ferthermore, as I this mater fele,
 Inⁿ his conseyte, I say¹ yow certeynly,
 hym liked neuer creatur' so wele : 697
 his mynde, his thought, was sett oon hir yche deell ; and his mind was
 set on her.
 And, as I cowde perseyue in myⁿ entent,
 There hartes bothe were sone of onⁿ Assent. 700
- Generydes he toke his leue anon, 701
 To sone she thought as after hir avise,
 Yet or² that he departed was and goon,
 To kysse hym she forgate not in no wise, 704
 he thanked hir and offerid hir *seruice*,
 To be hire manⁿ and alway to be trew,
 So to endur' and neuer to renew. 707
- Vppe fromⁿ hir mete arose clarionas, 708
 And onⁿ hir bedde she leyde hir fourthⁿ with AH ;
 hir maydenⁿ had grete merveh what it was,
 And fu^{ll} softely onⁿ hir she be ganne to calle, 711
 'Madame,' quod she, 'what thing' is now be fa^{ll} ?
 Of your' dissese I *prae* yow telle it me,
 To wete yow seke it is a gre[te] pite.' 714 [leaf 4, back]
- Ther with the lady gaue answe^re ageynⁿ 715 She told her
 maid, Mirabell,
 Vnto hir maydeⁿ, Mirabeⁿ was her' name ;
 'Of my dissese,' quod she, 'yf I shuld layne of her disease,
 Only to yow, I wis I were to blame ; 718
 I haue founde yow, in ernest and in game,
 Att a^{ll} tymes fu^{ll} secrete and fu^{ll} trew,
 And soth to saye I neuer other knewe : 721

And for to telle you pleny of my dissesse, 722
 This is the cause ; ther is on) specialy
 hath don) me harme, god wote causeles,
 I neuer offendid hym) truly ; 725
 And me think ther is noo remedy,
 ffor I was neuer seke on) this maner',
 A fore this tyme now knowe ye aH in fer'. 728

'Not aH,' quod she, 'madame, that may not be ; 729
 ffor yet I haue no knowlage whiche he is.'
 'It is,' quod she, 'a yong Squyer', parde ;
 he is but late come to my lord, I wis, 732
 A very goodly man), so haue I blisse.'
 'AH this may be, and I beleue the same ;
 But good madame,' quod she, 'what is his name?' 735

and that unless
 she could see
 Generydes,

'To seye yow sothe,¹ Generydes he hight.' 736
 Quod she ageyn, 'now wote ye euery dele ;
 Butt I of hym) right sone may haue a sight,
 With me I wote it wiH not long be wele, 739
 ffor hym) only is aH that euer I fele,
 And alway more and more it doth encrese ;
 God wote I am no thing' in hertys ease.' 742

it would not
 long be well
 with her.

'Madame,' quod she, 'dismay yow neuer a dele, 743
 Be of good chere, hurt not yow to soore ;
 Doughte ye noo thing' AH this shalbe right wele,
 ffor I shaft trewly do my part ther fore 746
 With right good wiH, and for to say yow mor',
 ffor² this mater I shaft do wele ordeyne
 That ye suerly shaft speke with hym) ayen.' 749

With that anon) clarionas be ganne 750
 To take hir' chere mor' comfortably,
 Notwithstondyng' she was bothe pale and wanne,

¹ MS. *the sothe.*

² MS. *And for.*

- And to hir ma[y]de she seid full soberly, 753
 ‘love Myrabeñ, I thank yow hertely,
 ffor of myn) payne now I haue some respite,
 And if I leue I shaft it yow wele aquyte.’ 756
- Now late vs leue apart clarionas, 757
 And to Generydes turne we ageyn), Generydes, on
his part,
 Whiche for hir sake stonidith in hevy case,
 As full of thought as he myghit be certayn); 760
 Out of the cowrt he went for very peyn),
 Streight to his logging¹ hastely he hym) spedd,
 Whanne he came ther he leyde hym on his bedd. 763
- His maister had merveñ what it ded mene 764 told his master
of his case.
 So sodenly to see hym in that case,
 Añ distemperyd and out of colour’ clene,
 he mused sore what maner a thing it was ; 767
 And whanne that he myght gete a metely space,
 Right thus he seid to Generydes,¹
 ‘I prae yow, ser, Telle me your’ disese.’ 770
- ‘Mayster,’ quod he, ‘añ that lythe in my hert, 771
 What euer it be, to yow I wolle not layn)
 Why and wherefore I suffer añ this smert,²
 Clarionas she causith it certayn), 774
 ffor hir only I suffer añ this payne,
 And for to sey the very certaynte,
 I wote not why she shuld do this to me.’ 777
- ‘Ye wote what, ser, after myn) advise, 778 Natanell pro-
mises to speak
with Clarionas.
 Be mery and that is my counceñ,
 In this mater I shaft do yow seruice,
 And peraventur’ sumwhat it shaft prevaile ; 781
 To morow I shaft be ther withoute faile,
 And speke with hir’ as touching this mater’,
 And what she seith ye shaft haue pleyne answer.’ 784

¹ MS. *Geroerydes*.² MS. *this certeyn smert*.

- 'Maister,' quod he, 'I thank you hartely, 785
 To yow only is aH my very trost,
 And what ye think that I shaH do trewly,
 In this mater' demeane me as ye list; 788
 hough I shaH spede fayne wold I that I wist.'
 'Wele, ser,' quod he, 'I canne noo ferther saye,
 To my power I shaH do what I may.' 791
- With that he partid fro Generydes, 792
 And on the morow, whanne he hadde tyme and space,
 Onto the court he went withouten lese,
 Therfor to speke with fayre clarionas. 795
 Whanne he¹ was come ther as she was,
 MyrabeH came and this to hym ganne seye,
 'Where is,' quod she, 'your' maister, I yow prae?' 798
- 'Att his loggyng', foH ih att ease,' quod he, 799
 'And so a be a sithe afore yester day;
 What hym aylith I woote noo thing' parde,
 His comfort and his chere is aH awaye, 802
 Butt after myn entent this dare I saye,
 All this is grow, to teH the mater clere,
 Sithe he now last was with my lady here.' 805
- Whan MirabeH perseivid what he ment, 806
 And what desire he hadde thanne was she fayn),
 AH this gotH wele, thought she, to myn entent.
 'Wele, ser,' she saide, 'to yow I wiH be playn); 809
 Sithe your' maister was here, I wiH nott layne,
 My lady hath be seke bothe day and nyght,
 ffor she hadd neuer rest I yow be hight. 812
- Yet not for thy, if ye haue ought to saye 813
 ffor your maister be his comaund[e]ment,
 Goo forth anon with owt more delaye,

¹ MS. *she*.

- And telle hir aH the trougth of your' entent, 816
 To speke with yow she wilbe wele content.' Natanell sought
the princess,
 So furth withaH, after his purpose was,
 Streight fourth he goth on) to Clarionas. 819
- 'Madame,' quod he, 'my lord Generydes 820
 To you hym) recomaundith for certayne, and told her
of Generydes,
 A wofuH man), clene owt of hartes ease,
 And for to telle yow aH the mater playn), 823
 If it please yow ye may respite his payn),
 Of your' goodnesse to graunt hym) that licence,
 That he may come on) to your' nobiH presence.' 826 who begged that
he might come
into her presence.
- Whenne she had herd these wordes euerydele, 827
 'Come nere,' she said, 'Mirabell, I you p[r]aye.'
 'Madame,' quod she, 'I vnderstonde hym) wele ; Mirabell advises
that he should
be sent for,
 As me semyth with your' wurchippe ye may 830
 Send me for hym) and here what he wiH saye,
 his maister here right sone for hym) wiH goo.'
 'I am content,' quod she, 'that it be so.' 833
- MyrabeH came and toke hym owt Aside ; 834
 'Do after me,' quod she, 'as in this case :
 Att this wyndow my lady shaH abide,
 ffor thorough owt the gardeyn) he shaH pace, 837 into the garden.
 And ther he shaH haue good leyser and space,
 To saye what that hym) list in secrete wise ;
 Now goo furth for this is myn) advise.' 840
- Furth on) his way departith Natanell 841
 To his maister, and founde hym) passeng^t sadde :
 'What tidynges now,' quod he, 'wiH it be wele ?'
 'Right wele,' quod he, 'be ye noo thyng^t adred : 844
 Whanne ye knowe aH I wote ye wiH be glad,
 As for the first, now take this of me aloon,¹
 She wiH that ye come speke with her anon).' 847

¹ *aloon* added in another hand.

- Who was glad
now but Ge-
nerydes? Now who was gladde, and who was well apayde, 848
And endly mery but Generydes,
Remembryng^t what Nataneß had seid?
So furth he goth, and neuer wold he sese, 851
Into the courte in myddes of the prese,
- He went to the
garden to
Clarionas, And so furth on vn to Clarionas,
In the gardeyn where apoynted was. 854
- Whañ he hyr saw, he fayled countenance, 855
Where with suerly he was not wele apayed;
And in like wise, to sey yow in substance,
On here behalfe she was somewhat dismayde; 858
- and told her Yet atte last right thus to hir' he saide,
'Madame,' quod he, 'be cause I hadde licence,
I am more bold to come to your' presence: 861
- And for to sey yow myñ entent I wis, 862
As for my self this is the mater playn,
ffor I must suerly tell vs att¹ it is;
My hert is ouercome with very payn) 865
- of his pain of
heart for her
sake. AH for your' sake, and so hath beñ certeyñ
Sithe I was here oñ massage sekerly.'
'hoo so?' quod she,² 'I haue grete wounder why. 868
- What³ cause haue ye to putte me in this witte? 869
- The truth was
soon known on
both sides As for my part I do no thyng^t nee sey,
I rede putte suche thoughtes in respite;
Where I haue not offendid be this day, 872
Wherby ye shuld be hurt by eny way:
Wherefore,' quod she, 'in ernest and in game,
To putte in me the defaute ye are to blame.' 875
- 'Trewly, Madame,' thenne seid Generydes, 876
'Of me ye ought no magry to purchase,
And for to con) yow thanke for my disese,

¹ So MS. ; perhaps for *telle what*, or *telle all as*.² MS. *he*.³ MS. *That*.

- Now trewly that were a strange case. 879
- Yet be the meane of fauour and of grace
Ye may me helpe aH only and no mo,
O trewth it were your' wurchippe so to do.' 882
- Quod* she ageyn, 'if it were for to blame, 883 though after
some bashfulness
on Clarionas's
part,
- My wurchippe were amendes for to make ;
And in like wise ye aught to do the same,
If ther were eny suche that for your sake 886
had so sufferyd payn or heynesse had tak ;
Peraventour I myght be on) of thoo,
What will ye sey,' *quod* she, 'and it be so?' 889
- 'Madame,' *quod* he, 'I here yow speke right wele, 890
ffuH fayne, god woote, I wold that it wer' soo.'
'Trewly,' *quod* she, 'it is thus euerydele,
I yow ensure, I may not goo ther' fro ; 893
But my wurchippe may not avowe it soo.
This is the very trouth withoute feyning,
ffor loue wiH haue his course for eny thing.' 896
- When MyrabeH had hard aH this array, 897
'After this wer',' *quod* she, 'god send vs pece :
I canne wiH think it wiH not lest alway.'
'Now god defende it,' *quod* Generydes ; 900
'I must depart,' *quod* she, 'withoutyn lese,
As for A tyme your' pleasur' for to spare,
Of eviH speche it is good to be ware.' 903
- And shortly for to say you as it was, 904
A fuH [a]corde was made betwix them) twayn) :
he gaue a ryng' on) to Clarionas,
And she toke hym) Another for certeyn) ; 907 and they ex-
changed rings.
With trew promys eyther for ioye or payn),
In stedefast wise ther hertys to ensure,
Neuer¹ to change but alway [to] endure. 910

¹ MS. *Nouer*.

- And by that tyme fer passid was the day, 911
 MirabeH seyde, 'it is hye tyme for to goo.'
 Thanne wist he wele ther was non other waye,
 [leaf 5, back] he must departe wheder he wiff or noo : 914
 he toke his leue, wherewith he was full woo ;
 And as for hir she was nott wele contente,
 Yet not for thy she kist hym or she went. 917
- Full of[te] tymes ther¹ were betwix hem² twayne, 918
 They often meet
 in secret. Dayes apoynted to mete in secrete wise :
 Notwithstandyng^t I say yow for certeyn,
 To hir wurchippe was thought noo preiudice, 921
 Butt only to owe hir his seruice,
 As feythfully as cowde be thought or ment,
 Ther was non other^t thyng^t in ther entent. 924
- So furth he goth full streyte in to the halle, 925
 To do seruice hym thought it for the best ;
 And for to sey yow soth among^t them AH,
 In court there
 was none like
 Generydes, Thorough owt the court he was the goodliest, 928
 In his demeaning^t the most Ientilest,
 And with a spere to renne in warre or pece,
 Ther was non like on to Generides. 931
- Havkyng^t, hunteng^t, he cowd good skiH ther on) ; 932
 And what that eny Ientilman shuld do,
 ffor very trougth in aH the courte³ was non,
 Knyght or squyer, so wele willyng^t ther to : 935
 and all loved him
 save Malichias. Thorough owt the courte³ he hadde the love also
 Of euery creatur^t, bothe more and lesse,
 Saue of A knyght callid ser Malichias. 938
- As [for] a tyme leue we Generydes, 939
 His father's (the
 king of India's)
 Steward And late vs now speke of the kyng^t of ynd,
 And of his Stiward whiche wold neuer sese,

¹ MS. *they*.² MS. *hym*.³ MS. *contre*.

- But of malice compasing^t in his mynd 942
 Aȝ maner weyes som treson¹ for to fynd ;
 With aȝ the helpe that he cowde gete certeyn),
 ffor to distroye his lord and souereyn). 945 plotted against
his lord,
- And to *perfourme* aȝ that he hadde take in hand, 946
 This fals Stiward he had gaderid people grete, and gathered an
army
 To the nowmber^r of iiij or v thousand,
 Of meñ of warre the best that he cowd gete ; 949
 And in A bussment fuȝ sone he had them sett
 Nyhand the town), his treson) to be gynne,
 And be that ameane the cite for to wyne. 952 to win the city.
- Off his tresone the quene knowe wele also, 953 The queen knew
the treason.
 It to *perfourme* she did aȝ hir entent,
 And of hir counceȝ ther were lordes² moo,
 And certeyn) of them) were of hir^r dissente : 956
 Of aȝ this werk the kyng^t was innocent,
 And of ther falsed no thing^t *perseyuyd*,
 The more pite he shuld be so disseyued. 959
- And shortly to procede whaȝ this was do, 960
 There were iij lordes came oȝ to the kyng,
 Desireng^t hym) on huntynge^t for to goo,
 ffuȝ ontrewly ther with ymagenyng^t ; 963
 To ther desire the kyng^t was welewillyng^t, While the king
was hunting with
three lords
 So fourth on) huntynge^t he rode certeynly,
 The iij lordes with hym) in companye, 966
- And ij Squyers, myn) Auctour tellith me ; 967
 And while he was most besy in his game,
 This fals Stiward had goten) the Citee,
 The whiche was callid pareyntyn) be name, 970 the Steward took
the city
 And made hym) self *proclamed* in the same
 Aȝ openly bothe kyng^t and souereyn), and proclaimed
himself king.
 Ther was no man) that durst saye ther ageyn). 973

¹ MS. *tresom*.² MS. *lordes*.

The king heard
thereof from a
forester,

þe kyng^t hym self knowe noo thyng^t of this case, 974
 TiH atte last a forster came rideng^t ;
 And, wete ye wele, so sorowfuH he was,
 That he onnethe mygh^t speke to the kyng^t, 977
 And ther he told hym euery maner thyng^t,
 Of his Stiward and of his fals treasone,
 And what people he hadde withynne the town. 980

and that the
three lords were
traitors also.

'I must,' quod he, 'telle yow myn^d avise and entent ;
 The quene is cause of this on^d happy case,
 ffor these iij lordes ar^t of hir Assent,
 That are Abideng^t with you in the chase ; 984
 And whanne the kyng^t perseyuyd hough^t it was,
 AH his huntynge^t was don and his besynesse,
 An hevy maⁿ [he was] and counfortles. 987

In this musyng^t he ridetⁿ furthⁿ a pase, 988
 The iij lordes they mette hym on the waye :
 'Traytours,' quod he, 'god geve yow euy^H grace
 ffor your^t seruice that ye haue don^d to me, 991
 So vntrewly your^t prince for to be traye,
 Whiche neuer hurt nor harme on^d to yow ment,
 I trost to god ye sha^H it sore repent.' 994

AH his wordes they sett Att liti^H price, 995
 ffor whye they drede hym not the soth to saye :
 And to the kyng^t [they sey^d] right in this wise,
 'Take it in gre the fortune of this day.' 998
 And whanne he saw ther was non^d other way,
 he drow his swerd And smote on^d of them so,
 And¹ from the grownde he mygh^t noo ferther goo, 1001

He drew his
sword and slew
one.

Butt felle downⁿ dede then^d in continent. 1002
 The others fled,
 his felawes fledde as fast as euer they mygh^t ;
 The kyng^t sawe that, and after them^d he went,

¹ ? *That.*

And ouer toke them long or it was nyght. 1005 but the king
 So ferthermore to saye yow the very right, overtook
 he slew them bothe And sayde, 'traytours erante,
 Of your falshed ye shafl yow neuer avaunte.' 1008 and slew them
 too.

And vppon this he turned bak ageyn 1009
 To his squyers, whiche were right ferre behynd,
 And in this wise he dede to them complayn:
 'I have,' quod he, 'founde yow bothe trew and kynde,
 Now lak I good where with I shuld yow fynd,
 And for to counfort me now in my nede,
 I canne noo more but Ihesu be your' spede.' 1015

Whenne his squyers had hard hym thus complayn, [leaf 6]
 They answerd hym ayen in goodly wise ;
 'Ser, think you not but we shafl do our' payn
 To counfort yow, and do yow suche seruice, 1019
 As our' connyng' And Powre may suffice,
 And though your' hart be now noo thing' in rest,
 With goddes grace AH shalbe for your' best.' 1022

The kyng was plesid wele with ther counfort, 1023
 And as hym thought he prayed them for to saye
 To what contre it were best to resorte,
 That for hym self he myght some what purvaye. 1026
 One of them seyde, 'lo yender lyght the waye ;
 Streyght to the Reme of Trace it with yow bryng',
 Wherein dwellyth a prince, A¹ nobyfl kyng.' 1029 With his two
 squires
 he took his way
 to Thrace,

Toward that land he toke the waye fufl right, 1030
 Whiche was callid a plenteuous contre ;
 Whanne he came ther, as fast as euer he² myght
 To se the kyng' he went in certayn[t]e, 1033
 In humble³ wise, besechyng' hym that he
 Might do hym seruice with his squyers twayne,
 In like wise as his pleasur' wold ordeyne. 1036

¹ MS. *a A.*
 GENERYDES.

² MS. *she.*
 3

³ MS. *humbly.*

- The kyng^t was wele contente of his comyng^t, 1037
 and entered the
 king's service,
 And of *seruice* he seid he shuld not fayle ;
 What he shuld do he told hym euery thing^t,
 That myght only to his wurchippe preuaile ; 1040
 And so alway, after thought and travaile,
 God send rest and coumfort, be ye sure,
 To euery wele disposid creature. 1043
- Thus in that contre abideth stiH alway 1044
 The kyng^t of ynd, vnknown^d in euery wise,
 With his ij squyers, a wayteng^t day be day
 hym^d for to *serue* as they made ther promys ; 1047
 And so this prince contynued in *seruice*,
 Right weH be trost and cherishid with the kyng^t,
 ffor he cowde please hym^d in euery thing^t. 1050
- AH that he dede was done so wittely, 1051
 his demeanyng^t was suche thorough owt the place,
 That euery man^d hym^d preysid by and by,
 And he so wele stode in the kyngges grace, 1054
 That he hym^d gaue, withynne a litiH space,
 Of aH his lande the Stiwar[d]shepe to holde,
 and was made
 Steward.
 And fuH power to rewle it as he wold. 1057
- When he dede as wele as cowde be thought, 1058
 Onto the kynggez honour' in certayne,
 Iustice was kept like wise as it owt,
 Ther was noman be resan^d myght complayne ; 1061
 And for he shuld his charge wele susteyn^d,
 The kyng hym^d gaue clerly an^d Erls lande,
 The whiche but late was com in to his hand. 1064
 The king gave
 him an Earl's
 land.
- Now of this mater' a while let vs sese 1065
 As for a tyme, And speke of quene sereyne,
 That was moder on to Generydes,

- And hough that she hadde herd the tidenggez playn),
 hough ontrewly his fader be a trayn)
 Of his lordes made after ther entente,
 he was putte owt of his land by ther Assent. 1071
- Off hym) and of there sonne Generydes 1072
 Was vtterly her mend and aH here thought ;
 And trewly to leue in hartes ease,
 That cowde she noughit tiH that she hadde hym sougHt ;
 Of her estate no pleasure she ne roughit,
 Saue only for to knowe the certeynte
 Of auferius the kyng where he shuld be. 1078
- And fourth with aH she ganne an) erle to calle, 1079
 The whiche in sothe hadde widded hir Cosyn),
 Right as the writengt seyth in especiaH,
 A fayre lady and nexst of AH hir kynne ; 1082
 The Erle to truste was noo daunger in,
 ffor he was ware and wise I yow ensure,
 And therwith trew as eny creature. 1085
- She told hym) AH the grounde of the mater 1086
 In euery thing', and how it was be faH,
 Of auferius and of hir sonne in fere,
 And hough the kyng betrayed was withaH, 1089
 ' Wherefore my purpose is in especiaH
 To take on) me the labour' and the payn),
 Where euer he were to fynd hym) in certeyn).' 1092
- Then)¹ to the Erle she seid in this maner : 1093
 ' Ye shaH here haue the rewle and gouernaunce
 Of this contre, with aH my full powre ;
 My men) shaH be vnder your' obeiseaunce, 1096
 And hough it be be disteyne or chaunce,
 What euer falle, if I come not Ayen),
 Ye² shaH be here both lord And souerayn).' 1099

Sereyne
 heard how the
 king of India had
 been put out of
 his land.

and sent for an
 Earl

to take the
 rule of the
 country while
 she went in
 search of
 Auferius and
 Generydes.

¹ MS. *When.*

² MS. *he.*

- 'Madame,' he seid, 'to *gouerne* this contre 1100
 It is noo liteſt thing' to take in hand ;
 ffor yow it is moche bettyr thanne for me ;
 Yet neuer the lese, sithe I vnderstonde 1103
 Your' purpose is to depart owt of the land,
 I wolle fulfille your' pleasur' in this case,
 And trewly as I canne be goddes grace.' 1106
- Queen Sereyne
 set off,
 Now Gothe quene Sereyn) fourth on) hir Iurnaye, 1107
 And in hir company she hadde a knyght,
 A trosty man), and othe[r] squyers twaynne,
 With but few moo ther hors for to dight ; 1110
 came to India
 So to the Reme of ynd they went full right,
 And sone vpon) ther labour' and traveſt
 to Parentine,
 To parentyne she came with owt fayle, 1113
- A towne whiche is rehersid here by fore. 1114
 Anon' withaſt was purveyd a logging
 [leaf 6, back]
 ffor this lady ; and, for to say yow more,
 and lodged with
 the faithful
 forester,
 hire oste was sumtyme dwellyng with the kyng, 1117
 The same forster that brought to hym) tidengge,
 Of his Stiward and of his fals treson),
 As he rode in the forest vppe and down). 1120
- As for a nyght ther toke she hir' loggyng, 1121
 And made on) calle the good man) of the place,
 'Good *ser*,' quod she, 'telle me where is the kyng ;
 I haue grete nede,' quod she, 'on) to his grace. 1124
 Sumtyme a lady weſt att ease I was,
 And now be force,' quod she, 'siche is my chaunce,
 I am putte ow[t] of myn) enheritaunce.' 1127
- 'Madame,' quod he, 'here is noo remedy : 1128
 The kyng suerly is putte owt of his right
 By grete tresone, I saye yow certenly,

- By his Stiward and by the quenys myght, 1131
 Whiche I may soore repent bothe day and nyght;
 ffor now A dayis I lese aH that I wanne,
 Where here before I was¹ a threfty man. 1134
- Wherfor to hym I wiH, this is noo naye, 1135 whom she
prevailed upon
 Where euer he be, I say yow certaynly.
 Thanne sayd the quene, 'good ser, I yow pray,
 That ye wiH come with me in companye; 1138 to come in search
of the king.
 hym for to fynd I purpose vtterly,
 And I shaH paye your' costez euery dele.'
 Quod he, 'madame, I gre me wele 1141
- In your' presence to traveH day by day.' 1142
 So on the morow departed quene Sereyne, On the morrow
they departed
 As erly as she cowde on hir Iurnay,
 With hir to goo the forster was right fayn. 1145
 So many dayes she laboryd certayn,
 That of the Reame of Trace she had a sight, for Thrace,
 And thederward they toke the wey full right. } 1148
- When they came ther the[y] sawe a faire cite, 1149 and came to
a fair city
 As full a pepiH as it cowde suffice,
 The fayre Reuer grete pleasur' for to see,
 With shippez grete of dyuerce merchaundise, 1152
 AH goodly thing that eny cowde wele devise;
 And as the Story makith remembraunce, of which Auferius
was governor.
 kyng Auferius had ther the gouernaunce. 1155
- And ther he was purposing to Abyde, 1156
 As for A tyme for materys for the kyng':
 The quene Sereyn was be the Ryuers side
 Right Wele loggid, and whan she hadde tideng' 1159 The queen lodged
by the river side.
 A[nd] trew knowlage of Auferius the kyng,
 hough he but late was come to the Citee,
 God wote full wele therof apayed was she. 1162

¹ MS. *wis*.

- For hir' disporte she goth to take the Ayre, 1163
 And to the Reueres side she ganne hir dresse ;
 Ther was a brygge full strongly made and fayre,
 And ther she sawe, myn Auctour doth witesse, 1166
 iij lavenders ded all ther besynesse
 A sherte to wassh ; thanne seid she to them iij,
 'What do ye here, fayre susters myn?' quod she.
- On the bridge
 she saw three
 lavenders
 washing a shirt.
- They told her
 they had been
 about it for
 two years.
- Quod on of them, 'that were good to be knowe, 1170
 It is a wonder wark withouten dough't ;
 We wassh a shirte, and euer shaft I trow,
 ffor this ij yere we haue ben it abough't, 1173
 And yet we cannot gete the spotte[s] owt,
 Wherefore they calle vs noo good lauenders,
 And we haue vsid it thus many yerez.' 1176
- She took it
 from them
- 'Shewe me y^e shirte,' thanne seid the quene Sereyn,
 'And I shaft se what I shaft do ther to :
 Whanne I haue do, ye shaft haue it ageyn,
 And do ther with what ye list to do.' 1180
 She toke the Shirte withoute wordes moo,
 And wesht it onys and ryneshed it so clene,
 That afterward was noo spotte on it seen. 1183
- and washed it
 clean,
- When she had don, she toke it them ageyn, 1184
 Or tyme that she departed fro the place ;
 To hir logging went the quene Sereyn,
 The lavenders hadde wonder of that case, 1187
 They mused sore and mervelid how it was :
 And home they went the women euerychon,
 Whanne it was drye they bare it fourth anon. 1190
- and returned
 to her lodging.
 The lavenders
 wondered,
- To auferius the kyng where as he laye, 1191
 In a casteH full goodly to behold ;
 And whanne he sawe his shirt in that aray,
- and took the
 shirt to Auferius,

- Withoute spotte, he beganne to be cold, 1194 who called to
 To thynk howh that a good old man hym told, mind what the
 Bothe of [the] shirte and other thingez aH, old man had
 Whiche sith that tyme full trewly hath be fall. 1197 told him.
- The same forster that came with quene Sereyn, 1198 The forester
 To the castil he toke the way full right, who came with
 To se his lord, god wote, he was full fayn. the queen went
 Whanne he came ther of hym he hadde a sight, 1201 to the castle
- And spake to hym as sone as euer he myght ;
 The kyng hym knew, wherof he was full glad,
 Not withstondeng he fond hym passyng sadde. 1204 and found the
 king sad.
- 'Ser, if it please your lordshippe,' thanne quod he,
 'I yow beseche tell me your heynesse :
 To wete yow in this plight it grevith me,
 ffor if I myght I wold it fayne redresse ; 1208
 And oftentimes it hath be sene expresse,
 In grete materys, withouten eny fayle,
 A sympiH mannys counceH may prevayle.' 1211
 'Sir,' said he,
 'why is this
 heaviness?'
- To hym Ayen seid Auferius the kyng ; 1212 The king
 'I knowe your trowth, and soo hath doon Alway,
 And for to sey yow [sothe] withoute feyneng,
 AH this is come to me sithe yester day, 1215
 And howh and in what wise I shaft yow saye :'
 And so fourth he told of quene Sereyn,
 And howh a child was gote betwix them twayne, 1218 told him of queen
 Sereyn,
 [leaf 7]
- And of his shert where on hir¹ terys felle, 1219 and of her tears
 That non shuld wassh them owt saue only she : on his shert which
 none but herself
 could wash out.
- 'Now is it clene, whiche lekith me full ille,
 ffor thus I thynk It canne non other be ; 1222
 But she is dede in very certente.'
 'Nay,' quod he, 'ser, I trow it be not soo,
 ye shaft here better tydengez or ye goo. 1225
 'But she is dead,'
 'Nay, Sir,

¹ MS. *his*. But see ll. 162, 193.

- I saw a fair lady wash a shirt by the river's side.
- I saw but late vppon the Ryueres side 1226
 One wassh a shert, I wote not whose it is.
 Whanne he¹ hard that he wold not long^t abide
 But askid more, 'now telle me who did this,' 1229
Quod auferius, 'so haue ye Ioye and blysse.'
 'A fayre lady,' *quod* he, 'I yow ensure,
 And for to chese a goodly creature. 1232
- I came with her out of India to seek you.'
- I came with hir owt of the Reme of ynd, 1233
 And atte myn howse ther toke she² hir loggyng^t;
 She askid me where that she shuld yow fynde,
 And I told hir I hadd no knowlachyng^t; 1236
 So fourth she went and left aH other thing^t,
 At a venture your^t weelfare for to see,
 And so came I with hir to this citee.' 1239
- 'Now, help me to see her,' said Auferius.
- 'Now, for my loue, helpe that I may hir see 1240
 In eny wise,' *quod* Auferius the kyng;
 'ffor I canne think right wele that it is she,
 Whom that I loue aboue aH other thing^t.' 1243
 The forster seid, '*ser*, on to hir loggyng,
 Whenn euer it please yow, I shaH be your^t gyde;
 ffor she is here by vppon the Ryueres side.' 1246
- In this mater ther was no more to saye, 1247
 No lenger avise nor lenger abyding,
 Butt furth he rideth vppon his hakeney,
 Vppon the Reuerys side to hir loggyng^t: 1250
 And whanne she had knowlache of his comyng^t,
 Remembryng^t hough that she shuld hym see,
 Wete ye right wele a glad woman was she. 1253
- Without delay he went to her lodging.
- When she saw him
- Whenn he was come and knewe that it was she, 1254
 ffor very glad he wist not what to saye;
 Whenne she hym sawe it wold non other be,

¹ MS. *she*.² MS. *che*.

- Butt furth with aH in swounyng¹ ther she¹ lay. 1257 she fell down in
 As sone as he hir sawe in that arraye, a swoon.
- God wote he was an hevy man therefore,
 And ther with [all] abisshid more and more. 1260
- Yet Atte last full Ientilly he went, 1261
 And toke hir in his armys for sertayn,
 hir to commfort he did aH his intent ;
 With that she came vnto hir self ageyn. 1264
- Thanne was ther ioye betwix them twayn,
 ffor to teHe yow aH it were a wounder, Then was there
 And ofte they kist or they wold² part A sonder. 1267 joy betwixt
 them.
- Thanne was ther not ferre owt of the Citee 1268 Not far from the
 A fayre casteH, and thederward he went city was a fair
 Owt of the Citee, not² ferre past ij myle or iij, castle.
- That was his owen att his comaundment. 1271
- Whanne [he] came ther for moche people he sent, He sends for
 The whiche held of his lordshippe and fraunchesse,
 That thei shuld come to hym in eny wise. 1274
- And so they dede meche people in certayn ;¹ 1275
 Whanne they were come he told them aH the case,
 Desireng¹ them to goo for quene Sereyne Sereyne
 To the Citee, and bryng hir¹ to this place ; 1278 thither,
- ffor he purposith sone, with goddes grace,
 In as short tyme as he cowde wele devise,
 hir for to wedde in honorabiH wise. 1281 that he might
 marry her.
- To this casteH they came with quene Sereyn, 1282
 Right wele a compayned in euery wise,
 Of hir comyng¹ the peopiH were fuH fayn,
 And offeryd hir right lowly ther seruice ; 1285
 Atte hir pleasur and atte hir owyn devise,
 In that casteH she tared for to rest,
 Onto the tyme they purvayed for the fest. 1288

¹ MS. *se.*² MS. *nor.*

- Meanwhile
 the king fell
 sick
- In this meane while, the kynges massenger 1289
 To Auferius he came withoute fey[n]ing^t.
 Curlus he hight and seid in this maner :
 ‘My lord,’ quod he, ‘ye must come to the kyng^t 1292
 In aH the hast, and make noo taryng^t;
 I drede me sore he may not long endure,
 ffor he is passyng seke I yow ensure.’ 1295
- When Auferius the kyng herd that he saide, 1296
 AH sodenly he waxhid bothe pale and wanne ;
 fforth on his waye to ride he hym purvayde
 Vnto the kyng As fast as euer he canne, 1299
 And wete ye wiH he was an hevy man :
 ffor by the tyme he came vnto that place,
 The kyng was dede, whiche was a hevy case. 1302
- For hym was made grete ordenaunce I yow ensure ;
 The peopiH wept, ther hertys were full sore,
 And for to purvaye for his sepulture
 They besyed them echon, bothe lesse and more, 1306
 Thanne was ther made an ordenaunce therfore,
 ffuH rially with aH maner seruice ;
 As feH to his estate in euery wise. 1309
- W[i]thyne a while after aH this was do, 1310
 A non ther was callid a parlement,
 By Auferius and other lordis moo,
 ffully concludid AH by on Assent, 1313
- without heir.
 Be cause the kyng left non of his disente,
 Nor of his blode of that land to be kyng^t,
 To chese them on And lefe aH other thing^t. 1316
- The parliament
 And whanne they were Assemelyd euerychone, 1317
 And them Avised them wele in euery thing^t ;
 They were fully Accordid aH in one,

- That Auferius suerly shuld be ther kyng^t : 1320 chose Auferius
 he was to them so trew And so loving, to succeed him.
 And so rightwise in euery Iugement, [leaf 7, back]
 That so able was non to ther entent. 1323
- And shortly to procede in this mater, 1324
 They chase hym kyng^t by voice of the land,
 The lordes and the Ientilles aH in feere,
 To hym dede homage as I vnderstonde, 1327
 With full promes ther feithes in his hand,
 Atte aH seasones to hym to owe ther seruice,
 And hym obeyed in eny maner wise. 1330
- Whanne this was do he sent for quene Sereyne, 1331
 And in as goodly hast as it myght be,
 The mariage was made be twix them twayn),
 With grete honour and grete solempnite, 1334 The marriage
 So grete a gaderyng^t was neuer in that contre ; betwixt him and
 ffor to that fest he bedde his lordes euerychone, Queen Sereyne,
 Theder thei came and ladys many on). 1337
- And whanne the fest was aH to geder don), 1338
 Not long after withynne a liteH space,
 The quene Sereyne was with child full sone
 And whanne tyme came, as god wiH geve hir grace, and in due
 She bare a sonne, a threfte child he was ; time she bare a
 And whanne that he was growe to mannys age, son,
 he was callid IsmaeH the Savage : 1344 Ismael the
 Savage.
- For he was wild in aH his demening^t, 1345
 Vnto the tyme he drew to more sadnesse,
 Thanne afterward he was withoute feyning^t
 A nobyH knyght, the story doth wisse : 1348
 Now late vs thenne speke of Generydes,
 What payn he hadde for fayre clarionas,
 By grete envy of cursid malichias. 1351
 Now let us
 speak of
 Generydes.

- One morning he
went to speak
with his lady. In a mornyng' arose Generydes, 1352
To his lady he toke the way full right,
To speke with hir as for his hartys ease ;
This Malichias of hym) he had a sight, 1355
And after hym), as fast as euer he myght,
ffull secretly he goth hym) to aspye,
hym) for to do sum shame and velanye. 1358
- Malichias hid
in a tree to
hear what
they said,
and told the
Sultan all that
he could say to And to perfourme all his purpose in dede, 1359
Vppe in a tree he stode full secretly,
That what they seid therof he toke good heede,
And to the Sowdon) told it by and by : 1362
And where as he dede noo thyng' ellys trewly,
But spake with hir to telle hir' his entente,
he hym) reportid wers thanne euer he ment, 1365
- her dishonour.
The Sultan
sware they
should die, To hir dishonour all that he cowde say. 1366
Whanne the Sowdon) had knowlage of this case,
he sware his othe ther was non) other waye,
Butt bothe they shuld be dede be goddes grace. 1369
To hym) anon) thanne sayde Malichias,
' Of your' doughter ye may not avenge yow soo,
But as for hym) ye wote what is to do.' 1372
- but could not
kill Generydes
for fear of the
people. Yet in his wraught this thought he euer among', 1373
If he shuld avenge hym) sodenly,
All his pepih wold say he did hym) wrong',
Withoute Iustice to cause hym) so to dye ; 1376
And to eschew the Rumber and the crye,
his purpose thanne he chaungyd all in feere :
And Malichias was wroth in his maner, 1379
- And thought he was mystr[est]ed vtterly, 1380
Be cause the Sowdon) dede not as he ment ;
ffor he was fayn) to think that he shuld dye,

Butt for aH he myst of his entent, Yet in his malice he was so fervent he wold not leve, butt stille alway opece ¹ Dede aH that he cowde to hurt Generydes.	1383	Malichias did not leave his malice
So on) a tyme full streyght he toke the waye To the Sowdon), and seid in this maner ; 'My lord,' quod he, 'ye leve not that I saye, And if it please yow my counceH for to here, Ye shaH haue knowlache of this mater clere.' 'Wele thanne,' quod he, 'if I may fynd it soo, Ye shaH sone wete what I shaH do therto.'	1386 1387 1390 1393	against Generydes.
'In a mornynge', if it please yow to rise,' Quod Malichias, 'I canne say yow nomore, But ² ye shaH se your' self in euery wise The very trougth, as I haue seid before ; And wete ye wiH it grevith me full soore, That ye shuld me mystrest by eny waye, I wold not that for more thanne I wold saye.'	1394 1397 1400	He took the Sultan one morning
The ³ Sowdon) sayde, 'as towchyng this mater, I wolle gladly be after your' avise.' Soo on) a day the wedder was full clere, In a mornynge' the Sowdon) ganne to rise, As erly as he cowde in eny wise ; ffurth on he goth, and with hym) Malichias, Streight to the chaunbour of Clarionas.	1401 1404 1407	to the chamber of Clarionas,
Save Malichias with hym) ther was noo moo, Atte A wyndow they stode hym) to Aspye. Generydes, as he was wont to do, ffuH sone after he came full secretly, As oft tyme As he came; yet trewly he mystrestid neuer erthely man) be fore, Yet As he Stode he Seighed wonder soore.	1408 1411 1414	where they watched the lovers from a window. Generydes was sad

¹ MS. *opece*. Perhaps we should read *alway stille opece*.

² MS. *Be*.

³ MS. *She*.

- To hym) anoñ thanne seid Clarionas, 1415
 ‘Ye seigh gretly, I prae yow telle me why.’
 ‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘for certayn) it was,
 for a dream he had dreamt of Malichias. This nyght I hadde a wonder dreme trewly 1418
 Of Malichias; noo mo but¹ he And I
 Were in A place, this is the certeyn[te],
 And of my clothez ther he robbid me. 1421
- I drew my swerd to reskewe hym) ageyn), 1422
 Butt in that case I myght not haue my wilþ,
 [leaf 8] The Sowdon) came and cast me downe, I wene,
 In a depe pitte, whiche grevid me fuþ iþ : 1425
 With that my swerd owt of myn) hand it fett
 On) Malichias and gave hym suche a wounde
 Vppon) the hede that downe he felle to the grownde.
- Yet cowde I not eskape owt of the pitte, ’ 1429
 ffor aþ the craft that I cowde wele devise ;
 Butt atte last, as god wold fortune it,
 Ye aþ only, and by your’ interprise, 1432
 Owt of daunger ye causid me to rise.’
 To hym) anone thanne seid clarionas,
 ‘I am a ferde,’ quod she, ‘of Malichias ; 1435
- Clarionas also had had a dream. For I dremyd that he wold haue me slayn), 1436
 Save it lay not in his powere to do,
 ffor he purposith) by some maner trayn),
 Whanne he may see a tyme to shew vs woo.’ 1439
- When they had spoken And whanne thei had to geder spokeñ soo,
 Supposyngt wele that aþ had ben) in pece,
 the Sultan took Generydes The Sowdon) came and toke Generydes, 1442
- In grete anger rebukyngt hym) fuþ soore, 1443
 And chargid Malichias in aþ the hast
 To bynd hym) fast, and also ferthermore

¹ MS. *be*.

- That he in prison depe he shuld be cast, 1446 and ordered
 Ther to abide while that his lyff may last ; him to be put
 Or ellys he shuld by¹ Malichias advise in prison.
- Be putte to deth in a right shamefull wise. 1449
- For his doughter he sent full hastily, 1450 His daughter he
 And in his hete gave hir' a grete repress, called by a
 And callid hir, god wote, right shamefully shameful name.
- All other wise thanne he cowde make the preff: 1453
- And in his hert it was an vtter greff,
 ffor he demyd on hir that she ne sought,²
- Whiche afterward full gretely hym for thought. 1456
- Now Generydes goth with Malichias, 1457 Generydes was
 his handes bounden as a prisonere, put in a tower,
- Streight to a towre wherein the prison was ;
- And hym delyueryd onto Anasore, 1460 under the
 A gentill knyght keping the prison ther, charge of
 To kepe hym hard and strayte in his office, Anasore,
- Withoute favour in eny maner wise. 1463
- And for to shew his malys vtterly, 1464
- With strong yrons this cursed Malichias
 he feteryd hym, and that soo greuously and fettered
 The blode sprange owt in many dyuerse places ;³ 1467 grievously by
 And with an hevy hammer that ther was, Malichias.
- On his leggyss so sore he lette hym falle,
 Att euery tyme he brake the skynne with all. 1470
- Thanne Anasar' was wrothe in his maner, 1471
- And in this wise seid to Malichias,
 'Ye do me wrong, sithe I am keper' here,
 To do that is myn office in this case ; 1474
- ffor his offence⁴ or how that [euer] it was,
 It is agayn all reson in certayne,
 To do [to] hym this importabil' payn.' 1477

¹ MS. *be by*. ² So MS. ; perhaps for *that he ne ought*.³ So MS. ; perhaps for *place*.⁴ MS. *office*.

- For noo prayer yet wold he neuer sece, 1478
 But trewely did as he did before :
- Longer suffer myght not Generydes,
 Nor nought he wold thow he shuld die¹ therefore, 1481
 And with his fist he smote hym wonder soore,
 That bothe his eyne owt of his hede ganne falle,
 And sodenly he died furth with a h. 1484
- At length
 Generydes smote
 him that he died.
- The keeper
 gave out
- And whanne the keper sawe that he was dede, 1485
 Thanne was he sory for Generydes ;
 If it were knowen that he were don to ded,
 The Sowdon wold be wroth withouten lese, 1488
 Owt of reason that noman cowde hym sese :
 Wherefore he founde a meane to his entente,
 By there avise that were with hym present. 1491
- How² Malichias whanne he came fro the towre, 1492
 And don that the Sowdon bad hym do,
 his fete fayled in vnhappy oure,
 And down he felle and brake his nek in ij ; 1495
 And for to make a preff that it was soo,
 They toke hym vppe and layde hym soft and fayr,
 Down Atte lowest foote of a h the stayre. 1498
- that he fell down-
 stairs and brake
 his neck.
- Thus were they a h accordyd euerychone, 1499
 Generydes to quyte a h vtterly ;
 Among them a h ther was on,
- A knight Darell
- A knyght that alway was in companye 1502
 With anasor, and lovyd hym trewly ;
 And as he wold the toder wold the same
 In euery thing, and dare h was his name. 1505
- was chief of the
 council in this
 matter,
- In this mater he was chef of counce h 1506
 With anasor to helpe Generydes :
 he bad hym goo and in no wise to fayle

¹ MS. *did*.² MS. *Now*.

- To the Sowdon, and telle hym the processe, 1509 and Anasore
 And he wold be¹ on of his cheff witnessse. went to tell the
 Thanne anosor' ther as the Sowdon was Sultan,
 ffuht sone he went, and told hym all the case. 1512
- Yet or [that] he departyd was and gone, 1513
 ffuht streyte he went vnto Generydes, first having
 And of his bandis losed hym anon, loosed Generydes.
- That he somewhat myght be att his hartes ease. 1516
 ffor though² ther were a noyse among the prese,
 Yet wist he wele as for fayre Clarionas,
 That he was no thing^t guilty in that case. 1519
- Furth in his waye goth now the Chastelyn, 1520
 And to the Sowdon saide in this maner :
 'I shaht yow telle of a ventur' certeyn, He tells his tale,
 And that a strange, if it please yow to here, 1523
 hough Malichias, withynne my office here,
 Toke vppon hym as for Generydes
 All that ye bad me do withoute lease. 1526
- And ouer that he dede fuht trewely, 1527
 With strong Irons and feteryd hym fuht sore,³
 The blode ranne owt and that fuht peteuously ;
 Whanne he had don, to seye yow ferthermore, 1530 [leaf 8, back]
 Downne of the greses he felle the hede before,
 And brake his nek, it myght non other be,
 ffor this he died in very certeynte.' 1533
- Whanne the Sowdon hard this, I yow be hight 1534 and the Sultan
 Ther myght no man be wrother thanne was he, was wroth and
 'What, serys !' he seith, 'this goth not All a right : suspicious,
 Thow Chastelyn, in what wise may this be ? 1537
 All this is done but for a sotilte,
 To hide your' falshede vnder a coverture,
 But he shaht dye to morow be ye sure.' 1540

¹ MS. *he*.² MS. *thought*.³ MS. *fast*.

To hym) anon) answered the Chastelyn) ; 1541
 ' Ser, if it please your' lordshepe for to here,
 ffor your' wurchippe yow most your' self reteyne,
 And take a good avise in this mater, 1544
 See that your' grounde be very good and clere,
 To your' entente accordeng' to the same,
 Or ellys it is but slaunder to your' name.' 1547

The more he spak the more he lost his payn) ; 1548
 Whanne Anasar' saw that he went his wey :
 The Sowden) callid fourth) his chaumberleyn),
 ' Goo,' quod he, ' as fast as euer ye may, 1551
 And see that Malichias in good arraye
 Be caryed thens, ther as his body is,
 To the temple in honorabiH wise.' 1554

and ordered
 Malichias to be
 buried.

Now gotH the chaumberlayn) furth on) his way, 1555
 With aH the hoole howse att his comaundment,
 And whanne they came ther as the body lay,
 It for to bery after ther entent, 1558
 Ther they founde it with hundes alto rent,
 Some rede, some blak, and some of dyuerse hude,
 Ther cowde no man) nownber the multitude. 1561

His body was
 found torn to
 pieces by hounds.

Eche of them) bare a pece away, 1562
 Of flessH ne boon) ther was no thyng behynd ;
 The chammerleyn) whanne he sawe that arraye,
 he went furth) sore musyng in his mynde, 1565
 And told the Sowdon) as he shuld it fynde ;
 In every thyng thanne was he grevid soore,
 And more wrother thanne he was before. 1568

The Sultan was
 more wroth,

Thanne for his lordes¹ furth) with aH he sent, 1569
 That they² shuld come withoute eny fayle :
 Whanne they were come anon) incontynent,

¹ MS. *lordes thanne.*

² MS. *he.*

- Generydes was brought owt of the Iayle, 1572 and sent for
 ffuH sore aferd as it was noo mervah ; Generydes,
 And ther he stode before them euerychone,
 Right in this wise the Sowdon sayde anon : 1575
- ‘This felaw her, this yong man that ye see, 1576 whom he accused
 Generydes,’ he saide, ‘that is his name ; before his lords
 he was suerly the man that plesid me,
 Wenyingt to me that he hadde be the same ; 1579
 Butte now he hath don me an vtter shame,
 ffor he hath done my doughter villanye, of seducing his
 And layne be hir I sey yow certenly. 1582 daughter.
- I saw hym speke with hir in secrete wise, 1583
 Wherefore I wote it may non other be ;
 And I shaH wele aquyte hym his seruice,
 ffor he shaH dye therfore, now trostith me ; 1586
 That other may ensampyH take and see,
 To be ware how they in suche case
 here afterward offende in eny place.’ 1589
- With that anon answerd Generides : 1590
 ‘My lord,’ quod he, ‘if ye cause me to dye,
 Ye do me wrong, I take god to my witesse ; Generydes offered
 And wele I wote ther is no reasone whye, 1593 to prove this
 ffor in this poynt I am no thyng gilty, false,
 And that I shaH make good, I yow ensure,
 On knyght or Squyer whiH my lyff endure.’ 1596
- Whanne the Sowdon had hard aH that he seid ; 1597
 ‘Trowist thu to fyghH,’ quod he, ‘as in this case ?
 Nay think it not, thy bost shaH sone be layde,
 ffor thu shalt [dye] to morow withoute grace, 1600
 And what that euer be withynne this place,
 That wolle for the entrete in eny wise, but the Sultan
 he shaH not spede I yow promysse. 1603 urged his lords

- to condemn him
to death. Wherefore I wold ye gave your' fuH assent 1604
Among yow aH this processe to fulfille,
Accordeng' plenly to that Iugement.'
- All were silent
but Anasore And ther withaH the lordes were ful stille, 1607
And seid noo word neyther good nee iH,
Thanne Atte last the Chastelyn alone,
like as a knyght spake afore them euerychone : 1610
- 'My lordes AH,' he seid, 'hougH may this be? 1611
This is a thyng whiche I neuer sawe,
The Sowdon doth vs wrong, As thinkith me,
To make vs deme a man withoute lawe ; 1614
And for my part, for favour or for awe,
I shaH neuer assent to this mater,
Consideryng what he hath proferyd her.' 1617
- Thanne was the Sowdon owt of pacience 1618
With Anasor', And spake fuH hastely ;
'Ye are,' quod he, 'to bold in my presence,
Ayenst my wiH to speke so vtterly, 1621
It is noo sygne of very loue trewly,
Not withstondeng I wote wele what ye mene,
But troste me wele it goo not as ye wene.' 1624
- and Darell, who
took the part of
Generydes. Thanne came DareH and putt hym self in prese, 1625
Where here be fore rehersid is by name,
Of nobyH kynne he was withouten lese,
The more bolder he was to take a blame 1628
In this mater accordyng' to the same ;
And in this wise he seid be fore them aH,
And to the Sowdon in especiaH : 1631
- 'As for my felawe her, the Chastelayn, 1632
I haue merveh that he rebukith hym soo ;
And wele I wote that he hath don his payn,

- ffor your' pleasur' in aH that he cowde doo, 1635
 And vtterly this wiH I saye also,
 he that wiH do Generydes a shame,
 I yow ensure he shaH do me the same.' 1638
- Thanne to the Sowdon) furth with aH they went, 1639
 The lordes and the knyghtes euerychone, The lords then
 prayed the
 Sultan to
 respite the
 judgment.
 And prayed hym) to respite the Iugement,
 ffor certainly his wurchippe laye ther on) ; 1642
 And wele they wist that reson) was ther [n]on),
 A man) to deme, in eny maner case,
 Withoute lawe and in so litiH space. 1645
- The Sowdon) was as wrothe as he myght be, 1646
 That in noo wise he wist not what to saye ; The Sultan
 was wroth,
 Thanne was ther on), the Story tellith me,
 A knyght whiche hadde be with hym) many a day,
 And wele cheryshed with hym) he was Alway, but was pre-
 vailed upon by
 Lucas,
 like as he wold the Sowdon) wold the same
 In euery thyngt, and Lucas was his name. 1652
- Vnto the Sowdon) he seid thus anon) : 1653
 ' Me think, *ser*, as ferre as I canne fele,
 These lordes and these knyghtes euerychone
 In this mater they haue not seyde but wele, 1656
 hasty processe wiH shende it euery dele,
 Avise yow wele and do be good counceH,
 And that shaH gretly yow honour and provaile.' 1659
- Whanne the Sowdon) had hard hym) euery dele, 1660
 Withynne a while he was right temperate,
 Of aH his wordes he remembryd wele,
 And with hym) self he was half atte debate ; 1663
 he thought he wold noo more be obstenate,
 And gaue them) respite be fore them euerychon),
 TiH one and xx^{ti} dayes were come and goon). 1666 and gave a
 respite of xxi
 days.

- Therof was aH the felashepe fuH fayn), 1667
 And wele content that he hadde suche [grace]
 Generydes went to prisone went ayeyn),
 Atte hartes ease meche better thanne he was ; 1670
 ffor Anasore hadde graunt hym) aH the place
 ffor his Disporte, to take it as hym) list,
 In hym) he hadde no maner of mystrest. 1673
- Whille he was stille in prisone a bideng), 1674
 his thought was aH on) Clarionas ;
 And euer in his mynd remembryng),
 how fayre¹ of hewe and womanly she was ; 1677
 And if he myght stonde in so good a case,
 hir to reioyse and haue hir atte his wissH,
 Of aH his payne he wold not sett a rissh. 1680
- She was vppe on) A chaunbyr stiH opece, 1681
 And euery man) that passid to and fro
 She askyd fast aftur Generydes,
 In very trougth if he were dede or noo ; 1684
 They seid he was ageyn) to prisone goo,
 And was a lyue they knewe it for certayn),
 The whiche some what conforte[d] hir Ayeyn). 1687
- The Sowdon) charge[d] them to kepe the day, 1688
 In eny wise what thing that euer fah):
 And so they dede his pleasure to obeye,
 Theder they came ichon) in generaH ; 1691
 Thanne was the place to litiH for them) aH,
 Wherefore the Sowdon) anon) dede ordeyne
 A larger place aH owt vppon) the playn). 1694
- And for to determytte this mater, 1695
 Generydes was brought out of the gaile ;
 The Sowdon) thanne rehersid thanne in fere

Generydes was
brought out
of prison,

¹ MS. *good fayre.*

- his displeasur' withoute eny fayle, 1698 and the Sultan
 hough he myght best to his entente prevaile ; related his
 And sodenly, among them euerychone, displeasure,
 ffurth with ther came a massanger anon), 1701
- In hast[y] wise as fast as he cowde ride, 1702
 And to the Sowdon he seid, right in this wise :
 ' I am not come my message for to hide, when a mes-
 But boldly for to telle you myn) avise. 1705 senger came
 Ther is' a kyng not ferre from) thise partise, from the King
 In aH contres ther as men) riden) and goon),
 Vnder hevyn) so grete ther levith non). 1708
- Kyng' of Egipte he is, the soth to saye, 1709 of Egypt,
 And haue merveh, sithe ye be hold soo wise,
 That ye so long haue putte it in delaye,
 And come not furth to offer your' seruice ; 1712
 Wherefore he wilh that ye in eny wise
 Yeld vppe your' land att his comaund[e]ment,
 And vtterly obey to his entent : 1715 demanding the
 Sultan's land,
- And for to take avise in this mater, 1716
 he grauntith yow a moneth day of space,
 And by that day to geve a playn answee,
 As ye wilh be demeanyd in this case ; 1719
 And your' doughter also clarionas, and his daughter.
 I counceH yow to send hir to the kyng,
 ffor your' ease and welefare in tyme comyng.' 1722
- Whanne he hadde seid his message aH in feere, 1723
 The Sowdon) was displeasid for certayn) ;
 And furth with aH he chargid Anasar',
 To take with hym) Generydes ayeyn), 1726
 And ther to kepe hym) suerly on) A payn),
 ffor he myght not procede furmabely,
 Because the tidyngez came so hastely. 1729

- ‘ Now telle what maner a man) is he,’ 1730
 Seid the Sowdon), ‘ that is of suche powre ;
 [leaf 9, back] And sey me now the very certente.’
 To hym) anon) thanne seid the Massenger, 1733
 ‘ If it please yow to wete, that ye shaH here :
 Belen the bold his name is ouer aH,
 Belen the Bold is the King of Egypt’s name. And kyng of kyngges now men) do hym) calle ; 1736
- His loggyng is vppon) a fayre Ryuer, 1737
 Callid teger, not ferre owt of this cost ;
 And there he lith wiH riht a grete powre,
 his owne persone and also aH his oste ; 1740
 he wiH that it be knowen) to lith¹ And most,
 That fro that grownde he wiH nott part Away,
 TiH he haue redy word what ye² wiH saye.’ 1743
- The Sultan refused his daughter,
 The Sowdon) thanne gave Answere furth wiH aH, 1744
 And in this wise seid to the massanger ;
 ‘ Of my doughter, as for the principaH,
 I lete yow wete, for pleasur’ nec for fere 1747
 Think not ther on), for she shaH not come ther’,
 Nother in no nother place I yow ensure,
 The whiche myght sownne onto here dishonour. 1750
- and for the rest of the message,
 As for the Remenaunte of your’ message, 1751
 Be cause I wiH not lette yow of your’ waye,
 Whanne euer ye wiH ye may take your’ viage,
 ffor your’ Answere I wiH that ye shaH sey, 1754
 he would answer it in a month.
 I wiH send word withynne a moneth day
 Vnto your’ prince, where euer he be present,
 AH vtterly the fyne of myn) entent.’ 1757
- The messenger left, and the Sultan consulted his lords,
 The massanger anon) he toke his leue, 1758
 And furth) he went whanne he hadde his answer’.
 The Sowdon) anon) he ganne his counceH to meve

¹ MS. *likill*.• ² MS. *he*.

- Of that mater that towchid hym) soo nere, 1761
 And Askid ther avise in this mater,
 Not on) nor twayne, but aH in generaH,
 Thanne spake *ser* DareH, and Answerd furthi *with* AH :
- ' These lordes here, that ben) of *your* counceH 1765
 And my falow, and I be on Assent
 In that mater to se what may *prevaile*,
 As we seme ¹ best we shaH shewe our' entent.' 1768
 Thanne spake lucas anon) encontinent,
 ' Ser, doughit ye not,' *quod* he, ' in this case
 It shaH be purvayde fore with goddes *grace* ; 1771
- Sithe tyme of mend this land ded neuer soo, 1772 who advised
him to resist
Belen,
 And as for vs we wiH not [now] begynne.'
 his lordes aH Assentid wele therto,
 And thought that lucas seid right wele therin. 1775
 ' We trost,' *quod* they, ' the victory for to wynne,
 Vppon) that prince so myghti in his strength,
 Or ij monethys be fully drawe o length. 1778
- But this we wiH require yow euerychone, 1779
 To shew your' grace on to Generydes ; and to release
Generydes.
 ffor wele we wote offence he hath do non),
 Vs thynk he shuld the soner haue his pece ; 1782
 We yow beseche your rancour for to sese,²
 ffor att this tyme he may do good *seruice*,
 And suche as shaH please yow in euery wise. 1785
- And in this wise, yf it please yow to here, 1786
 Be myn) avise ye shaH send³ for your ost :
 And these 'lordes that ben) with yow here,
 lett them) send for ther men) in euery cost, 1789
 In aH ther best array both) lesse and most ;
 And so shaH yow, with aH your' baronage,
 Defende your' lande that it pay noo trewage.' 1792

¹ So MS. ? *deme*.² MS. *sese*.³ MS. *sent*.

- That I wold fayn on hym haue ben wreke ; 1824
 With your' licence his purpose shaH I breke,
 And if I may your' pleasure vnderstonde,
 With that prowde kyng' I wiH fight hand be hand. 1827
 and offers to
 fight the king
 of Egypt hand
 to hand.
- He shaH not do your' daughter dishonour, 1828
 As long as god wiH send me lyff and space ;
 Nor of his pride shaH neuer come that our'
 That ye shaH paye tribute, be goddis grace, 1831
 This land shaH neuer' stande in suche case ;
 And if ye geve me leve, withoute fayle
 ffor aH his strength I wiH hym onys assayle.' 1834
- Whanne the Sowdon had hard hym sey so wiH, 1835
 ' Generydes,' quod he, ' I geue yow grace,
 AH myn eviH wiH I for geve euery deele,
 And ye to stonde in soo good a case 1838
 As euer ye dede withynne eny place ;
 ffor now I know that ye, in euery wise,
 haue contynued fuH trew in your' seruice. 1841
- And ferthermore, withoute more dalay, 1842
 To morow suerly I wiH make yow a knyght ;
 And for your' sake an hundred more that day
 Ther shaH be made, and then with goddes myght 1845
 I shaH purvay as for the landes right,
 It to defende, and that it may be clere
 ffrom aH seruage and clene owt of daunger.' 1848
 and promised
 on the morrow :
 to make him a
 knight.
- Thanne was his thought vppon Clarionas, 1849
 Sithe he hir saughe hym thought passing long ;
 That she myght stonde in his favour' and grace¹
 like as she dede, for he had don hir wrong' ; 1852
 And that he cowde remembre euer among' :
 Wherefore he thought hir to recompence,
 he sendith for hir to come to his presence. 1855

¹ MS. *his grace*.

- Thanne Anasore was chargid for to goo 1856
 Vnto the chaunbyr of fayre Clarionas,
 To bryng her furth the Sowdon bad hym) soo,
 That euery man) myght see withynne the place, 1859
 hough wele she stode with hym) in euery case :
 And whanne she came befoore hym), for certayn),
 The Sowdon) toke hir in his armys twayn). 1862
- and took her
 in his arms.
- ‘ Doughter,’ he seid, ‘ for yow I am to blame, 1863
 ffuH wrongfully to me ye were accusid,
 And not gilty I wiH recorde the same,
 To say the soth it may not be refusid ; 1866
 So hold I yow aH vtterly excusid
 In euery thing¹; and here, or where ye be,
 Att AH tymes right wele come on) to me.’ 1869
- Clarionas was fayn) whanne this was doo, 1870
 Of hym) she toke hir leve fuH curtesly ;
 Thanne was Generydes fuH glad also,
 Be cause hir pece was made so trewly : 1873
 And as she went he cast on) hir his Iee,
 So as he durst, to saue hym) self fro blame,
 And she ayenward Aquyte hym) with the same. 1876
- Thanne was ther sone Assigned knyghtez twayn) 1877
 To bryng hir to hir chaumber furth with AH,
 And on) the morow the Sowdon) for certayn)
 With his lordes he come in to the haH, 1880
 And ther anone [among] his knyghtez aH,
 And, soth to say, the first of eny man)
 Generides the order ther beganne. 1883
- Next day
 he assembled
 his knights,
- Generydes the
 first of any.
- They took
 their leave,
 and went to
 make ready.
- The lordes toke ther leve on) be on), 1884
 To make them) redy atte ther owyn) devise ;
 The ffelischepe departid euerychon)

¹ MS. *think*.

- To goo and come ageyn to ther *seruice*, 1887
 And every man in defensable wise,
 hors and harnes withoute eny more delay,
 To muster withynne a moneth day. 1890
- Furst the Sowdon sent his letters owt, 1891
 With massengers as fast as they cowde ride, The Sultan sent
 letters to the
 kings and
 princes
 To kynges and to princes aȝt aboutȝt,
 The nexst that were marching on every side, 1894
 Desireng them armour to provide
 And in aȝt goodly hast for them he sende¹
 To come to hym his contre to defende. 1897 to help him.
- These *lettres* came on to these princez aȝt, 1898
 hym for to helpe they grauntid euerychone,
 Whanne they were come, furst in especiaȝt
 Croves the kyng of Arabye was on; 1901 There came
 Croves, king
 of Arabia,
 .ij. thousand knyghtes came with hym alone,
 Be side archers a nowmbyr full notabyȝt,
 Whiche for werre Were right good men and able. 1904
- The kyng^t was wele in age I yow ensur^t, 1905
 And anasor^t his sone was for certeyn father of Anasor,
 A goodly prince and comly of stature ;
 Of his comeng^t the Sowdon was fayn; 1908
 Notwithistondyng it was to hym a payn
 So ferre owt of his contre to travaȝt,
 But his promesse was suche he wold not fayle. 1911
- Nexst after hym ther came owt of turkey 1912 a prince of
 Turkey, and
 his two sons,
 A myghti prince, and with hym people grete,
 A thousand helmys with hym in companye,
 O[f] his contre the best that he cowde gete, 1915
 his sonnes bothe with hym were not² for yete,
 And for to sey yow soȝh, and not to feyn,
 Trewly they were full semely knygthez twayn; 1918

¹ MS. *sent*.

² MS. *not ferre*.

- Off grete wurchippe and of right nobiſh fame, 1919
 David and Abell, The eldest highſt *ser* Daudi, as I rede,
 The yonger sone *ser* Abeſh was his name,
 Whiche of his enmys ¹ had but litiſh drede ; 1922
 The kyng hym) self was a leſt man) in dede,
 Also he louyd wele fayre Clarionas,
 Butt she hadde sette hir hert in other place. 1925
- the king of
 Caesarea, Thanne came the prince of Cesare sone vppon), 1926
 With vij hundred knyghtes of his own) lande ;
 [leaf 10, back] The Story seith his name was Cherydone,
 Cherydone, the father of And *ser* Dareſh his sonne was, I vnderſtonde : 1929
 Darell, This prince was hold full manly of his hande,
 his archers and his foote men) wele arrayed,
 The Sowdon) of hym) was right wele apayd. 1932
- Obeth, king
 of Sicily, Thanne came the forthit, whiche was of Sesiſh kyng,
 A wurthy prince, And Obeth was his name ;
 .v. honderyd knyghtes he dede with hym) bringt,
 And men) a foote accordeng^t to the same ; 1936
 The prince hym) self of good and noble fame,
 Theder to come he was right wele content,
 As sone as he his lettres to hym) sent. 1939
- the king of
 Nicomedia,
 Esaunce,
 (with 3000 men as
 black as coal,) Nexst after come the kyng of Nicomede, 1940
 iij. thousand men) he brought on) to the Citee ;
 As blak as cole icheon) thei² were in dede,
 Save only ther tethe ther was noo white to see, 1943
 Strong men) they were the story tellith it me :
 Esaunce he highſt, the story doth witnessse,
 A curtese knyght and full of gentilnes. 1946
- the king of
 Ethiopia, From) Ethiope ther came another kyng, 1947
 ij thowsand knyghtes att his gouernaunce,
 With³ meche pepiſh on) foote Att his leding :

¹ MS. *elmys*.² MS. *ther*.³ MS. *Whiche*.

- Thanne after came A riaH ordenaunce, 1950
 Too myghty princes with a grete pusaunce,
 fro Masedeyn and owt of Arkadye,
 Ther cowde no man the nowmber specifie. 1953
and the princes
of Macedon
and Arcadia,
- Thanne came Moab, of Capadoor the kyng, 1954
 To the Sowdon as fast as he cowde hye
 With ij knyghtes in felashepe rideng,
 Balam the tone And yeferus trewly, 1957
 The kyng of Damask and of Ermonyne,
 Of knyghtes wel Arrayed with spere and Shelde,
 xv. thowsand they brought in to the feld. 1960
Moab, the king
of Cappadocia,

the kings of
Damascus and
of Ermonyne,
- Sone after come the kyng of orkenay, 1961
 In his companye ther came also
 Another kyng in good riche Arraye;
 And after hym ther came ij kynggez moo, 1964
 O thirde CesaH the kyng was on of thoo;
 And what peopyH they brought among them three,
 Mynne Auctour seith it is a wonder to see. 1967
the king of
Orkney, and
after him two
kings more,

and a third Cesall,
- Now haue I here rehersid in substaunce 1968
 xv kynges, As shortly as I myght,
 With ther powre and AH ther hoole pusaunce,
 Whiche was so grete, to sey yow very right, 1971
 The Cite myght resseyue them day ne nyght;
 Butt vnder nethe a woode withoute the town,
 Ther was sette vppe the Sowdones pavilyon 1974
and met in a
wood without
the town.
The Sultan's
pavillon
- Vppon A playn, and made of silk and gold 1975
 As richely as thei cowde wele ordeyne,
 With many moo full goodly to beholde,
 And tentys large, full riche and wele besen, 1978
 And who so had be thence a myle or twayn,
 Vppon the feld to loke or cast his Ie,
 It shuld hym seme a town or A Citee. 1981
was set up on a
plain,

with many more.

Upon a time the Sultan went	Vppon a tyme the seaso ⁿ e was fayre, With his lordes the Sowdon ⁿ toke the waye, Owt of the Cite to take the ayre, In the feld vppon ⁿ a Somerys day,	1982 1985
to see the host,	And for to see the Ost in ther arraye ; Beholdyng them ⁿ with countenaunce right stabi ⁿ h, hym ⁿ semyd they were pepi ⁿ h innumerable.	1988
and told them of the king of Egypt's demand	Thanne seid he thus vnto them ⁿ euerychon, That were princes and other lordes a ⁿ h, ' In this contre,' quod he, ' ther is come on), And kyng of kyngges thus he doth ⁿ hym ⁿ calle, Whiche thing may neuer in my reaso ⁿ e falle ; ffor ther may non ⁿ be suche in dede ne thought, Butt he that fourmed a ⁿ h this world of nou ⁿ ght.	1989 1992 1995
for tribute.	Also he askid tr[i]bute of this land, Whiche may not be, what case that euer fall ⁿ .'	1996
	The forrest ganne to speke, I vnderstonde, The kyngges sonne of turkey furth ⁿ with a ⁿ h ;	1999
Sir Abell said,	A semely prince, ser abe ⁿ h they do hym ⁿ calle, Vnto the Sowdon ⁿ sone he gaue ¹ answer ⁿ , As these wordes he seid as ye sha ⁿ h here :	2002
the land of Persia should pay no tribute.	' As for the land of perse, this wi ⁿ th I saye, It ou ⁿ ght to paye noo tribute in noo wise ; Ne our ⁿ enmys sha ⁿ h neuer see the day, ffor we are strongge I now I yow promys	2003 2006'
We will meet the Egyptians in the field.	Too kepe it from ⁿ a ⁿ h suche maner seruice ; And for to make it good with spere and Sheld, Goo we to morow and mete them ⁿ in the feld.	2009
	Do as ye leke, for this is my counce ⁿ h ; Besechyng yow to be remembryd here, That whanne the lande of perse hath gevyn ⁿ bate ⁿ h,	2010

¹ MS. *gaue an.*

- Of tyme passid before in many yere, 2013
 My lord and fader hath ben) Banyere,
 And in the formest bateH for to be
 he and his ayeris claymeth it of dewte. 2016
- Also to be made constabiH of your' ost, 2017 Let me be the
 And the voward to haue in gouernaunce, constable of
 ffor to Turkey of right it longith most ; your host,
 Beseching yow with vmbles obeysaunce, 2020
 Of your' lordshipe ye list so it Avaunce,
 That I may [bere] withoute envy or blame
 The formest baner in my faders name.' 2023 and standard-
 bearer.'
- Anon) with aH the Sowdon) gaue answere ; 2024 [leaf 11]
 'AH your' desire I graunt, it is but right.' The Sultan
 The kyng hym) thankid in full curtes maner, granted him
 Thanne to ther tentys sone they ganne them) dight, his
 And dressid aH ther harnes ouer nyght, desire.
 That they myght on) the morow withoute fayle
 AH maner men) be redy to BateH. 2030
- Whanne it was day, forward they ganne them) dresse 2034 At daybreak
 In bright harnes these princes euerychone, they made them
 With other dyuerce lordes more and lesse, ready for batt'le,
 Of Dukes and Erles and Barons anon),
 Ther helmes garnysshed that they had vpon), 2034
 With perlys and dyamauntez of price,
 Ther course[r]s trappid in the fressest wise. 2037
- In the Citee through owt in euery strete 2038
 Ther was grete noyse of pepiH aH aboutH,
 To dresse them) fourth ther enmys for to mete,
 And sone vpon) withoute eny dought 2041
 ffor the Citee the Sowdon) passid owt,
 And rideth streyte to his pavilion),
 With lordes aboutH hym) in euery rome. 2044 and went out
 of the city,

	And whanne that they were redy to goo,	2045
	And A ^H assemelid in a companye,	
60,000 strong.	ij skore thowsand they were withoute moo.	
	Thanne were ordeyned the wardes by and by ;	2048
The foremost ward the king of Turkey had with	The formest warde A ^H redy for to gye	
	The kyng ^t of Turkey had in gouernaunce,	
	Be very right of his enheritaunce.	2051
8000 knights ;	Thre thowsand knyghtes att his demening ^t ,	2052
	Be side Archers and foote men ⁿ that were <i>ther</i> ,	
	And As his graunt was atte begynneng ^t ,	
	his sonne <i>ser</i> Abe ^H he was baneer.	2055
	The secunde ward, to certifie yow here,	
	Was putte on ⁿ to the kyng ^t of Araby,	
the king of Arabia had the second, with 2000 ;	ij thowsand knyghtez in his companye.	2058
the third, Sir Anasore and Generydes,	The iij ^{de} ward ^t ther in was ser Anasore,	2059
	And with ⁿ hym was Generydes also,	
	And A ^H the new made knyghtez they were thore, ¹	
with 1500 ;	And xv hundred men ⁿ withoute moo,	2062
	Of chosen ⁿ men ⁿ what euer they shuld do,	
	A ^H vnder nethe bothe the rule of more ² and lesse,	
	Of Anasore and [of] Generydes.	2065
Cherydone was fourth,	The prince of Cesare, callid cherydone,	2066
	he was the iiij th , a ^H in Another ward,	
	his felisshepe wele be sene echon,	
with 1000 knights waiting on him ; next came the king of Sicily and 3000 knights ;	A thowsand knyght[ez] wayteng ^t on ⁿ his gar ^t .	2069
	Thanne came the kyng of Ceset ^H afterward ^t ,	
	ij thowsand knyghtez in his companye,	
	With Archers and foote men ⁿ by and by.	2072
the king of Nicomedia	Nexst after hym came the kyng of Nycomede,	2073
	V thowsand knyghtes, wonder to behold,	
	ffull begely shapen ⁿ bothe in lengeth And brede,	

¹ MS. *y^r*.² So MS. ? *the rule bothe more.*

- As blak as coole, as I befoore haue told, 2076
 The vj^{te} bateH to rule it as he wold,
 And as in writeng in fynde¹ remembraunce,
 Was putte hooly on to his gouernaunce. 2079
 ruled the sixth
 battle;
- The kyng of Ethiope, with pepiH grete, 2080
 The vij^{te} ward he hadd in gouernaunce,
 fuH wele purveid his enmys for to mete ;
 And in the viij^{te} ward, to saye yow the substaunce,
 iij kyng[ez] moo, with aH ther ordenaunce,
 Of Masedoyne and other kynges twayne,
 With moche peopiH to sey yow the certayn. 2086
 the king of
 Ethiopia had the
 seventh; .
 the king of
 Macedon and
 two others the
 eighth;
- The ix^{te} ward the kyng of Capadoce, 2087
 With the nowmber of knygh^{te}z iij thowsand,
 fuH wele wellyd to werre vppon ther foys ;
 The x^{te} batayH kyng Balam toke on hond, 2090
 With iij thowsand knygh^{te}z I vnderstonde ;
 The xj^{te} ward² therin was zepherus,
 A myghti prince in armys corageus. 2093
 the ninth, the
 king of Cappa-
 docia ;
 the tenth, king
 Balam ;
 the eleventh,
 Zephyrus ;
- The xij^{te} ward the kyng of Orkenaye, 2094
 With grete peopiH I say yow sekerly ;
 The xij^{te}, the southly³ for to say,
 Kyng⁴ phares with a nobiH companye ; 2097
 The last saue on the kyng of Barbary.
 These iij princes hadde after ther entente
 vj thowsand knygh^{te}z in ther poyntement. 2100
 the king of
 Orkney twelfth ;
 the thirteenth,
 King Phares ;
 the last but one
 the king of
 Barbary.
- The last bateH therin the Sowdon was, 2101
 iij thowsand knygh^{te}z with hym ther were,
 Some of his lande and some of dyuerce place,
 And euery man wele dressid in his geere ; 2104
 In that bateH DareH was Baner,
 And as the story seith in euery wise
 he was a likely knygh^t for that Office. 2107
 and Darell his
 standard-bearer.

¹ So MS. ? *I fynde.* ² MS. *was.* ³ So MS. ? *southe,*

- Anon) with all ther Baneres were displayed, 2108
 It was a royal sight to see them arrayed.
 A riatt sight it was to behold,
 Eche of them) wele horsid and arrayed,
 And in ther harnes dressid as they wold, 2111
 Ther cote Armers of siluer and of gold ;
 And so forward they partid all in feere,
 The trompettys blew, it was A Ioye to here. 2114
- Now let us turn again to the [leaf 11, back] mighty king.
 Now late vs leue them rideng on the way, 2115
 And to this myghti kyng turne we agayn,
 Hough he purveith in all that euer he may,
 And in what wise that he may best ordeyne, 2118
 Of euery ward to make a capteyn,
 ffirst he appoynted in especiaht,
 hym) self was in the formest of them) all. 2121
- He was in the foremost ward.
 Three kynggez were with hym) in companye, 2122
 with him,
 Also he hadde of¹ knyghtes vj. thowsand,
 And in nowmber as many by and by,
 In euery warde was poynted afore hand, 2125
 And by writeng as I vnderstonde ;
 and Gwynan his son, standard-bearer.
 Gwynan his sonne, whiche was full dere,
 Of his bateht he made hym) Banere. 2128
- Then came Sir Amelok, king of India,
 Thanne came *ser* Amelok, the kyng of ynd, 2129
 Whiche lande, god wote, full traytoru[s]ly he wanne,
 And vntrewly, the story makith mynde,
 who betrayed king Auferius.
 Betrayed his prince whiche was a nobiht man). 2132
 The secunde ward *ser* Amelok beganne
 With meche pepiht, to say yow certenly,
 ij kynges mo were in his companye. 2135
- Sanyk,
 So forthermore thanne came the kyng Sanyk 2136
 king of Africa,
 Nexst afterward, and with hym) kynggez twayn) ;
 A myghti prince, and kyng² of Auferyk,³

¹ MS. *haddes f.*² MS. *kyng he was.*³ MS. *Anseryk.*

And fader to the queene of ynde certayn),	2139	
The whiche forsoke hir husbond be a trayn):		
This prince hadde in his rewle and gouernaunce		
The iij ^{de} bateH with aH the ordenaunce.	2142	had the third battle;
The iij ^{te} bateH to rule and to ordeyne	2143	the king of Thrace the fourth;
Madane ¹ hadde it, whiche was kyng of Trace ;		
And as myn) Auctour specifieth certayn		
RiHt yong And fressh a lest man) he was.	2146	
And in the v ^{te} ther came Barachias,		the fifth, Barachias, king of Europe;
Kyng of Europe, and suche a companye		
As euery ward was poynted by and by.	2149	
Nexst after hym) came Ermones the kyng,	2150	the sixth, king Ermones,
The vj ^{te} BateH to gouerne as he wold,		
ffuH boustous folk and iH faryng,		with men
With visages fowle, fuH gresely to beholde,	2153	
AH of on) sorte they were both yong and old,		
Ther bakkes and ther belly were soo large,		so big that horses could not carry them,
Ther was noo hors of them wold bere the charge ;	2156	
Wherefore they rode on) camelys euerychon),	2157	so they rode on camels,
Think wele it was a vounderfuH array,		
ffor as for spere or swerd they handelid non),		
Ther wepons were more stronger, I yow say,	2160	and had weapons (see p. 80) like mattocks, with long helves;
lyke as mattokez Shapyn) so were they,		
Ther helvys long, that whanne they shuld fight		
Ther strokes shuld come with grete wight.	2163	
Two kynges moo were in his company,	2164	
Of suche making and of on) maner kynd.		
The vij ^{te} ward the kyng of Assirye,		the seventh, Galad, king of Assyria;
Galad he hight in story, as I fynde,	2167	
A prince worthy for to [be] had in mynd ;		
The viij ^{te} BateH therin was manassen,		the eighth, Manassen;
And vnder hym) was his sone ruben).	2170	

¹ MS. *Madame*.

- the ninth,
Lamadone,
king of Libya;
the tenth,
Auferius,
king of India,
- The kyng of lybie, callid lamadone, 2171
The ix^{te} warde hadde att his leding^t ;
And the x^{te}, the last of euerychone,
Was auferius, the welebelouyd kyng 2174
That was of ynd, and ther had his dwellyng
TiH he was putte [from] his enheritaunce,
Wherof be fore was made remembraunce. 2177
- Two kynges mo were in his poyntement, 2178
With the nowmber of knyghtes accordeng,
Owt of the Reme of Trace with hym ther were,
To wayte on hym ther were [they] well willyng^t, 2181
But of on thing he had no knowlaching^t,
That his fortune was suche withoute lese
To fight ayenst his sone Generydes : 2184
- The last bateH was putt on to his gard^t, 2185
And for this cawse it was apoyntid so,
Ser Amelok he hadde the secunde ward^t,
That noo debate shuld be bytwix them twoo, 2188
Thanne after this ther was no more a doo ;
The men of armys bothe with spere and sheld,
With grete corage dressid them in to the feld. 2191
- And on the toder part forward^t they went ; 2192
Among his men the Sowdon came rideng^t,
And prevely iij knyghtez owt he sent,
Of his enmys to knowe ther demeanyng^t, 2195
They brought hym word ayenward thei were comyng^t,
And so they rode y^e space of half a nyght,
That euerychone of other hadde a sight. 2198
- Thanne afterward^t thei made noo taryeng^t, 2199
But furth they goo withoute eny lett,
Wete ye wele ther was a sorowfuH encounteryng^t,
- who knew not
that he had to
fight against his
son Generydes.
- The Sultan sent
out 3 knyghts
to reconnoitre.

- Whanne the batels to geder were mett, 2202 The battles met.
 Euerychone on) other ferly they sette
 With grete corage, and trewly for to speke
 It was a world to here the sperys breke. 2205
- The kyng of kynggez rode on euery side, 2206 The king of
 fuH clene armyd formest of euerychone, kings
 There were butt fewe his strokes wold abide, [leaf 12]
 So many he on) horsid one be one ; 2209 unhorsed many a
 A comly prince he was to loke vppon), one.
 And therwith [all] right good and honorable,
 And in the feld a knyght right comfortable. 2212
- Ser abeH was of perse the Banere, 2213 Sir Abell met
 Avaunsid hym) and to a kyng ganne ride, him,
 And thorough owt the body he hym) bare,
 That on) his hors he myght not longe abide, 2216
 Butt to the grownde he felle and ther he dyed ;
 And thanne ser AbeH, in a hasty brayde,
 Vnto the kyng of kyngges thanne he seide : 2219
- ' Good ser,' quod he, ' how likith yow this game ?'
 With tho wordes the kyng liked fuH iH,
 he thought fuH wele to quyte hym) with y^e same,
 And ranne to hym) with a fuH eger wiH, 2223
 That from ser AbeH downe the baner felH,
 And suche a stroke he hadde, to say yow trew,
 That from) his hors almost he ther ouer threw. 2226
 but lost his
 banner in the
 fight,
- The kyng his fader sawe the baner down), 2227 which his father
 he hastyd hym) as fast as euer he myght, rescued.
 And with an' hundered knyghtes of renown)
 The baner sone they reisid it vppe right ; 2230
 Thanne was the bateH sore, I yow be hight,
 And many slayn) ; but or the day was past
 The men of perse with drew them) atte last. 2233 The men of
 Persia withdrew,

- The next^t bate^H, whanne thei wist how it was, 2234
 but Generydes
 came up and
 won the ground
 again,
 Generydes and Anasore in certayn),
 They brought ther felishepe bothe more and lesse,
 And in a while they wanne the grownd ayen); 2237
 Generydes sawe Guynan onⁿ the playn),
 The kyngges sone, rideng^t with spere and sheld;
 he taryd not, butt mette hymⁿ in the feld. 2240
- fought with
 Gwynan,
 Gwaynan onⁿ to Generides he ranne, 2241
 And with [his] spere he brake his sheld onⁿ twayne;
 Generides ayenward like a man
 With stode his stroke, and smote hymⁿ so ageyn), 2244
 That fromⁿ his hors he felle vpponⁿ the playn),
 And who that euer that was wele payde or wroth,
 unhorsed him,
 he toke his hors withⁿ hym and furthⁿ he goth. 2247
- Thanne was ther onⁿ not ferre owt of y^e prese, 2248
 lyke a harowed he semyd for to be,
 To hymⁿ Anonⁿ thanne seid Generydes,
 ‘ Good ser,’ quod he, ‘ doo now sum what for me;’ 2251
 ‘ What is your’ with and pleasure?’ quod he.
 ‘ My lorde,’ he seid, ‘ that ye with in this nede
 Chaunge my Sady^H and sett it onⁿ this stede. 2254
- Whanne ye haue do, take ye my stede therfore.’ 2255
 Sygrem hym did as Generides hymⁿ badde,
 he hight so, and to sey yow more
 In his demeanyng he was wise and sadde; 2258
 Of bothe party^s right grete favour’ he hadde,
 To gentilmⁿ he was right *servisable*,
 And ther witha^H fu^H good and companable. 2261
- and took his
 horse,
 Generydes leppe vppe vpponⁿ his stede, 2262
 A better was not onder nethe the sonne;
 ffor grete suerte in story as I rede,

- The kyng of kyngges gave it to his sonne, 2265
 Or the bateH was eny thing begonne ;
 Sygrem was glad of chaungyng^t of his hors,
 ffor of his owne he gave butt litiH fors. 2268 giving his own
 to Sygrem.
- To hym anon thanne seid Generydes, 2269 He asks Sygrem
 ' Sygrem,' quod he, ' do me to vnderstonde where Sir
 Ser Amelok, if he be in the preese, Amelok is.
- Whiche traytury hath wonne my faders lande. 2272
 ffayne wold I wete if he were here nye hande.'
 'Trewly,' he seid, ' now I remembyr me,
 Suche one ther is in very certente. 2275
- Butt as for yow, I wote not what ye be, 2276
 hym knowe I wele trewly, that is noo nay ;
 The first bateH saue on ther in is he,
 This is the very trougth that I yow saye, 2279 ' I know him
 And what ye be, I besече and praye well; he is in
 To lete me wete the truthe in euery wise, the first battle
 And I shaH trewly owe yow my seruice.' 2282 save one.
 Tell me who
 you are.'
- Generydes thanne gaue hym this answere ; 2283 Generydes said,
 ' Sygrem,' he seid, ' to yow I wiH not leyne,
 I shaH yow telle the trouth of this mater,
 kyng auferius is my fader in certeyn), 2286 ' Auferius is
 Whiche was of ynd bothe lord and souereyn), my father.'
 And now is kyng of Trace, as I yow say,
 Butt lete this go noo ferther, I yow praye.' 2289
- ' Kyng^t auferius,' quod he, ' I knowe hym wele, 2290 ' I know him
 The last bateH of aH ther in he is, well,' replied
 As ferre as I canne vnderstonde and fele, Sygrem,
 Ser Amelok is not his frende I wis, 2293 ' and Sir Amelok
 And by what reason I wiH teH yow this ; is not his friend.'
 The kyng of kynggez partyd them twayn),
 Be cause they shuld noo debate begynne certeyn).' 2296

- 'How shall I know Sir Amelok?' said Generydes. 'How shaH I doo,' thanne seid Generydes, 2297
'Of Amelok to haue sum knowlaching? ffor hym that I may knowe among^t the preese, But if I haue sum redy tokyni[n]g^t.' 2300
'I shaH yow telle,' quod he, 'withoute feyneng, his stede is gray withoute layen), The hede is whigh^t, to say yow for certayn). 2303
- For more knowelage to telle yow which is he, 2304
his harmes are, who so list to be holde,
The felde of Goulys in very certeynte,
Ther with also iij bandes aH of gold.' 2307
And whanne that he Generydes had told
Of Amelok, and houghⁿ he shuld hym fynde,
Wete ye wele he was the gladder in hys mynde. 2310
- They ride on together, Furth on^d his stede rideth Generydes, 2311
To fynd ser Amelok if that he may,
With hym rideth Sygrem stiH opeese,
And as they twayne rode spekyng^t be the waye, 2314
Segrem was ware wher in a valay
Ser Amelok came on^d rideng A pace,
hym for to rest as for a litiH space : 2317
- 'Loo yender is ser Amelok,' he seid, 2318
'And saving^t on^d with hym ther is no moo.'
And with that word Generydes abrayde,
'Now is,' quod he, 'good tyme for me to goo ;' 2321
So furth he ridith tiH that he came hym too :
The toder sawe hym come with spere and sheld,
They fight. And furth he gothe and mette hym in the feld. 2324
- Amelok breaks in two Generydes' shield. And atte first he stroke Generydes, 2325
And with that stroke he brast his sheld in twayn),
Anone with aH he quyte hym dowteles,

- And smote his sheld quyte on) the playn). 2328 Generydes cuts
Thanne seid Generides, 'now am I fayn), away Amelok's
Thow shalt not laughē atte me in mokrery, shield.
ffor thow hast lost thy sheld as wele as I. 2331
- And as for on) thyng¹ I shañ the wele ensure, 2332
As for thy sheld thu shalt haue it no more,
ffor myn) is broke it may noo more endure,
Be thow right sure I wiñ haue thynne therfore :² 2335
And thanne beganne the bateñ passing sore,
Ther was non) of them) shewid favour' to a *nother*,
ffor right dedely the tone hatid the toder. 2338
- Syr Amelok was wrothe as he mygñt be, 2339
And to Generydes right thus he sayde ;
'I shañ yow quyte that thu hast doo to me,'
And smote hym) on) the hide with suche a brayde, 2342 They fight on.
That in hym) self he was some what dismayed :
Quod Amelok, 'thu hast I now this day,
Reche me my¹ sheld and thu goo thy waye.' 2345
- 'Thow getist it not, fals traytour [that] thu art, 2346 Generydes
Or thu goo ferther thu shalt haue myschaunse, reproaches
ffor thu hast with thy fals envyous hert Amelok for
Putte my fader from) his enheritaunce, 2349 his treachery.
Whiche was his Ioye, his lyfe, and his pleasur',
And in my faders presence thu me smote,²
Whiche I haue not forgete yet, god it wote. 2352
- And thanne I mygñt not ease my hert in dede, 2353
But now thu shalt repent it or thu goo :'
And with his swerd he smette hym) on) the hede,
The helme to brast anon) in peces two ; 2356 Sir Amelok
his lippys and his noose he smote away also, is wounded
Clene from) his face, and ther with añ fuñ sone,
he bledde so fast that he felle in A swonne. 2359 and unhorsed,

¹ MS. *thy*.² MS. *smette*.

- To hym) thanne seide Generides anon), 2360
 ' WhiH ere thu bad I shuld reche the thy sheld,
 And now me think thu hast nede of on),
 ffor neyther spere ne sheld that thu may weld : ' 2363
- but rescued
 And with that word vppeward his hede [he] helde,
 Risyng with aH to helpe hym) self right fayne ;
 Generydes thanne smote hym) down) ageyn), 2366
- Hym) for to slee was fully his entente. 2367
- by his knights.
 With that anon) his knyghtes came hym) to,
 And sette hym) on) his hors and furth they went,
 As soft a pace as y^{ei} myghit with hym) goo, 2370
 Too se hym) in that plight they were full woo ;
 his stede anon) thanne toke Generydes,
 And led hym) furth with hym) in to the prese. 2373
- Generydes took
 the horse he had
 won of Amelok,
- And whanne that he was eskepyd trewly, 2374
 Sygrem he found anon) in contenant,
 ' My frende,' quod [he], ' I prae yow fetHfully
 To do my massage after myn) entent, 2377
 That ye wiH take this stede, and hym) present
 To auferius my lord and fader dere,
 And say to hym) that I haue wonne hym) here 2380
- and sent it to
 Auferius by
 Sygrem.
- Off Amelok, the traytour most vntrewe ; 2381
 And if he aske as for more witesse,
 Who sent to hym) and how that I hym) knewe,
 Telle hym) it is his sone Generydes, 2384
 And hough that Amelok in aH the prese,
 Withynne his howse and in his high) presence,
 ffuH cruely smote hym) with violence ; 2387
- And he ayenward smete hym) with his knyff 2388
 Thorough the Arme in very certente.'
 Sygrem Ayenward seid, ' ser, be my liff,

- I shaſſ do that ye haue comaundyd me, 2391
 And take hym this present where euer he be.
 Now goo Sygrem, as fast as ye may spede,
 To Auferius to present hym this stede. 2394
- And whanne this stede to Auferius was brought, 2395
 And wist fro whence he came, thanne was he fayn ;
 ‘Now, good Sygrem, as euer I may do ought
 ffor thy pleasur,’ quod auferius ayen), 2398
 ‘Of my sonne telle me somme token playn),
 hough I may best knowe hym among them aſſ ;’
 ‘Ser,’ quod Sygrem, ‘with right good wiſſ I shaſſ.’ 2401
- Sygrem hym told tokynnes moo thanne on), 2402
 his sonne to knowe be right of his office,
 What colour was his hors he rode vpon),
 And what harmys he bare, and what devise, 2405
 Aſſ this he told hym in full redy wise ;
 kyng auferius ther with he was contente,
 And hym rewardid weſſ for his presente.¹ 2408
- As now putte we this mater in respite, 2409
 And to Generydes turne we ageyn),
 Whiche founde his felawes aſſ most discomfete,
 ffor they had fought aſſ the day certeyn) ; 2412
 Yet whanne they hym sawe thenne were *thei* fayn),
 And ganne reioyse whanne they to geder mette,
 With knyghtly corage frely on) they sette. 2415
- And thanne beganne the bateſſ passing sore ; 2416
 They fought alway to geder stiſſ opece,
 The men of perse were hartid more and more,
 Aſſ be counfort of Generides : 2419
 he styntid not, nor neuer wold he sese,
 And with his swerd where that his stroke glynt,
 Owt of ther sadiſſ full redely they went. 2422

Auferius asked Sygrem some token by which he might know [leaf 13] his son.

He told him the colour of his horse and his arms.

Generydes found his fellows almost discomfited.

When they saw him they were glad.

Every one went down before the stroke of Generydes.

¹ MS. *presence*.

- he sawe where that he rode in [a] valaye ; 2454 and finds him in
 To hym) anon) fuH streygh̄t he toke the waye, a valley.
 And on) a high he beganne to crye,
 ‘Turne the,’ he seid, ‘for tyme it is trewly : 2457
- Vppon) my stede blanchard thu ridest here, 2458
 Butt on) my list thu shalt hym) sone for goo.’
 That word anon) Generides ganne here,
 he turnyd hym) withoute wordes moo. 2461
 They toke ther coursis and ranne to geder soo, They ran
 Thanne iche atte other’ and bothe ther sperys helde, together and were
 But thei were clene onhorsid in the feld. 2464 both unhorseid,
- Vppon) ther stedis sone thei were ayeyn), 2465 but got up on
 And so they fough̄t to geder’ hand to hand, their steeds
 Ther was noo favour’ shewid be twix them) twayn), again, and
 Butt strokes grete and sore, I vnderstonde ; 2468 fought hand to
 ij better knygh̄tes were not in aH the land, hand.
 ffor long’ thei fough̄t and neuer wold thei lette,
 Ne yet departe to tyme the ostes mette.¹ 2471
- Thanne wax the bateH euer more and more, 2472 The battle waxed
 As thei resortid on) euery side ; sore.
 lordes and knygh̄tez were hurt right soore,
 And many liggig dede with woundes wide ; 2475
 lucas ffuH sone Manassen had aspied, Lucas rode at
 With sheld and spere he dressid hym) full right, Manassen,
 And ranne to hym) in aH that euer he mygh̄t. 2478
- The stede² was good that lucas rode vppon), 2479
 And suche a stroke he gave hym) with a spere,
 That thorough the harnes and the shulder bon),
 Thorough owt his bak and slew hym) ther ; 2482 and slew him,
 Thanne to the kyng he seid in this maner :
 ‘Take yow here this present or ye goo,
 And I shaH do my part to send yow moo.’ 2485

¹ MS. *mettez*.

² MS. *stode*.

- Tho wordes toke the kyng in Mokkery, 2486
 And made hym redy with spere and sheld,
 To ser lucas he ranne fuH egerly
 And stroke hym fro his hors in to the feld ; 2489
 With that anon Generydes beheld
 how lucas was owtrayed among his foys,
 And in he came and rescuyd hym att onys. 2492
- but was unhorsed
 by the king,
 and rescued by
 Generydes,
 [leaf 13, back]
- Streyght to the kyng he rideth for certayn), 2493
 And with his swerd he smote hym on the hede,
 The helme to brast anon in pecys twayn),
 And with that stroke he slewe his hors in dede, 2496
 And so the stede fel vnder nethe hym dede,
 hym self also ther with was astoinyd sore,
 And blew his horne, to saye yow forthermore. 2499
- who slew the
 king's horse.
 The king blew
 his horn,
- Thanne came a thowsaund knyghtez of his ost, 2500
 And vppe thei sette hym on a nother stede,
 And glad they were, wenyng they had hym lost,
 And furth owt of the prese with hym they yede.¹ 2503
 Thanne came ther in as fast as thei myght spede,
 The buscommest folk, the men of higher ynd,
 Of whom before the story makith mend. 2506
- and a thousand
 knights came up
 and carried him
 off.
 Then came in the
 men of higher
 India,
 (see p. 69)
- Whanne they come in they made rome Alaboughit,
 Ther wepons were made owt of aH mesur',
 ffuH iH shapyn with pekys in and owt,
 Ther strokes myght no man endure ; 2510
 The men of Perse were att discomfetur,
 And whanne the Sowdon hard of that tiding',
 he came anon and made no taryng' ; 2513
- with weapons
 out of all
 measure.
 The men of
 Persia were
 discomfited,
- Conforting them in fuH good maner, 2514
 And for ther seruice thankyd them Also :
 The prince of Cesare gave hym this answer,

¹ MS. *yode*.

- ‘ Now truly, *ser*,’ quod he, ‘ if it were so 2517
 That they were men) with whom) we haue a do,
 We wold not dowte to mete them) on) be on),
 But suerly they be fendez euerychone. 2520
- Ther wepons be suche ther may no man) abide, 2521
 Wherefore this is now myn) advise,’ quod¹ he,
 ‘ Vs to with drawe a liteff owt aside, and withdrew
 That our enmys *perseyue* not that we fle.’ 2524 towards
 The Sowdon) saw it wold non) other be, the city,
 Butt nedis he must geve his assent ther to, Mountenor.
 And yet he was fuH loth so for to do. 2527
- They drewe softly to the Citee Ward, 2523
 The Sowdon) blow his horn) that thei myght here,
 The lordes and the knyghtez of his garde,
 Whanne thei it hard) anon) thei drew hym) nyere, 2531
 As as they rode to geder aH in feer’,
 Ther enmys made on) them) a newe afraye,
 That vnnethe myght the Sowdon) skape a waye. 2534 The Sultan
 barely escaped,
- V. hunderyd of his men) he lost also, 2535 and lost 500 men
 And of horsis a thowsand atte lest and 1000 horses.
 Among^t them) AH thei lost withoute moo,
 And some lordes and knyghtez of the best ; 2538
 The day passid, the sonne drewe to the rest,
 And be that tyme his felisshepe and he
 Were come to Mountoner the riche Citee. 2541
- And of aH this wist not Generides, 2542 Generydes and
 Nor anasor’, to say yow certeynly, Anasore wist not
 ffor thei were aHway fightyng^t still opece of this, but
 Ayenst Galad the kyng^t of Asirye ; 2545 fought Galad,
 the king of
 Assyria,
 And whanne they had knowlage vtterly,
 Of the Sowdon) and of his distresse,
 Thanne were they bothe in right grete hevynesse. 2548

¹ MS. *now q^d*.

till their men
were distressed,
and they tried
to retire,
but found the
enemy between
them and the
city;

Yer¹ fought thei stiĥ and reskew was *ther* non, 2549
Nor non comyng^t as ferre as they myght see,
Ther men almost distressid euerychone,
And many slayne, thenne of necessite 2552
They them withdrewe, and towarde the Citee
They toke the way, and in conclusion
Thanne was the oste be twene them and y^e town; 2555

That in no wise they wist not hough to pas, 2556
Ne hough to do they knowe noo *sertente*,
Thanne Anasor^r remembered that ther was
A postrene yssuyng^t owt of the Citee, 2559
And thederward they drewe to haue entree,
But or they myght in suerte come and goo
Be twix them bothe they had I noughe to do. 2562

Now to the Sowdon lete us turne ageyn), 2563
ffor here peopiĥ what mone that he do make ;
Of euery man he enqueryd the certente,
Whiche of his men were ded and which were take ;
The Citee made grete sorow for ther sake,
And specially thei made grete hevynes
ffor Anasore and for Generides ; 2569

And thought suerly it myght non other be, 2570
Butte thei were bothe [putte] to discomfortune.
Thanne sayde Dareĥ, 'it were full grete pite
Suche ij knyghtez to lese, I yow ensure ;' 2573
And furth he goth vppon his aventure,
Beseching^t god to counceĥ hym and rede,
ffor he wold fynd hym² eyther quyk or dede. 2576

There was a
rumour in the city
that Generydes
and Anasore
were slain.
Clarionas heard

Thanne was a noyse the Citee aĥ along^t 2577
That they were slayn), and woo thei were *therfore* ;
Clarionas herd how the tydingez sprong,

¹ MS. *Yey*.

² MS. *hyn*.

- here there was don), she wept passing sore : 2580 it and wept sore,
 MyrabeH sawe she wept more and more,
 'Madame,' quod she, 'these tydengez that be now, but Mirabell did
 A wager dare I ley they are not trew : 2583 not believe the
 news.
- And if it please yow, for your' disporte, 2584
 To walk vppe to the towre¹ ther shaH ye see
 Paraventur' that may be your' counfort.'
- 'I wiH,' she sayde, 'do as as ye counceH me : 2587
 Comforte or no, or hough that euer it be.' [leaf 14]
- So furth she went vppe to the towre on) hye, Clarionas went
 Butt noughit she sawe, she wept so wtterly. 2590 to the top of
 the tower,
 but saw nothing
 for weeping.
- Thanne was DareH come to Generides, 2591 Sir Darell made
 his way to
 Generydes.
- And glad thei were, bothe he and Anasor',
 ffor thei had longt endured counfortles :
 Whanne he was come amendid was ther cher', 2594
 And att that tyme owt of the prese thei were,
 To rest them) self a season) to endure,
 Ther eche to other told his aventur'. 2597
- Clarionas was on) the towre on) hye, 2598 Clarionas on the
 Of here wepyngt she ded hir self refrayn), tower
 And owt vppon) the feld she ganne aspye,
 Where Anasore came rideng vppon) the playn); 2601 saw Anasore,
 By his Armys she knewe hym) for certayn)
 That it was he, and ther withaH anon)
 A grete part of hir hevynesse was goon). 2604
- Generides was also in the feld, 2605 but did not know
 Generydes because
 he had Sir
 Amelok's shield.
- Butt whiche was he she had noo knowlachingt,
 ffor he had on) ser Amelokkez sheld,
 With his devise, in very tokenyngt 2608
 That he it wanne att ther encounteryngt,
 And so they rode oyther with spere and sheld,
 Toward town) clarionas them) beheld. 2611

¹ MS. *town*.

- Auferius with 500 knights rode And as thei rode anon thei were Aspied 2612
 By on that was with Auferius the kyng,
 And in noo wise thanne wold he not abide,
 And told his lord withoute more taryeng^t ; 2615
 And he anon, leving^t AH other thing,
 Sent furth knyghtez v. C. in aray,
 to meet them. hym self also to mete them on the waye. 2618
- And aH was to withstonde ther passage, 2619
 With these knyghtes he rode on still opece ;
- The foremost was Ismael the Savage, The formest was Ismael the Savage, 2622
 Kyng^t Auferius sonne withoute leese,
 And very brother onto Generides ;
- who encountered Generydes. Be fore them aH he came hym self alone, 2625
 Generides was ware therof anon.
- He toke his spere And mette hym in the feld, 2626
 They toke ther course and ranne to rownde :
 he stroke Generydes vpon the sheld,
 That hors and man Almost were att grownde, 2629
 But vppe he rose anon both hoole and sounde,
 And with his swerd he smote hym so ageyn,
 That with that stroke he brake his sheld on twayn).
- They fought till Generydes smote So fought y^ei still withoute eny drede, 2633
 And neyther of them wold to other yeld ;
 Generydes hym sette so vpon the hede,
- off Ismael's helm, That his helme flew quyte in to the feld, 2636
 With that anon Generydes beheld
- and saw his fetures. The fetures wele that was in his visage, 2639
 Demyng^t that they were aH of on lenage.
- And for to haue ther of very knowlaching, 2640
 To Ismael he said, in very certente,
 ' Good ser,' quod he, ' for loue of hevyn kyng^t,

- Tell me for trougth what maner a man ye be, 2643 He asked him
 And whense ye came, and owt of what contre ?' who he was.
- 'What man I am,' quod Ismael ayeyn),
 'And of what kynne I wiſt not layn). 2646
- Kyng¹ auferius trewly my fader is, 2647 'Auferius is
 To say yow sothe, and for to bere noo blame, my father,'
 And of the Reme of Trace is kyng I wis, quoth Ismael.
- Ther was I born) and brought vppe in the same, 2650
 And Ismael the Savage is myn) name ;
 Now I haue told yow aſt withoute leese.'
 'Gramercy, frende,' thanne sayd Generydes, 2653 'Gramercy,
 friend,' said
 Generydes,
- 'For we haue fought to long I yow ensure.' 2654
 With that he toke hym) in his armys twoo,
 'We are broderen),' quod he, 'of on) nature, 2657 'we are brethren,
- kyng¹ auferius my fader is also ;
 I may nott tary now, for I must goo,
 My felawes hat) merveſt to see me heer,
 Butt here after I shaſt make yow better chere.' 2660
- Thanne ther was an hevy departeng), 2661 There was a
 hough) iche of them) made to other mone. heavy parting
 Generydes sawe where was thanne comyng) between them.
- his faders men), wele horsid euerychone, 2664
 And he fuſt hevy butt hym) self alone,
 And they to many as to his entente,
 So furth on) was he to his felawes went.¹ 2667 Generydes went
 on to his fellows,
- Whanne he was come ther as his felawes were, 2668
 They sawe comyng) along in a valay
 A grete peopiſt, wele dressed in ther geere, and in a valley
 To lette hym) and his felawes on) the waye, 2671 saw a great people
 coming to hinder
 Thanne was ther on) a knyght in good aray, them with a
 Be fore them) aſt avausid hym) to ride, knight at their
 Generydes hym) had riht sone aspyed ; 2674 head.

¹ MS. *was to his felawes he went.*

- Generydes rode
at him, and slew
him. And furth with aȝ he mette on) the playn), 2675
In sight of aȝ the pepitt that were ther,
And Atte first he brast his sheld in twayn),
That thorough owt the body ranne the spere ; 2678
- Clarionas saw
this, and recog-
nized her lover. Clarionas demyd that he was ther,
And to hir mayde she sayde fuff sobyrlly,
' What knyght is that that doth so worthyly ?' 2681
- [leaf 14, back] ' It is your' loue,' quod she, ' withoute moo.' 2682
' Now good Mirabeȝ, what is your advise ?'
' Trewly,' quod she, ' I trow that it be soo,
Me think it shuld ben) he in) eny wise ; 2685
The rede penseȝ I see att his devise,
The whiche in sothe ye dede for hym) ordeyn),
Gwynot brought it hym) your' Cha[m]berleyn).' 2688
- ' O trouth,' quod she, ' Madame,¹ that is trew ; 2689
Now am I wele remembryd ther vppon),
Butt euermore my sorow doth renewe,
Withoute reskewe to se hym) so alone, 2692
Thus shaft they be distressid euerychone,
Namely my love, whiche is so good a knyght,
ffor hym) is aȝ my mone I yow be hight. 2695
- For wele I wote, ther is noo knyght a lyve 2696
That better doith here and in euery place,
And this to say my reson) doith me dryve,
ffor I am his while I haue lyffe and space.' 2699
And while she remembryd aȝ this case
Come Ismael rideng) with spere and sheld,
And to Dareȝ he ridith in to the feld. 2702
- Bothe to the grounde he bare hors and man), 2703
ffurth with came the ost vppon) the playn),
And as ser Dareȝ wold haue Res[k]eu thanne,

Ismael and
Darell meet,

¹ ? *Mirabell.*

- Ther came a knyght and held hym down Ayeyn, 2706
 And with his swerd wold haue DareH slayn,
 Butt in the most and in the thikest prese
 hym to reskew thanne came Generides. 2709 and Darell would
have been sla'ed,
but was saved
by Generydes,
- Streight as he cowde to that knyght he rode, 2710 and they rode
forth together.
 he brake his helme and stroke hym on the heede,
 That on his hors no lengger he a bode,
 But downe he feH and fast beganne to blede ; 2713
 Generydes with hym he toke his stede,
 And furth fro them he rode a litiH aside,
 And toke it DareH theron for to ride. 2716
- Clarionas beheld this euery dele ; 2717
 Quod she ayeyn to MirabeH here mayde,
 'The same is he, the whiche I love so weH ;
 'Madame,' quod she, 'so haue I alway sayde, 2720
 ye nede noo thyng for hym to be dismayde,
 Nor let no mo suche thoughtez yow assayle,
 ffor it is he withoute eny fayle.' 2723
- Now rideth DareH with Generides, 2724
 As full of thought for his fortune that day,
 And as they rode a litiH fro the prese,
 kyng' Auferius came crossyng' them the way, 2727 Auferius crossed
their path,
 ffuH clene armyd in riche and good Aray.
 DareH anon dressid hym full right,
 And ranne to hym in all that euer he myght. 2730 and Darell rode
at him,
- And one the hede smote Auferius the kyng' ; 2731 and smote him
on the head,
 The helme was sure, or ellys he had hym slayn,
 kyng' auferius withoute more tarieng'
 he gave ser DareH another for certayn 2734 Auferius gave
him a blow in
return.
 Vppon the helme, the fyre thanne sprang' owt ayeyn,
 And ther withaH, with a full soden brayde,
 To ser DareH right in this wise he saide : 2737

- ‘Old men can
smite,’ quoth he. ‘The¹ yong¹ knyghtez,’ quod he, ‘that ben¹ so prowde,
Old men¹ canne smyte, wete wele it is trew.’
- Generydes heard
his voice, and
knew it was
his father. Generides hard hough¹ he spake so lowde,
And by the voyce his fader thanne he knewe, 2741
Toward them both anon¹ he drewe ;
Whanne he was come in full vnable wise
To his fader, he said right in this wise : 2744
- ‘ I praye yow, *ser*, your¹ hand fro me refrayn¹, 2745
To the tyme ye knowe my purpose vtterly,
He parted them, here am I come to departe yow twayn¹,
ffor I must loue yow bothe and reason¹ whye ; 2748
And namely yow alone most specially,
As for this knyght whi¹ my life² maye endure,
I sha¹ hym¹ neuer fayle I yow ensure.’ 2751
- ‘ What *maner* a man¹ be ye thanne,’ saide the kyng¹,
‘ That putte your¹ self soo fer³ furth¹ in the prese ?’
‘ I sha¹ yow telle,’ quod he, ‘ withoute feyneng¹ ;
Of Surre am I born¹ withoute leese, 2755
As for my name I high¹ Generides.’
And ther with a¹ he tared not certayn¹,
and joined his
fellows. Butt to⁴ his felawes furth he goth ayeyn¹. 2758
- Auferius was
dismayed. Kyng¹ Auferius thanne was sumwhat dismayed, 2759
Be cause that he departid so ayeyn¹ ;
ffor be the wordes whiche he to hym¹ saide,
he was his sonne, he knew it for certayn¹ ; 2762
Yet of the sight of hym¹ he was full fayn¹,
As nature wold, and in especia¹
That he was wexen¹ soo goodly a knyght w¹ a¹. 2765
- Now was the bate¹ dureng¹ sti¹ opece, 2766
The kynggez ost encresid more and more ;
Said Darell unto
Generydes, Thanne sayd Dare¹ on¹ to Generides,

¹ ? *Ye.*² *MS. list.*³ *MS. for.*⁴ *MS. he to.*

- ‘ffor your’ pleasure we shaft repente it sore.’ 2769 ‘For your
 ‘ffor hym¹,’ quod he, ‘now good tell me wherefore.’ pleasure we
 ‘yes yes,’ quod he, ‘this is the case, shall repent
 your’ Iee is euer stedfast in on) place.’ 2772 it sore :
 your eye is ever
- ‘What place is that?’ [quod he] ‘I prae yow saye ;
 As for the kyng, I see hym nott I wise.’
 ‘I mene not that,’ quod DareH, ‘be this daye,
 It is another thing, so haue I blis. 2776 [leaf 15]
 On yender towre on) highe I see where is on yonder tower.’
 That causith yow these mastereys for to shewe,
 Now haue I told yow aH with wordes fewe.’ 2779
- ‘In sothe,’ quod he, ‘ye bere me wrong’ in hand, 2780 ‘In sooth,’ quoth
 ffor certainly I saugh hir not to nowe ; Generydes, ‘I saw
 Sithe she is ther, as now I vnderstonde, her not till now.’
 If I do wele she wolH me more allowe. 2783
 Now be not wroth, for by licence of yow
 Yet onys I wilH assaye what I canne do.’
 ‘I graunt,’ quod DareH, ‘late vs goo thertoo.’ 2786
- Generides, and with hym ser DareH, 2787
 Bothe on) thei rode to knowe what was ther vre ; They rode on,
 And with Generides was NataneH,
 Beryng’ a spere of tymber good and sure ; 2790
 Generides ther mette att a venture and Generydes
 The kyng’ Ruben, Redy with spere and sheld, met Ruben,
 And ther they strake to geder in the feld. 2793
- Vppon) the sheld he strake Generides, 2794
 And ther with brake his sheld in pecis twayn) :
 A mighty man) he was, butt neuer the lesse
 Atte same course he smote hym) so ayeyn, 2797 and smote him
 That of his hors he felle vppon) the playn, from his horse,
 With that Generides both fair’ and wele
 his hors he delyuered on) to NataneH. 2800

¹ ? *myn.*

- which he sent ' I pray yow, *ser*,' he saide, ' haue here this stede, 2801
 And take ye hym on to my lady der' ;
 Me recomaunding on to hir' goodly hede,
 And say to hir that I haue wonne hym here.' 2804
 ' Weh *ser*,' *quod* he, ' as towching' this mater,
 late me alone now that I knowe *your* entente,
 In aH the hast I wuH hym to hir present.' 2807
- Furth with the steede he went owt of y^e prese, 2808'
 And streyght he goth on to Clarionas ;
 ' Madame,' *quod* he, ' my lord Generides
 hym recommaundith lowly to your' grace, 2811
 And sent yow here a stede of his purchase
 And where that he hadde it to tell yow very playn,
 Of kyng' Ruben he wanne hym for *certayn*.' 2814
- She was right glad. ' Ye be right welcome, Nataneth,' *quod* she, 2815
 ' Of this I am right gladde and wele content,
 And moche gladder to knowe the certente
 Of his welefare that hath yow heder sent.' 2818
 ' Madame,' *quod* he, ' right now encontynent
 I wold that he hym self were with yow here.'
 ' With me,' *quod* she, ' so wold I that he were.' 2821
- Natanell returned to Generydes, Thanne Nataneth departid furth with aH, 2822
 And had a token onto Generides ;
 In to the feld he goth among' them aH,
 And founde hym ther aside hand of the prese, 2825
- and told him all. And furth with aH told hym the¹ hoole processe,
 In euery thing' that he hadde done and saide,
 Tho was Generides full wele apayed ; 2828
- He took courage, And ther with aH he toke anon corage, 2829
 And to the feld he dressid hym to ride ;
 Of yong' and old and euery man of age

¹ MS. *all the*.

- Ther wer butt few his strokes wold abide. 2832 and few could
 The kyngges ost drew to the Citez side, abide his stroke.
 Generides was thanne vpon the playn,
 A while ther to rest hym *ther* in certayn. 2835
- The kyng^t of kynggez thanne was in his tente, 2836 The king of
 And of aH this he hard no maner thing^t ; kings
 he harde a noyse and wist not what it ment,
 But furth he goth leving^t A^H other thing^t, 2839
 And toke his hors withoute taryeng^t,
 he blew his horn that aH his men myght here,
 With that thei come a¹ bought hym A^H in feere. 2842 blew his horn,
 and his men
 came about him.
- Whanne DareH sawe the kyng^t of kyngges ost, 2843 Darell prayed
 Generydes anon full fayre [he] prayed ; Generydes to
 'ffor love of god that is of myghtez most, retire into the
 Goo we in to the Citee now,' he sayde ; 2846 city.
 'DareH,' quod he, 'wher of be ye dismayd ?
 I see noo cause, for we shaH do right wele
 And skape ther handes, dough^te ye neuer a dele.' 2849
- 'I am contente,' quod he, 'that we do so ; 2850 'I am content,'
 As for my part now late vs goo ther on.' quoth he.
 And with hym was *ser* Anosore Also ;
 his horn thanne blew Generides anon, 2853
 With that ther came A bowte hym euerychone,
 his felasshepe and what that euer he ment,
 Thei were redy atte his commaundment. 2856
- And furth they dressid hym in his gere, 2857 He, Darell, and
 Generides, DareH, and Anasor', Anosore have
 Might neuer men doo better on a day ther, done bravely.
 Thanne they dede ther so fewe pepill as thei were :
 Eche of them iij so wele quiete them ther,
 They slew iij knyghtez eu[er]ychone for on,
 The remenaunt were putte to flight euerychon. 2863

¹ MS. *an.*

- And while they fought to geder in the feld, 2864
 The cite sent owt anon in contentent
 iij skore knyghtez, Armyd with spere And sheld ;
 Ther with Generides was wele content : 2867
 ‘lo *serys!*’ quod hee, ‘Aftur your own entent,
 The felissheppe is yourez that yender ye see,
 Now may I suerly entre the Citee.’ 2870
- They took the way to the city.
 [leaf 13, back] And whanne they were aH to geder mett, 2871
 To the Citee they toke the wey full right,
 And in they went withoute eny lette :
- Then was there joy. Thanne was ther Ioy, I yow be hight, 2874
 In euery strete si[n]ggyng and fyres bright ;
 And euery creature, both more and lesse,
 Gaue a gret lawde onto Generides. 2877
- The Sultan anon sent for him and thanked him. Anon withaH the Sowdon for hym sent, 2878
 And gaue hym ther his thank in feythfull wise ;
 ffor he perseuyd wele in his entent,
 he hadde hym do right wurchipfull seruice : 2881
 And ther the Sowdon made hym full promys,
 Seyng his labour and his grete travelH,
 That in noo wise he wold hym neuer fayle. 2884
- The king of kings sent for men of craft to break the walls. The kyng of kyngges erly vppe he rose, 2885
 And sent for men of craft in aH the hast,
 To make engenys after his purpose,
- Whanne this was purveyd for thanne atte last, 2888
 The waffis to breke, the Citee for to wast ;
- Ermones said Kyng Ermones stode vppe before them AH,
 And to the kyng he spake in especiaH : 2891
- ‘ Me think, *ser*, as after myn advise, 2892
 It nedith not to make aH this arraye,
 To distroye the Cite it is noo grete entrepri[se],

- It were better to saue it if ye may : 2895 it were better
 ffor yow it were more wurchippe euery waye, to save it.
 And in your' fame the lenger to endur',
 To wynne it in the feld I yow ensure.' 2898
- 'How may that be?' thanne saide the kyng Ayeyn,
 'Your' counceH is right good, so mote I goo, 2900
 Owt of the town) they wiH nott in certeyn),
 What think ye best thanne,' quod he, 'y^t we shall doo ?'
 'Ser, on) my life, ye shaH not fynde it soo,
 And if ye wiH enbateH vs euerychone, 'They will come
 Owt of the Citee thei wiH come anon); 2905 anon out of the
 city.
- I wote my self as wele as eny wight, 2906
 ffor ther is on) that wiH be aH ther gide ;
 In aH the world) is nott A better knyght
 Thanne he is on), and better dare Abide.' 2909
 'Nay,' quod the kyng', 'AH that shalbe denyed,
 ffor in wurchippe and in knyghtoode sekerly
 I knowe hym) nott that is so good as I. 2912
- Notwithstondeng' After your good avise, 2913
 late vs anon) goo sett our' feld ayeyn),
 And wheder they or we shaH bere the prise, Let us go
 Ryght sone we shaH haue knowlage in certayn).' 2916 set our field
 Anon) withaH thei gaderid on) the playn) again.'
 The kyng) ost, and in conclusion)
 They hym) enbatelid streyght as for the town). 2919
- Thanne sayde madan, that was the kyng' of Trase,
 'Me think ye do right wele to sette this feld),
 ffor ye shaH see withynne a litiff space,
 They wiH come owt or ellys them) yeld). 2923
 And whanne thei of the Citee them) beheld),
 hough) sone they were enbatelid euerychone,
 They tared not, butt furth) they come Alone,¹ 2926
 They of the city
 came forth

¹ ? anone.

- A grete nowmber of men) in good arraye : 2927
 Thanne they withoute anon to them) thei hyed,
 Right sone thei mette, And made no more delaye,
 and made no more delay. ffuH fressh on) [them] thei sette on) euery side, 2930
 DareH anon) kyng^t Sanyk had Aspyed,
 Darell ran at King Sanyk, and broke his arm in two. And with his spere he ranne and smote hym) soo,
 That with that stroke he brake his arme on) twoo. 2933
- Barachias, king of Europe, Thanne came rideng^t the kyng^t barachias, 2934
 Of Europe he was lord and Souereyn) ;
 Whanne Anasore Aspyed where he was,
 was smitten down by Anasore. To hym) he ranne and smote hym) for certeyn), 2937
 That from) his hors he felle vppon) the playn),
 And as he felH his legge was brokyn) soo,
 That from) the grownde he myght noo ferther goo. 2940
- Madan, the king of Thrace, was slain by Generydes. Thanne the kyng^t of Trace putt hym) self in prese, 2941
 Madan he hight so as I vnderstounde,
 To hym) anon) thanne ranne Generides,
 Right wele armed, a good spere in his hande, 2944
 Ther myght no maner harnesse hym) withstonde) ;
 ffor thoroughowt he strake hym) quyte And clene,
 That atte bak the rede penseH was sene ; 2947
- The king of kings And with that stroke he felH and ther he dyed. 2948
 The kyng^t of kynggez harkenyd of that case,
 he taryd not nor lenger wold Abide,
 Butt rideth furth streyght in to the place 2951
 Ther as Madan the kynggez body was,
 beheld it with a heavy cheer. And it beheld with a fuH hevy chere,
 Complayneng^t sore¹ A pitevous thing^t to here. 2954
- He hadde hym) do right wurchipfuH seruice, 2955
 And harmones, the kyng^t of higher ynde,
 That what so euer he dede in eny wise

¹ MS. *some*.

- Thoo ij princes wer' neuer owt of his mynde : 2958
 And for be cause they wer' to hym so kynd,
 And sware his othe as he was rightwise kyngt,
 Ther deth he wold' avenge for eny thingt. 2961
- And in this hast he rode in to the feldt, 2962
 AbeH that was of perse the Banere,
 To hym he Ranne and smote hym thorough y^e sheldt,
 ffor thorough owt y^e harnes persid y^e spere, 2965
 And afterward he bought that stroke full dere,
 And with his swerd he smote hym ayeyn),
 And slew hym or he passid owt of the playn). 2968
- Grete hevynes made his felissheppe aH, 2969
 Whanne thei perseyued suerly how it was,
 And first and formest in especiaH,
 The dede body they caryed from the place 2972
 To the Citee not half a myle of space,
 And as the Costom was, after ther gise,
 They beryed hym¹ in honorabiH wise. 2975
- The bateH thanne enduryd passing sore, 2976
 And many lordes slayn on euery side,
 They of the town had fought so longt afore,
 That thei ne myght noo lenger ther abide, 2979
 And to the Citeewarde furst ganne they ride ;
 Yet or they were entered euerychone,
 Of them ther were distressid manye on). 2982
- The Sowdon was as woode as he myght be, 2983
 To see his knyghtes stande in suche distresse,
 AH full of thought and counfortles was he ;
 To hym anon thanne seid Generides, 2986
 ' Good ser,' quod he, ' take ye no maner of hevynesse,
 Nowshynneth the sonne and [now] god sendith showrez,
 This day was therys, A nother² shalbe ourez. 2989

He rode to
the field and
slew Abell,
the standard-
bearer of
Persia.

[leaf 16]

They of the
town rode city-
ward,

and many of
them were
distressed.

The Sultan
was mad to
see them.

Generydes said,

¹ MS. *them*

² MS. *And A nother*

‘Let us rest a day or two, and give them battle again.’	And late vs rest as for a daye or twayne, That your’ pepitt may haue refresshing’, Thanne we wolle geve them) bateH new ageyn), Withoute delaye and lenger taryeng’, And with the grace of god and good gideng’; And trust suerly, ye shaH wele vnderstonde, That we shaH haue of them) the ouer hande.’	2990 2993 2996
	Now they haue refresshid them) trewly, And are redy ther enmys to Assayle, ¹ A thowsand knyghtez in A companye, And furtH they went to geve them) new bateH, With grete corage in knyghthode to preuayle ; And whanne the toder meny them) beheldt, Anon) they came and mette them) in the feld.	2997 3000 3003
The battle then began anew.	And in a valy togederwardt they went, The bateH thanne beganne new ayeyn), No trewys was taken) ne noo poyntement, Butt strongt feightyngt and many knyghtez slayn); Generides, for to sey yow certeyn, Whom) that euer he mette vppon) the grene, ffrom) his sadiH he wente quyte And clene.	3004 3007 3010
The king’s host fled.	Syr Anasore the knyght, And ser DareH, And AH the toder knyghtez euerychone, Eche for his parte quyte hym) self futH wele, And of the kynges ost slew many on); The remenaunte remevid bak anon), And as thei fled, the writengt makith mynd,	3011 3014
Ermones,	Come Ermones, the kyngt of higher ynd,	3017
with his mighty men and their foul weapons, (see p. 60, p. 80,)	With myghti men) of mervelous makyngt, like as it is rehersed here before ; Ther wepons fowle and itt faryngt,	3018

¹ MS. *Assoyle*.

- Wher with they layde on) strok[e]s grete And sore.
 Kyng^t Ermones, to say yow ferthermore,
 Ser Anosore right sone he had Aspied, rode at Sir Anosore,
 And furth with aH to hym he ganne ride : 3024
- With his wepon) long^t and iH faryng^t, 3025
 he slew his hors and smote hym) on) the hede,
 And in the feld he left hym) liggeng^t, slew his horse,
and left him
lying in the
feld for dead.
 Demyng^t non) other butt that he was dede, 3028
 With Anosore ther was non other rede,
 Butte vppe he rose as god wold^t geve hym) grace,
 And to his felawes furth he goth a pase. 3031
- Hym to a venge his thought was and his mend, 3032
 And sone he was vppon) another stede,
 Streight he rideth to a knyght of ynde,
 And with a swerd^t he cleue a ij his hede, Anosore got
another steed,
and slew a
knight of India. 3035
 That in the feld he felle ther and was dede :
 Whanne Ermones wist of this Aventure, Ermones
 A hevy man) he was I¹ yow ensur^t, 3038
- And streyght he rideth onto Generides : 3039 rode at
Generydes,
 Butt² he anon) was ware of his comyng^t,
 And with a naked swerd in to the prese
 Ayenst hym) fuH fast he come rideng^t ; 3042
 As sone as Ermones the kyng^t
 Sawe that he was withynne his wepons length,
 Anon) he smote Att hym) with aH his strength. 3045 and smote
at him,
- His wepon) light vppon) Generides, 3046
 And brast his sheld with aH in peys twayn), breaking
his shield.
 Also it ranne down) quyte thorough the harnes,
 A grace of god that he had not ben) slayn) ; 3049
 Ther with Generydes smote hym) ayeyn), Generydes clave
his head to the
breast.
 Thoroughowt the helme a hye vppon) the crest,
 And clauē his hede streyte down) to the brest. 3052

¹ MS. *h.*² MS. *Be.*

- And with that stroke kyng^r Ermones was ded ; 3053
 ffor hymⁿ his knyghtez made grete ordenaunce,
 They hymⁿ with drew, ther was nonⁿ other rede,
 And fast they hyed themⁿ owt of ther distaunce, 3056
 Thinkyng^r themⁿ self owt of good gouernaunce,
 And as they rode togeder complayneng^r,
 Vpponⁿ the way they mette Boleynⁿ the kyng^r ; 3059
- His men
carried him off,
[leaf 16, back]
and met King
Belen,
who would have
had them turn,
- And faynⁿ he wold haue themⁿ turne ayeyn), 3060
 Comfortid themⁿ in aH that euer he mygh^t,
 Butt aH that euer he spak it was in vaynⁿ ;
 With that anonⁿ ther answerd hymⁿ a knygh^t, 3063
 And as the story seith Otran he hight,
 ‘Of our’ fortune in euery thyng^r,’ quod he,
 ‘I shaH suerly telle yow the certente. 3066
- but they said,
‘In yonder host
is a knight who
is a very fiend,
- In yender ost,’ quod he, ‘ther is a knygh^t, 3067
 he is noo very manⁿ, what euer he be,
 Butt rather a fende, and that I yow be hight,
 Ther is no manⁿ alyve that he wolle flee ; 3070
 Oure kyng^r is ded, whiche sore repentith me.
 And suche a prince we canne not gete ayeyn),
 And he it is suerly that hathⁿ hymⁿ slayn.’ 3073
- and hath slain
our king.’
- Whanne kyng^r Bolyⁿ had knowlage of y^t case, 3074
 A hevy manⁿ he was and comfoteles,
 And furth with aH he rideth on a pace,
 aH in a rage seching^r Generides, 3077
 And ther they mette togeder in the prese,
 Thanne was the bateH aH togeder doon),
 So att that tyme thei were departid sone. 3080
- but they were
parted.
- The men of
Persia won
the day.
- The menⁿ of perce that day were fortentat, 3081
 The toder fled as fast as euer thei mygh^t,
 And in hymⁿ self they stode soo desolate ;

- Whanne kyng^t Bolynd saw they were putte to flight,
That in noo wise they wold no lenger fight,
With hym ther was non other poyntement,
Butt lost the feld and rideth to his tent. 3087
- Too the Citee rideth Generides, 3088
With knyghtes and with Sqyers many on),
ffor hym was made grete Loy of more And lesse,
And festis made among them eu[er]ychon). 3091
Thanne to the Sowdon furth he went anon),
Of whom he hadde his thank right specially,
And grete yeftys as he was wele worthy. 3094
- The kyng^t of kynggez stift was in his tent, 3095
And yndly wroth that no man cowde hym plese,
And in hym self he cowde not be content,
Till he had fought with Generides, 3098
They twayn to geder owt of all the prese,
And ther vpon he callid his counceh,
That his entent the souner myght prevayle. 3101
- At his callyng^t his lordes came anon), 3102
And this he sayde, that every man myght here,
'Now ye be here in present euerychon,
This is,' quod he, 'the effecte of my mater, 3105
It is now a full quarter of a yere,
Oure lyeng^t her the Sowdon for to wyne,
And att this day we are new to be gynne. 3108
- And yet I wote right wele it lithe in me, 3109
The Sowdon to distroye and all his lande,
Of all maner vitayle I haue plente ;
Notwithstandyng^t, if he wil take on hand 3112
To fynde a knyght, that I may vnderstond
Be right wele born and of high lenage,
To fight with me for all this Eritage, 3115
- Generydes rides to the city,
and is received with great joy.
- The King of kings was wroth,
and would not be content till he fought with Generydes.
- He called his council.
'We have been here now a quarter of a year,' said he,
'and have to begin anew.
- Let the Sultan find a knight to fight with me,

- and make an
end of this war.¹
- And so to make an ende of aH this werre 3116
Betwix vs twayne ; and if he wold not so,
I wiH distroye his land both nyghe and ferre,
his land and hym self where euer hee goo, 3119
And for the Accomplishment Also,
Be cause I wold that it shuld be endid sone,
Withynne iiij dayes I wold that it were done.¹ 3122
- King lamadon gave answere in this case, 3123
And in his speche he was som what dismayed,
This cowardly his hert and his seruice
Was to the Sowdon, what so euer he sayde ; 3126
Yet not for thy his reasone furth he layde
A H opynly ; ‘ my lordes,’ quod he,
‘ The kyng hath seid right wele as semyth me.’ 3129
- For this cause he gaue sone his assentt, 3130
That in that space a treti myght be hadde ;
And as he seid aH other were content,
Thanne was the kyng of kynggez passing glad, 3133
And vpon these iij lordes wise and sadde
A poyntid were to goo on this message,
Onto the Sowdon and his Baronage. 3136
- On of them iij of Corynth¹ was he born), 3137
Callid Sampson, the story doth expresse ;
The secunde, and his ancetors be forn),
In Damask born), the writeng doth witesse, 3140
A man of wurchippe and of grete sadnesse ;
The iij^{de} was a man), to say yow right,
Of Ethiope, and Ionathas he hight. 3143
- Anon these lordes went on ther message, 3144
Eche man A brawnche of Olyve in his hande,
In token of pece for ther viage,

each with a
branch of olive.

¹ MS. *Cornyth*.

- Too goo and come saff, as I vnderstonde, 3147
 lyke as the custom was in euery lande ;
 So fourth they went withoute more¹ delay,
 To the Sowdon ther errand for to say. 3150 [leaf 17]
- And whanne that thei were come to his presence, 3151
 Of ther message they kept noo thyng^t in store,
 Butt in aH the hast they told^t hym the sentence,
 like as it is rehersed here before, 3154
 In euery maner thing^t and summe² what more,
 So as the kyng^t gave them in commaundment,
 Accordeng^t sum what onto his entent ; 3157
- The whiche was this, to say yow in substaunce, 3158
 That he shuld send his doughter to the kyng^t,
 And by that meane the striff and variaunce
 Be twix them bothe myght the souner haue endyng.³
 ffor an answeere in ther ayeynd goyng,
 Of ther massag^t they praed them to say
 In aH this mater playnly ye or nay. 3164
- Whanne ther massag^t was aH to geder sayde, 3165
 Ther was noo lord nee knyght that gave answer,
 Wher with trewly the Sowdon was dismayde ;
 Generides sawe that, and drew hym nere : 3168
 ‘ Ser, if it like your goodnes for to here,
 I shaft for yow,’ quod he, ‘ be in this place,
 Be your licence geve answer in this case.’ 3171
- And thus he sayde be fore them eu[er]ychon : 3172
 ‘ Thez massangers they shaft wele vnderstonde,
 Among your knyghtez aH that ther is on
 ShaH vnder take to Answer for this lande ; 3175
 ffor I my self wiH take it att ther hand,
 And here is my glove, this mater to defende,
 Withynne iiij dayes therof to make an ende. 3178

They came to
the Sultan
and told him
the message,

and that he
should send
his daughter to
the King.

The lords were
silent and the
Sultan dismayed.

Generydes
undertook to
answer for the
land.

¹ MS. *wordes more.*

² MS. *sunne.*

³ MS. *an end.*

- Generydes
guaranteed that
no dishonour
should befall
Clarionas.
- And your' doughter also, Clarionas, 3179
 he shaH do hir no maner of villanye,
 Nother dishonour, whiH I haue liff and space,
 And ferthermore I vnderstonde trewly, 3182
 By ther massage declaryd opynly,
 Ther shaH non take of hym this enterprise,
 Butt he be wele born in eny wise. 3185
- And to that ye shaH wele knowe my counceH, 3186
 Was neuer man herd so moche of me ;
 A kyngges sonne I am withoute fayle,
 And my moder is a quene in certayn[te] : 3189
 here afterward ye shaH wele know and see,
 Althoughe he be a prince of nobyH fame,
 To fight with me to hym shalbe noo shame.' 3192
- The Sultan was
glad.
- Whanne the Sowdon perseivid his entent, 3193
 And herd hym wele in al that euer he sayde,
 Thanne was he gladde and verily weH content,
 That he was of so good a knyght purveyd ; 3196
 Yet with hym self he was nott wele apayde,
 And in his mende repentid hym full sore,
 That he so meche had wrongid hym before. 3199
- One of the lords
said Generydes
should take
advice before
meddling with
a prince that
was peerless.
- Whanne these lordes had answere in this wise, 3200
 One of them sayde on to Generides ;
 ' It is weH don that ye take a good advise,
 Or that ye putt your' self so ferre in prese, 3203
 To medyH with a prince that is perles ;
 ffor he is knowen in contres ferre and nere.'
 Generides anon gave hym answere, 3206
- Generydes said,
' Your king is
a noble knight,
- And this he sayde, in presence of them al ; 3207
 ' As for your' kyng', he is a nobiH knyght
 I canne wele think, and so men do hym calle ;

- Butt my quareth is growndid vppon right, 3210
 Whiche gevith me corage for to fight,
 And here my trowth I wolle not fayle my day, but I will not
 My self alone, and so I *prae* yow saye.' 3213 fail my day.'
- They toke his glove, And to that prince thei went 3214
 With ther answeere in euery maner thing':
 And of Generides and his entent
 ffuH playnly thei told onto the kyng': 3217
 And whanne that he ther of had knowlaching,
 The kyng' hym self, withoute eny more, The king
 Ayenst that day he purveyd hym therfore. 3220
- Too aH his ost he gave A speciaH charge, 3221 gave his host
 Ayenst that day that he shuld fight alone, charge to remove
 They shuld remeve that place ij myle large, two miles away,
 And ther to geder abide euerychon 3224
 What euer faH, for reskewe wold he non); for rescue would
 And ther vppon, to folow his entent, he none.
 To them he gave a streight commaundment. 3227
- The Citesens thanne was not wele apayde, 3228 The citizens were
 Be cause Generides to[ke] this in hand: not pleased,
 They love[d] hym so wele, and this they said,
 'A better knyght ther is in noo land.' 3231
 And whanne Clarionas ded vnderstonde
 That he shuld take vppon hym this bateH, and Clarionas
 Thanne was she fuH of thought and noo merveH. 3234 was full of
 thought,
- 'Now, good MirabeH, what is best?' quod she, 3235
 'What shaH I doo? saye me your' good advise.'
 And said, 'wold god he wold do Aftur me,
 Thanne shuld he not take this-interprise.' 3238
 'Nay, late be that in eny maner wise,
 Madame,' quod she, 'for sothe he hath it take,
 ffor his wurchippe he may it not for sake. 3241

- Nether he wiþ, Madame, I telle yow playn).’ 3242
 ‘ Now thanne,’ quod she, ‘ me think this is to doon);
 I wiþ send hym Gwynot my chaunberleyn,
 This rede penseþ I wiþ send hym anon); 3245
- [leaf 17, back] And or that he on) the bateþ goon),
 ffor esing^t of my hert I wiþ hym) praye,
 To speke wiþ me to morow or to day.’ 3248
- ‘ That is wele doo,’ quod she, ‘ withoute lese.’ 3249
- and sent for
Generydes
Thanne chargyd she hir chaunberleyn) to goo :
 ‘ hye yow,’ quod she, ‘ onto Generides ;
 This rede penseþ ye shaþ bere hym) also, 3252
 Whiche I myself enbrowdred and no moo :
 Pray hym) also or he passe the Citee,
 to come and
speak with her.
In eny wise that he wiþ speke with me.’ 3255
- On this message now goþ hir chaunberleyn), 3256
 And to Generides he takith the waye,
 With hir tokyn) and aþ hir errand playn),
 In aþ the hast possible that he may ; 3259
 And he also for gate nott for to say,
 On hir behalf afore his departeng^t,
 hir for to see leving^t aþ other thing^t. 3262
- Generydes was
glad of this,
Off that message Generides was fayn), 3263
 And furth with aþ rewardid hym) right weþ ;
 he sent a token) on) to hir ayeyn),
 Bee cause that she shuld^t vnderstonde and fele, 3266
 That he had don) his message euery dele,
 And ferthermore he chargid hym) to say,
 and promised to
see her soon.
he wold^t see hir in aþ the hast he may. 3269
- Now goþ Gwynot¹ vnto Clarionas, 3270
 And told hir what he had don) that day.
 Generides, whanne he had tyme and space,

¹ MS. *Gwynan*.

- To hir chaunber he toke the redy waye ; 3273 He came to her
And att a wyndow, sothely for to say, chamber window.
he spake to hir, right as he wold devise,
Att good leysere in honorabiſt wise. 3276
- Whanne he departid ther was grete hevynes, 3277
And as he toke his leve in his goyng'
Thanne eche to other made to geder full promyse, Each to other
To kepe hym) trew aboue aſt other thing', 3280 made promise
Now late vs thanne speke of Belen) the kyng, to be true.
Whiche att his day thinkyſt with spere and sheld
hym) self alone to come into the feld. 3283
- The iij^{de} morow, as sone as it was day, 3284 On the third
kyng' Belyn) rose and made hym aſt redy, day King Belen
his stede moreſt trappyd in good arraye,
With his harnes enbrowderyd by and by, 3287
hym) self armyd full wele and full sure[ly], armed himself,
his helme was wele ordeynyd for the nonys,
Right wele garnysshed with perle & precious stonys.
- Kyng' Belly) rideth in to the feld alone, 3291 and rode to
As it appoynted was betwix them) twayn) ; the field.
his pepiſt were avoydid euerychone,
And ther he taryed stiſt vpon) the playn), 3294
Supposing' weſt ther was no man) certeyn),
Consideryng' his manhod and his myght, 3297
Wold be so bold ayenst hym) to fight.
- The tidynggez thorough owt the Cite sprong', 3298
hough kyng' Belly) was armed in the mede,
Generides thought he was passing' long',
And furth anon) was broughtt Grisseſt his stede, 3301 Generydes
A myghti hors and very sure atte nede , mounted his
The Sowdon gave it hym) in certente, horse Grisell,
Whiche no man) shuld haue saue only he. 3304

- Hys trappour was made in the fressest wise, 3305
 Wrought with peerlys of mervelus makyng,
 hym self armyd atte poynte devise,
 his helme with stonys had his garnysshyng^e; 3308
 The rede penseH vppon his spere hangyng,
 hym to behold and Iuge withoute dought,
 A knyght hym semyd for to be right stought. 3311
- and all the
 people prayed
 AH the pepyH that in the Citee were, 3312
 Men and women to prayer they them gave,
 Besechyng^e god, with devout maner,
 God to speed
 him.
 To spede hym weH ther contre for to save : 3315
 Clarionas, good tidenggez for to haue,
 late nee erly she wold nott seese,
 Butt nyght And day prayed for Generides. 3318
- The Sultan
 brought him
 to the gate,
 The Sowdon brought hym streight on to y^e gate, 3319
 And in like wise the Citezens euerychon,
 And whanne that they had brought hym AH yer at,
 and he rode
 forth alone,
 he toke his leve and furth he rode alone 3322
 In to the mede, and ther he founde anon
 and found the
 King of kings.
 The kyng^e of kynggez vppe and down rideng^e,
 And he anon to hym com waloping^e. 3325
- Whanne kyng^e Belly saw he was comyng^e, 3326
 To hym he rode, and mette hym on the waye,
 ' Say me sooth,
 quoth Belen,
 ' whether thou
 art a messenger
 or nay.'
 ' I am,' said
 Generydes,
 ' and this is my
 message :
 ' Now say me soth,' quod he, ' withoute feyning^e,
 Wheder art thou a massanger or nay ? ' 3329
 ' I am,' quod he, ' a massanger I saye ;
 This way I take for my right viage
 ffro the Sowdon, and this is my message. 3332
- To warre vppon my lord thou dost hym wrong^e, 3333
 he sent the word now, whanne I cam hym fro,
 Void my lord's
 ground,
 To voyde his grownde and tary not to long^e,

- Vnto thy contre wher thou hast to do : 3336
 This thinkith me best, and if thou wilt do so,
 Ayeyn I wilh goo as a massanger,
 And full trewly declare hym thynne answer'. 3339
- And if thou wilh not follow myn advise, 3340 [leaf 18]
 Thou shaht wele knowe that I am not come on message,
 Peraventur' thou may¹ repent it twyes, if not thou
 That thou hast askid of this lande trevage ; 3343 mayst repent it.'
- To kepe it fre and owt of all *seruage*
 I shaht my self, as for this landis right,
 With goddes grace defende it as a knyght.' 3346
- And kyng' Bellyn whanne his purpose hard, 3347 King Belen
 And wherefore that he came in to the feld,
 Thanne wex he pale and chaungyd clene his mode, waxed pale ;
 hym self anon he closed in his sheld ; 3350
 Generides his countenance behelde,
 he tared not butt dressid hym in his gere,
 And in his hande anon he toke his spere. 3353
- Thanne was no more a do butt on they sett, 3354
 Anon they Ranne to geder in the feld, they ran together,
 The kyng' and he fresshly ther they mette,
 And eche of them smote other on the sheld, 3357 and smote each
 With strokez grete, and bothe ther sperys helde, other with great
 So ther vpon they tared not certayn, strokes.
 Butte furth with all they toke ther course ayeyn. 3360
- Ther stedys were both Inly good and weighth ; 3361
 Generides came rounde vpon the grownde,
 And brake the kynggez helme before his sight,
 The spere went to the vesage quyte and rownde, 3364 In another
 Duryng his liff it myght be know that wound. course Generydes
 The kyng' ayenward strake Generides brake the King's
 Vpon the side, and perished the harness 3367 helm,
 and the King
 pierced his
 harness

¹ MS. *may it.*

- so that the blood ran down. Vnto the skynne ; the blode ranne downe therby, 3368
 Butt, as god wolde, he felt no harme in dede.
- He said in mockery, Thanne saide the kyng sum what in mockery,
 ‘Maister,’ quod he, ‘thy side begynne for to blede,
 Wherefore this is my counceH and my rede,
 ffor this mater noo lenger for to stryff,
- ‘Go home again, and escape alive.’ Go home ageyn and thu shalt skape alyve.’ 3374
- ‘The bleeding,’ said Generydes, ‘is but a jape ; think of the wound on your face.’ ‘I know,’ quod he, ‘that on lyve I may skape, 3375
 And so I shaft wheder thu wilt or noo,
 The bledingge of my side is butt a Iape,
 It increasith my corage to and too ; 3378
 In thi vesage think on thy wounde also,
 The whiche shaft neuer a way I the ensure,
 Whith that yⁿ art a lyvez creature.’ 3381
- The King was wrother, and they ran another course ; Thanne was the kyng^t wrother, I yow behight ; 3382
 They toke ther course and ranne to geder new,
 And ther the stedis mette with suche a myght
 Ther hors foundred, and, for to say yow trew, 3385
 Bothe hors and man and all yer ouer threw ;
 They of the Citee sawe that encownteryng,
 And hough it was befall euery thing. 3388
- Clarionas was heavy for Generydes. And ferd they were as for Generides, 3389
 ffuH hevy was Clarionas thanne also,
 And euer more in prayours stith opese,
 Vnto the tyme she knew it shuld goo. 3392
 of that fortune kyng Bellyne was fuH woo,
 So was Generides a bashed¹ also thore,
 They rose up, Butte vppe they rose, to say yow ferthermore, 3395
- and without knowing it changed horses, and went at each other with their swords. And chaungyd horses onto them bothe vnknowyng,²
 Wherefore they were fuH wroth, I yow ensure ;
 To geder thanne they went with swordes drawe,

¹ MS. *and bashed*.² So MS. *? vnknowe*.

- And leyde on strokes owt of all mesure, 3399
 Generides sward was passing sure,
 And, as the story wele remember canne,
 It was a princes callid Iulyan), 3402
- Generydes'
sword had
belonged to the
Emperour Ju. au.
- Whiche was sumtyme of Rome the Emperour ; 3403
 The Sowdon had it after his deceasse,
 And as a tresour' every day and owre
 he kept that sward in grete tendernesse, 3406
 And after gaue it on to generides ;
 So ferthermore, as I this mater feele,
 Whanne eche of them had beten other wele, 3409
- The kyng of kynggez seid to hym ayeyn), 3410
 'What aylith the to fight for this mater ?
 A grete foly for the take the payne,
 To the it towchith not in no maner ; 3413
 I counceit ther for, while thou art here,
 Be come my man, and thou wilt do so
 The pese shaft sone be twix vs twoo. 3416
- The King of
kings said to him.
'Why dost thou
fight thus ? it
toucheth thee
not.
- Become my man,
- I shaft also in wurchippe the avaunce, 3417
 And largely departe with the also ;
 ffor meche better it lith in my puessence,
 Thanne in the Sowdon powre so to do : 3420
 And for Clarionas I say also,
 Whanne she is myn, here what I say to the,
 Att thy pleasure hir shalt thou haue of me. 3423
- and when
Clarionas is
mine thou shalt
have her.
- And thou wilt not do as I the saye, 3424
 I late the now haue knowlage vterly,
 That of my hand here shalt thou dye to daye ;
 Troste noo lenger to my curtessy, 3427
 I haue entretyd the full lently,
 And how thou wilt be rewlid in this case,
 Say ye or nay, or ye go owt of this place.' 3430
- If not thou shalt
die to-day.'

- Generydes
answers, 3431
 Thanne furth with aH Answered Generides,
 'To thy *seruice*,' quod he, 'if I me bynde,
 I se right wele I may sone haue my pece ;
 [leaf 16, back] But that was neuer enprentid in my mende, 3434
 'I cannot be
 untrew to my
 promise ;
 To be vntrew it come me neuer of kynde ;
 That I haue said and take of my promys,
 O trowth I wiH not breke it in noo wise. 3437
- and as for
 Clarionas, I will
 never haue her
 of thee, 3438
 And forthermore, as for Clarionas,
 I vnderstonde thu proferest hir to me,
 Whiche is not thyne truly ne neuer was,
 And suche a yeft is litiH worth parde ; 3441
 ffor one thing' shaft I say in certente,
 If I hir shaft reioyse, so god me save,
 Of the playnly hir wiH I neuer haue.' 3444
- The king was
 more wroth
 than ever,
 and they went
 together again. 3445
 Thanne was the kyng' mech' wrother than before,
 And on) they went to geder now ayen) ;
 Thanne eyther other layde wonder sore,
 Wherof the sownd rebowndid on) the playn), 3448
- The king's steed
 which Generydes
 rode began
 to fail, 3451
 The stede that was the kynggez for certayn)
 Vnder Generides beganne to fayle,
 Whiche hym) abashed sore and noo merveH.
- The kynggez stede was alwey good and sure 3452
 ffor aH his labour', yet onnese he swett ;
 he saw right wele y^e toder myghT not dure,
 Wherefore on) hym) right fressly¹ he sett, 3455
 The shulders of ther horsez to geder mett ;
 Generides vppon) the feyntid stede,
 and went to
 the ground. 3458
 Streyght to the grownde hors a[nd] man) yede.
- His sword fell
 from his hand,
 but he caught it
 again, 3459
 His swerd ther with ou[t] of his hand it feH,
 Butt as god wold he had it sone ayeyn),
 he lay not long' but riseth fayre and stiH,

¹ ? *fersly*.

- And furth he goth, to sey yow for certayn), 3462
 To kyng^t Bellyng^t, And toke hym be the reyne. and seized the king's bridle.
 he sporyd his hors and from hym wold haue goo;¹
 'A bide,' quod he, 'thu shalt not skape me soo. 3465
- This stede,' he seith, 'hath seruyd the full wele, 3466
 The whiche trewly repentith me full soore,
 Ayenst my will thu hast hym euerydele,
 Butt now o trowth thu shalt haue hym no more, 3469
 This stede is myn, thu wist it wele [be]fore ; 'This steed is mine, alight anon.'
 A light anon withoute wordes moo,
 Or suerly I shaH make the or I goo.' 3472
- The kyng^t presid fast away certayn), 3473 The king pressed away, but Generydes held the rein, and between them the horse fell backward.
 Generides helde stiH the reane alway ;
 And so be twix the striving^t of them twayn),
 The horse reversid bak, and ther he lay. 3476
 Generides anon to hym ganne say,
 'Not long agoo thu haddist me in this plight,
 And now I trost to god I shaH the quyte.' 3479
- Generides his swarde toke in his hande, 3480 Generydes took his sword Claryet
 Claryet it hight, the store tellith me so,
 A better swerd ther was neuer in noo land.
 The kyng^t arose and wold a gon hym froo, 3483
 ffor of his fayling^t ther he was full woo ;
 Generides was noo thyng^t eviH apayde,
 And with his swerd full fast on hym he layde. 3486 and laid on the King full fast,
- The kynges sheld he made a quarter lesse, 3487 cutting a piece off his shield, and breaking the harness on his knce.
 The swerd is glansid down on his kne,
 And ther is² brake asonder the harnes,
 That aH to geder bare a man myght see : 3490
 The kyng^t Bellyn was wrothe as he myght be,
 he strake att hym with a full eger wiH,
 And in the tethe he woundid hym full iH. 3493 The King wounded him in the teeth.

¹ MS. *goon*,

² ? *it*.

- 'Now,' said he, Thanne seyde the kyng, 'now att all aventur' 3494
 'I have quit you.' I haue the quyte, and ther of am I fayn,
 The next that I the geve I the ensure,
 I wiþ thu vndersto[n]de it for sertayn : 3497
 Ne shaþ thu quyte it me ayeyn.'
 With thoo wordes wrothe was Generides,
 And to the kyng^t presid stiþ opese. 3500
- Generydes And thanne suche a stroke he gave hym *yer* 3501
 gave him such a stroke that he cut his ear off. Vppon the helme, the bare visage was sene ;
 The swerd was sharpe and ranne down be his ere,
 That from the hede he smote it quyte and clene, 3504
 And from his swerd it felle vppon the grene :
 Thanne¹ was kyng Bellyn astownyd sore,
 And in hym self abashed more and more. 3507
- The King was abashed. They were full very bothe, I yow be highþ, 3508
 Both were weary, but their hearts were strong. Notwithstondeng^t ther hartys were full strong^t,
 On them ther was no pece of harnys right,
 Of plate ne mayle, but all to geder wrong^t ; 3511
 And no wonder, for they foughten long^t,
 Yet in his hert for anger and for payn,
 The kyng^t stroke to Generides ayeyn, 3514
- The King struck again at Generydes, and smote him on the head. And with his swerd he smote [him] on the hede, 3515
 That wher he was he wist not vterly ;
 'If thu,' quod he, 'had done after my rede,
 Thu shuldest not now haue ben in this parte.' 3518
 Generides hym Answeryd trewelly,
 'If I noo thyng^t dede after thynne entent,
 Trust me right wele yet did I not repent.' 3521
- Generydes in return smote him on the same side where he was hurt before, And with that worde he smote hym so ayeyn, 3522
 And cleue his hede down and hurt hym² sore,
 And by fortune it happid so certeyn,

¹ MS. *Thāme*.² MS. *hyn*.

- Vppon that side that he was hurt before : 3525
 he bled so meche he myght stond no more,
 Butt to the grownde anon *yer* he felle down),
 And sore for blode he lay stift in swoune. 3528
- and he lay in
a swoon.
[leaf 19]
- Generides stode stift and hym be¹ held, 3529
 And of the kyng^t thanne had he grete pite,
 he toke hym vppe and layde hym on his sheld ;
 Thanne seid the kyng^t, softly as it wold be, 3532
 ‘haue here my swerd, I yeld it vppe to the,
 As to a knyght the wordes,’² he saide,
 ‘In aH my lyffe that euer I assayde. 3535
- Off aH this land I geve vppe my quareH,
 And so I do Clarionas also, 3536
 ffor certayn) butt if she loue yow wele
 She do no thyng^t hir part as she shuld do, 3539
 And this I wold require yow or ye goo,
 That I myght goo ther as my pepiH be,
 And so to passe furth in to my contre.’ 3542
- and will pass
forth to my
country.’
- To hym) thanne sayde Generides ayeyn), 3543
 ‘AH this request I graunt it verely ;’
 And vppe he toke hym) in his armys twayn),
 And sett hym) on his stede³ fuH Ientely. 3546
 So furth he ridith fayre and soberly ;
 Whanne his pepiH sawe hym) in that maner,
 They mett hym) aH with a hevy chere. 3549
- His people met
him with a
heavy cheer.
- Vppon) the playn) restid Generides, 3550
 Wery and feynte, it was noo synne to saye ;
 And whanne he was sum what more att his ease
 Toward) the Citee streyght he toke the waye. 3553
 They of the town) knewe wele be his araye
 That it was he, and glad thei were eche on),
 So furth he came rideng^t hym) self alone, 3556
- and then went
back to the city

¹ MS. *he.* ² So MS. ? *worthiest.* ³ MS. *stete.*

- with his two
swords.
The lordis all
met him, and
all the people
- Towarde the Citee girde with his swerdez twayn) : 3557
The lordes aH mett hym) withoute the town),
And aH the Citezens vppon) the playn),
With mynstrellys of many A dyuerse sownd, 3560
Preletys, prestys, with riA precession),
And Childryn) syngeng) in the fressest wise,
With merthis moo thanne I canne now device. 3563
- Clarionas was
nothing behind.
- Clarionas she was noo thyng) behynd, 3564
A H hir counfort was by hir self alone ;
In hir hart she was and in hir mende
As weH content as aH they euerychone. 3567
- They brought
him to the
Sultan, who
gave him great
gifts and thanked
him.
- To the Sowdon) thanne was he brought anon)
Whiche gave hym) yeftez grete for his seruice,
And thankid hym) in full specially wise. 3570
- Anon) with aH were brought fro dyuerse place, 3571
- The best surgeons
that could be
found came to
attend him.
- Good sorgeons, the best that cowde be fownde,
And they full sone withynne a litiH space,
hym) vndertoke to make hym) hoole and sounde, 3574
Of euery hurt and eke of euery wounde,
Whiche that he had and so to hym) thei saide,
Where with the Sowdon) was full wele apayde. 3577
- Belen told his
lordis he had
given up his
claim to Persia
and Clarionas,
- Now kyng Belyn) lithe in full hevy case, 3578
And told his lordis stonyng) hym) before,
Of perce lande and of Clarionas
he hath geve vppe his clayme for euermore : 3581
And ther with aH his woundes blede so sore,
his liff cowde no man) vnder take certayn),
And so he dyed withynne a day or twayn). 3584
- and died of his
wounds in a
day or two.
- For hym) his pepiH made grete hevynes, 3585
Among) them) self with peteuose complayneng),
And in aH goodly hast thei ganne hym) dresse,

In to Egipte his body for to bryng ^t ,	3588	His people took his body to Egypt, and the lords went home to their countries.
With grete estate and honour like a kyng ^t ;		
Whanne that was don ^d with grete solempnite,		
The lordes aH went home in to ther contre.	3591	
Now late vs leue them ^d in ther contres aH,	3592	
In to the tyme thei were sent for ayeyn ^d ,		
Whiche was not longe, and in especiaH		
To make Gwynan ¹ ther kyng and souereyn ^d ,	3595	Gwynan, the King's son, succeeded him,
Whiche was the kyng ^t of kyngges sone certayn ^d ,		
And so thei were agreed on ^d hym ^d alone,		
he for to Reigne vppon ^d them ^d euerychone.	3598	
And to sey yow in short conclusion ^d ,	3599	
Be aH the hoole agrement of the lande,		
Of Egipte he was kyng ^t and bare the crown ^d ,		
Thanne to them ^d aH seid he, as I wnderstonde,	3602	and told his people that he did not give up his claim to Persia and Clarionas.
' Suche maters as my fader toke in hande,		
Towchyng ^t the Sowdon ^d and Clarionas,		
Ye shaH sone wete my plesure in this case.	3605	
As for the land of Perce aH maner wayis,	3606	
I wiH pleylnly declare yow myn ^d entent,		
My lord and fader quyte it in his dayes		
Yet for aH that I was not of assentt,	3609	
Nor noo wise I canne not be content ;		
And in like wise as for clarionas,		
I wiH not be agreyd, nor neuer was.'	3612	
Thanne was ther a man ^d of grete powre,	3613	There was a subtil knight,
A knyght that was wele cherished with y ^e kyng ^t ,		
he was right weel betrost both ferr ^t and neere,		
What euer he saide or dede in eny thyng ^t ,	3616	
A witty man ^d , And subtiH in werkyng ^t ,		
Ser YueH the Barn ^d , the story seith he high ^t ,		
This was his name to say the very right.	3619	Sir Yvell the Barn,

¹ MS. *Swynan*.

- [leaf 19, back]
to whom the
King in secret
told his love for
Clarionas.
- In secrete wise the kyng^t saide to the knyght, 3620
 ‘ I sha^{ll} yow telle my fortune as it was :
 It happyd me,’ quod he, ‘ I had a sight
 Vppon the towre of faire Clarionas, 3623
 And here I loue ; play[n]ly this is the case :
 here to reioyse I wold haue sought the wayes,
 Butt I for bare it in my faders dayes. 3626
- ‘ How can I
best obtain
her?’
- The knight said,
- And now I *præ* yow telle me your’ advise, 3627
 hough I myght best to my purpose Attayne.’
 The knyght anon gave answere in this wise :
 ‘ To folow your’ entent, I wold be fayn) 3630
 To putt ther to my diligence and payn),
 And in this case I hope to do so wele,
 That ye sha^{ll} haue your’ pleasure euery dele. 3633
- ‘ I must have
a swift ship
prepared for
seven years,
- and in that time
I shall convey
her to this
country.’
- Butt I must haue A shippe bothe good and wight, 3634
 And that it be right swiff vnder a saile ;
 ffor vij yere it must be redy dight,
 With men) I now and plente of vitalle, 3637
 And in that tyme withoute eny fayle,
 I sha^{ll} conueeye hir in to this contree,
 And *peraventur*’ souner so may it be.’ 3640
- With his promys the kyng^t was wele content, 3641
 And thankyd hym) right hertely therefore :
 A Shippe was purveyd after his entent,
 With a^{ll} that is rehersed here before, 3644
 And as fortune kepith here thanke in store,
 And Shewith favour’ to suche as ben) full ith,
 Come was the wynde full redy att his with. 3647
- A ship was
provided,
- and the wind
was ready.
- He sailed to
the land of
Persia,
and found a
hauen
- So long^t he sayleth as I vnderstonde, 3648
 That of the lande of Perse he hadde a sight ;
 Whanne he came nere a havyn) ther he fownde,

- And thederward he toke the way full right : 3651
 Whanne thei were in, as fast as euer thei myght,
 Ther ancens owt thei cast on euery side, where he cast
 ffor ther awhile they cast them to Abide. 3654 anchor,
- Vppon that havyn ther was a faire Citee, 3655
 Whiche stode full fayre vppon the Ryvers side ;
 This knyght anon owt of the shippe goth he,
 Butt twayn with hym and on to be his gide, 3658 and landed with
 The remenaunt shuld in the shippe a bide two others,
 A day or twayne, and thanne, in craft[y] wise, and a guide.
 Go to the town be waye of merchaundise, 3661 The rest he
 ordered
- To bye and sell as thei see other doo, 3662 to buy and sell
 Vnto the tyme they hard of hym ayeyn. till they heard of
 So gothe he furth withoute wordes moo, him again.
 And as he went, he mette vppon the playn 3665 As he went he
 A man that was right ferr' in age certayn, met an old man,
 And ah for growe, a pilgrim as he were, a palmer,
 Thanne to hym saide the knyght in this maner : 3668
- 'Fader,' quod he, 'what tyme is of the day ?' 3669 of whom he
 'ffor certayn, ser,' he saide, 'ij after none.' asked the time
 Thanne seid the knyght, 'I purpose, if I maye, of day,
 This town to se, and whanne I haue don 3672
 In to the shippe to come ayeyn right sone.'
 Ayen thanne seid the palmer to the knyght,
 'That may ye do long er¹ it be nyght.' 3675
- 'What do yow calle this town ?' quod he ayeyn. 3676 the name of
 'Ser,' quod the palmer, 'Clarionat it hight.' the town,
 'Now, good fader, yet wold I wete full fayn, Clarionat,
 Wher is the Sowdon, tell me very right : 3679 and where the
 Of his estate fayne wold I haue a sight.' Sultan lay.
 'The Sowdon,' he saide, 'ser, belevith me,
 he lith att Mountoner the riche Citee. 3682 'At Mountoner,'
 said the palmer

¹ MS. *longer*.

- ‘I was there
but lately,
and he made a
feast for a
knight Generydes,
who fought
King Bellyn,
and kept this
land from
danger.
- Therin I was but late withoute lese, 3683
And thanne he made a fest I vnderstonde ;
Ther is a knyght callid Generides,
he hath made hym^e Stiward^e of a^{ll} his land ; 3686
With kyng^e Bellyn^e he fought hand to hand,
And wanne hym^e in the feld as ye sha^{ll} here,
And kept this lande from^e thraldom^e¹ and dangere.
- He loves also
Clarionas,
the Sultan’s
daughter,
and she loves
him again.’
- That knyght also lovith Clarionas, 3690
The Sowdon is hir fader in certayn),
And suche he dede first *seruice* in the place,
The love hath lastid still betwix them^e twayn), 3693
ffor in like wise she lovith [hym] ayeyn^e :
And sekerly this is the comon^e voyse,
In a^{ll} the courte that he shall hir reioyse.’ 3696
- Then said the
knight,
‘Set me in the
way to this city.’
- Thanne saide the knyght, ‘now, fader, I yow *prae*,
Be cause ye knowe so with this contre,
To do so moche as sette me in the way
Whiche were most redyest to the Citee : 3700
And dowte ye not ye sha^{ll} rewardid be.’
‘Wele, *ser*,’ he saide, ‘I sha^{ll} yow telt soo wele,
That of your^e waye ye sha^{ll} fayle neuer a dele. 3703
- Said the palmer,
‘Go by yonder
forest, the
way will bring
you to a plain,
over which you
must travel
four days,
and then come
to the city ’
- Take hede of yender forest, I yow saye, 3704
ffor ther by must ye goo for eny thing^e ;
Withouten^e fayle ther lithe the redy way.
Vnto a goodly playn^e it² with yow bryng, 3707
Whiche sha^{ll} endure yow iiij dayes traveling^e,
And thanne anon^e, withoute eny more,
The fayre Citee ye sha^{ll} see yow before.’ 3710
- [leaf 20]
The knight
came to the end
of his journey
- This knyght furth with rewardid hym^e right wele, 3711
And furth he gothe [fu^h] streight vppon^e y^e way
As he was taught, and faylid neuer a dele,

¹ MS. *thraldon*.² MS. *in*.

- Tiſt he come to the ende of his Turnay, 3714
 Whiche was atte after none the iiijth day : on the fourth
 And as it was abougħt the oure of three, day,
 Ser Iueſt the knygh̄t came in to the Citee. 3717
- To the Sowdon̄ fuſt Streigh̄t he toke the way ; 3718 and went straight
 Whanne he hym̄ sawe he ſpake att his device, to the Sultan,
 ‘Ser, please it yow,’ quod he, ‘that I may ſaye whom he told
 Wherefore that I am come and [in] what wiſe ; 3721 his ſtory,
 The trougħt̄ is this to offre my ſeruiſe :
 Gwynan̄ the kynḡ hath bannyſſhed me his lande, how that Gwynan
 And for what cauſe ye ſhaſt̄ wele vnderſtonde. 3724 had banished him
- His fader made a clayme to y^{is} contre, 3725 for oppoſing his
 And I was euer ayenſt hym̄ in that caſe, father’s claim
 Wherefore the kynḡ his ſonne now ha[tij]tħ me, to Persia.
 And vtterly hathe putte me from̄ his grace. 3728
 here in this lande his fader ſlayn̄ was,
 Thanne was I trobolid ſore on̄ euery ſide,
 In Egipte durſt I not lenger abide.’ 3731
- Ther with the Sowdon̄ anſweryd hym̄ ayeyn̄ : 3732 The Sultan
 ‘To my preſence ye are wiſt̄ come,’ quod he ; answered,
 ‘I muſt of reaſone tender yow certayn̄,
 Sithe ye haue be thus wrongyd for love of me, 3735 ‘Since you have
 In my ſeruiſe now dayly ſhaſt̄ ye be ; been wronged
 And if ye haue be trobelyd her before, for my ſake
 Of your’ pleaſure now ſhaſt̄ ye haue the more.’ 3738 you ſhall be in
 my ſervice.’
- So ſtiſt̄ opece he was ther abidenḡ, 3739 He abode in his
 In his ſeruiſe purpoſynḡ to endure, ſervice,
 Paſſynḡ Ientiſt̄ he was in euery thinḡ,
 And fuſt pleaſaunt to euery creature ; 3742 and was gentle
 And aſt̄ that was don̄ vnder a coverture, and pleaſant to
 That what he thought̄ ther ſhuld no man̄ vnderſtonde, every one, to
 Of his treſone that he had take in hand. 3745 cover his treaſon.

- One day the Sultan was alone
in his garden.
Sir Yvell was aware,
Vppon a tyme the Sowdon was alone, 3746
In a garden was walkyng to and fro,
Ser Iueſt Was ware therof anon,
To hym he goth withoute wordes moo. 3749
- and told him
that Generydes
'I must say yow,' quod he, 'a word or twoo ;
Besechyng yow to kepe my counceſt,
Whiche shalbe to your' honour and [a]vayle. 3752
- plotted to carry
off Clarionas.
Ther is a knyght callid Generides, 3753
here in your' howse, and thus standith y^e case ;
Bothe day and nyght he laboryth stiff opece,
ffrom hense to haue away Clarionas, 3756
he restith not, butt wayteth tyme and space
To bryng' aboughit his purpose if he maye,
This is the very trowth that I yow saye.' 3759
- The Sultan asked
his advice.
The Sowdon trostid aſt that euer he spake : 3760
'Teſt me,' he said, ' what is your' best avise ?'
'Yes, ser,' quod he, ' this wolle I vndertake,
he shaft not haue his purpose in noo wise, 3763
If ye wilt do as I shaft yow device ;
'Go hunting
to-morrow,'
said he,
Go to morow on huntynge' for the dere,
Thanne shaft ye know the trowth of' this mater. 3766
- 'and take
Generydes
with you.
He will make
an excuse to
come home,
but I will stay
and defeat his
purpose.'
- But yow must take with yow Generides, 3767
Not withstondeng' he wilt be loth ther too ;
Whanne he is ther homeward he wilt hym dresse,
Thanne shaft ye se anon what he wilt do. 3770
Be myn' avise me semyth best also,
That I abide atte home and kepe me close,
Thanne shaft he not a tayne to his purpose.' 3773
- The Sultan
assented.
The Sowdon gave his assent therto, 3774
And furth he goth on huntynge' to the woode,
With hym he toke Generides also,

- And suche moo knyghtez as it semyd good ; 3777
 And aH sone as *ser* yueH vnderstode
 The Sowdon was wele on warde on his way,
 Vn to his shippe IueH he sent withoute delay 3780
- One of his men) As fast as he cowde, 3781
 Comaundyng^t them) be redy euerychone ;
 his ij. squyers he toke them) owt Aside,
 'helpe that I were Armyd anon), 3784
 And in like wise cast your' harnes vppon),
 Secrely, that no man) yow Aspye,
 And that ye be on) hors bak aH redy. 3787
- Withoute the Cite ther shaH ye abide, 3788
 And tary stiH as for a litifH space.'
 his hors was ther aH redy for to ride,
 And furth he went toward Clarionas, 3791
 To hir chaunber ther as hir logging^t was :
 'Madame,' he seyde, 'my lord, your' fader dere,
 To yow hath sent me on) a massage her.' 3794
- 'What wold my fader ? I *prae* yow saye,' *quod* she.
 'Madame,' *quod* he, 'he hath right happy game,
 Wherefore in eny wise he wold that ye
 Wer¹ ther with hym), that ye myght haue y^e same.'
 'Now may I goo,' *quod* she, 'withoute blame :'
 And furth with aH sche answeryd hym) agayn),
 'Att his pleasure to come I am right fayne.' 3801
- Two palfreyes anone were brought owt of y^e stable,
 In aH the goodly hast that myght be do,
 One for hir, another for MirabiH,
 Bothe were sadellyd redy for to goo, 3805
 And furth they rode withoute wordes moo ;
 And as ther couenaunde was in especiaH,
 his ij squyers mette hym) withoute the waH. 3808

As soon as he
was gone hunting

Sir Yvell sent
one of his men
to his ship to

order it to be
ready,

and told his
two squires to
be armed

and wait
without the city.

He then went
and told Clarionas

that her father
had sent for her

to join the
hunting.
[leaf 20, back]

She and Mirabell
mounted their
palfreys and rode

forth on their
way.

¹ MS. *Wher*.

- Thanne on hir way rideth Clarionas, 3809
 full Innocente was she of y^t in hir thought ;
 Whanne thei were fro the town ij myle of space,
 MirabeH demyd sone that it was nought : 3812
 firo the forest a wayward he them brought,
 Thanne MyrabeH, prevely as sche myght,
 Made hir lady from hir palferay a light. 3815
 and made her lady alight.
- Where with ser yueH passing^t wroth he was, 3816
 vn perseyuyd be countenaunce or sight :
 Thanne said MirabeH onto Clarionas,
 'Madam,' quod she, 'this gothe not aH aright, 3819
 I wote my self as wele as eny wight ;
 We are be trayde,' quod she, 'I dare weH saye,
 God wote,' quod she, 'this is noo thyng^t the way.'
- And as thei sate to geder complayneng^t, 3823
 Came NataneH as fast as he myght ride,
 Chasyng^t an hart as he come Reynyng^t ;
 A none with aH MirabeH had hym aspied, 3826
 With hir kerche she bekenyd hym aside,
 And he full curtesly left aH the chase,
 And streight to hir he come ther as she was. 3829
- 'NataneH, for goddis loue, helpe,' quod she, 3830
 'As for my lady here, Clarionas,
 Ser yueH hath betrayed bothe hir and me ;
 Sayng^t suerly that he commaundyd was 3833
 Be hir fader to bryng^t hir to the chase,
 Whiche hym thought shuld be hir grete counfort,
 To see his huntyng^t And his disporte. 3836
- But now I wote right wele it goth a mys ; 3837
 Wherefore,' quod she, 'I prae you hertyly,
 Go to your Maister now and teH hym this,
- When they were two miles from the town, Mirabell suspected something,
 'Madam,' said Mirabell, 'we are betrayed.'
 As they sat, Natanell came up, chasing a hart.
 Mirabell beckoned to him,
 and told him that Sir Yvell had betrayed them.
 'Go to your master and tell him this.'

- for thanne he wiþ nott tary sekerly, 3840
 And that he come as fast as he may hye ;
 Now, good Nataneþ, think wele her vppon.¹
 ‘ It shaþ be do,’ quod he, ‘ and that anone.’ 3843
- To the Cite streight he toke the waye, 3844
 And brought his maister harnes ther he was,
 And told hym ther, withoute more delaye,
 Of *ser* yueþ and of fayre Clarionas, 3847
 Of her messaventur¹ and how it was,
 And whanne Generides had hard¹ hym wele,
 A none he lefte his huntyng¹ euery dele. 3850
- In this seasoone was fayre Clarionas¹ 3851
 ffuþ of sorow, god wote a wofuþ weight ;
 Ser yueþ sawe in what plight that she was,
 And her comfort in aþ that he myght : 3854
 ‘ Madame,’ quod he, ‘ this wiþ I yow be hight,
 Ye shaþ suerly be weddid to A kyng¹,
 Vnder hevyn¹ the migtiest lyvyng¹. 3857
- Wherefore, madame, be ye noo thyng¹ dismayde, 3858
 Aþ these thoughtez late them ouer slide !¹
 With that anon, as he these wordes sayde,
 Generides come fro the forest side, 3861
 Aþ clene armyd as fast as he cowde ride,
 To *ser* Yueþ streight vppon the felde,
 his swerd aþ nakyd in his hand he held¹. 3864
- And whanne *ser* Tueþ saw hym come rideng¹, 3865
 he made good countenaunce, but neuer the lesse
 he was fuþ sore adrede of his comyng¹,
 Purposing¹ fully for to make his pece, 3868
 And thus he seide on to Generides :
 ‘ Good *ser*,’ quod he, ‘ be ye no thyng¹ displesid,
 ffor in this case your¹ harte shaþ sone be easid. 3871

¹ MS. *Clarianos*.

- This is trewly the mater in substance ; 3872
- 'The king of
Egypt would
have this lady
in marriage,
and this is the
cause of my
journey, and
not to displese
the Sultan
or you.
- The kyng^t of E[g]ipte, born^d of highe lenage,
Wold haue this lady here in gouernaunce,
Desiryng^t hir be way of mariage ; 3875
- And for this cause now I take this viage :
This is the trougth like now,¹ I yow devise,
Not to displese the Sowdon in noo wise, 3878
- Nor yow, and that ye shaft vnderstonde, 3879
ffor that came neuer in my thought certayn^d ;
- Take the lady,
and I will return
to the city.'
- This lady here ye shaft in your' hande,
And to the Citee wiht I turne ayeyn, 3882
Be cause no man shaft haue me in disdayn^d ;
And forthermore, of that that I haue sayde
I yow beseche that I be not be wrayed. 3885
- It is fuht late for yow and here also 3886
As for this day to traveht more And lesse,
Att youre pleasure to morow may ye goo.'
- [leaf 21]
- 'I am content,'
said Generydes,
- 'I am content,' thanne seid Generides, 3889
ffuht Innocente² of aht his dobilnesse,
The whiche *ser* yueht thought in his entente,
ffor to the Sowdon hastely he went. 3892
- Sir Yvell went
in haste to
the Sultan.
- Generydes,
thinking no
harm, made
two lodges,
- Generides, withoute wordes moo, 3893
Made a logge as sone as euer he myght :
he made another for hym self also,
Thinkyng^t noo harme ne malys to no weight ; 3896
And ther they restid stiht as for that nyght.
Thanne was *ser* yueht fuht bold in his maner
- and there
they rested.
- Sir Yvell told
the Sultan,
- With the Sowdon, and saide as ye shaft here : 3899
- 'Your daughter
and Generydes
are this night
out of the town
on their way.
- 'Off your' doughter And of Generides, 3900
ffuht trewly shaft ye fynde it as I say ;
ffor as this nyght thei are, withoute lesse,

¹ MS. *now a.*² MS. *Innocence.*

- Out of the town wele onward on yer waye : 3903
 And if ye wiþ goo ther anon, ye may
 Se where they be and I shaþ þ your' gide.' I will be your
 'Yes,' quod the Sowdon, 'theder I wiþ ride, 3906 guide.'
- And that anon as fast as euer we¹ may, 3907
 In secrete wise, no mo but ye and I.
 Now goth forward the Sowdon on his way,
 And ser yueþ wiþ hym fuþ secretly, 3910
 he first be sought the Sowdon feithfully,
 As for the cheve guerdon of his seruice,
 ffor to sle Generides in eny wise. 3913
 He besought
 him to slay
 Generydes.
- The Sowdon grauntyd hym for so² to do ; 3914
 And as he came owt of the forest side,
 he sawe a logge, and in he went ther to ;
 Ser yueþ stode withouten hym to abide, 3917
 And furth wiþ all the Sowdon had aspyed
 Withynne the logge wher lay Generides,
 In his harnes slepyng³ stiþ opece. 3920
 the Sultan
 went in and
 saw Generydes
 sleeping
- Hys sward was drawyn, on³ the grownd it lay, 3921
 To sle hym the Sowdon had grete pite,
 Remembryng the seruice day by day,
 Whiche he had don in his necessite, 3924
 And suche as no man ded saue only he :
 Wherefore he thought, be good and sad avise,
 he wold not sle hym in noo hasty wise. 3927
 The Sultan
 thought he
 would not slay
 him hastily,
- He toke Away the sward vppe from y^e ground, 3928
 And leyde his owen ther as the toder was ;
 Butt litiþ thense another logge he founde,
 Ther lay myrabeþ and fayre Clarionas, 3931
 fuþ stedefastly he lokid on hir face,
 To knowe his doughter clerly be sight,
 ffor bothe thei sleppe as fast as euer thei mygþit. 3934
 In the other
 lodge he found
 Clarionas and
 Mirabell,

¹ MS. *he*.² MS. *to so*.³ MS. *on on*.

- and took up
his daughter
fast asleep as
she was, and
- He toke his doughter vppe as she laye, 3935
And furth he bare hir in his armys twayn)
Owt of the logge, she sleppe stiH alway,
- delivered her to
Sir Yvell
- And to *ser* yueH delyueryd hir ayeyn, 3938
And told hym that Generides was slayn).
Whanne *ser* IueH herd of that aventure,
Wote ye wele he was a ioyfuH creature. 3941
- to conduct her
to the city.
- The Sowdon went ayeyn to his disporte ; 3942
Ser IueH hym promysed for to goo,
With his daughter ayenward to resorte
Vn to the Citee, ther as she came froo, 3945
- But he meant
nothing of
the kind.
- Butt sekerly his thought was noo thyng^t soo :
The Sowdon wende she had gon) ther she was,
Butt alway he led fayre Clarionas. 3948
- Clarionas awoke
and saw how
it was ;
- Anone with aH Clarionas awoke, 3949
And whanne that she *perseivid* how it was,
ffuH of sorow she was and sore on) toke,
she took on sore
and swooned
twice.
- That twyes she swounyd in a litiH space ; 3952
God wote she stode in fuH petevous case,
More sorow had noo creature levyng,
for she had leuer a dved than¹ eny thyng^t. 3955
- He set her on
a palfrey and
led her to the
ship.
- On a palfrey he sette Clarionas, 3956
And to the shippe he gideth hir fuH riht ;
Generides, withynne a litiH space,
he woke anon) thanne was it dayle light : 3959
- When Generydes
awoke, he asked
Mirabell for
Clarionas.
- Of MirabeH sone he had a sight,
And first of aH he sayde in this maner,
' Where is Clarionas, my lady dere ? ' 3962
- ' Alas said
she, ' my lady
is gone by false
reason.
- With thoo wordes MirabeH woke anon) ; 3963
' Alas,' *quod* she, ' what aventure is this ?
By false tresone now is my lady goon),

¹ MS. *thang*.

- And *ser* Iueþ I wote it is : 3966 It is Sir Yvell,
 Of hym I dremyd aþ this nyght I wis,
 I *prae* god geve hym sorow now, she saide,
 ‘ffor this is twyes that he hath vs betrayde.’ 3969 he hath betrayed
 us twice.’
- ‘ Butt is she goon?’ thanne saide Generides. 3970
 ‘ Yee,’ *quod* Mirabeþ, ‘ and that me rewitþ sore.’
 ‘ ffare weþ,’ *quod* he, ‘ my comfort and gladnes,
 ffare weþ my ioye for now and euermore ; 3973 ‘ Farewell,’
 quoth he,
 ‘ my comfort
 and joy for
 evermore.
 What think you
 best to do?’
 ‘ This is the best,’ *quod* she, ‘ that I canne saye,
 Go after them as fast as euer ye may, 3976 ‘ Go after them,’
 said she,
- And if it fortune that he may be take, 3977
 ffor erthely good or eny fayre *promes*, [leaf 21, back]
 Do make hym sure what couenaunte that he make.’
 ‘ Yes,’ hardly thanne seid Generides. 3980
 ‘ To the Sowdon,’ *quod* sche, ‘ I witþ me dresse,
 And teþ hym trewly, as sone as euer I may,
 ffor he witþ trost the wordes that I saye.’ 3983 for he will trust
 my words.’
- Generides thanne armyd hym anon), 3984 Generydes then
 armed himself,
 Aftur *ser* Iueþ to folow on the chase ;
 he sought after his swerd and it was goon),
 he founde another lying in the place, 3987 and found the
 Sultan’s sword,
 The Sowdons swerd he wist wele that it was :
 To myrabeþ he seide in this maner,
 ‘ My lord the Sowdon suerly hath ben here : 3990
- Where witþ I am comfortid verely, 3991 which comforted
 him.
 ffor of my parte [he] demyd not amys,
 And if he had, I say yow sekerly,
 he wold haue slayn me here, I wote wele this.’ 3994
 ‘ Right as ye say,’ *quod* she, ‘ me think it is :
 I witþ telle hym [the] trougtþ whanne I hym see,
 ffor I witþ seche hym wher euer that he be.’ 3997

- Then quoth he,
'Tell Natanel to
come after me.'
- 'Thanne,' quod he, 'MirabeH, I yow prae,
Byd NataneH anon) for eny thing'
Come after me as fast as euer he may.'
'It shaH be do,' quod she, 'withoute fey[n]ing':
he be your' spede that is our hevyn) kyng',
Whanne ye are goo I wiH not long' abide,
ffor to my lord the Sowdon) I wiH ryde.'
- Generydes
follows Yvell,
- Generides is in his way rideng'
After IueH, to take hym) if he may.
MirabeH thanne made noo taryeng',
Butt to the Sowdon) she toke the waye,
To teH hym) aH the trougth) of here affraye,
But or she came the Sowdon) knewe it wele,
ffor ther came on) and told) hym euery dele,
- and Mirabell
goes to the
Sultan,
but the Sultan
knew all before,
- Whiche mette *ser* yueH and Clarionas :
Where with) the Sowdon) was astownyd sore,
And furth with) aH he rideth) in to the place,
Ther as he founde Generides before,
Of) that fortune to harkyn) forthermore ;
This musyng' in his thought) more and lesse,
he mette MirabeH in grete hevynes.
- and was sore
astounded.
He rides to the
place where he
found Generydes,
- and met Mirabell
on the way,
- Be hir semblante he thought it shuld be she,
And this to hir fuH soberly he sayde ;
'Telle me, where is my doughter now?' seith he ;
And ther withaH she was gretly dismayde,
'ffor certeyn), *ser*,' quod she, 'she is betrayed ;
Ser yueH seid that ye had for hir sent,
And brought fro yow a streyt comaundment.
- who told him
how Clarionas
was betrayed
at first,
- And in this wise away with hir he rode,
ffuH vntrewly, and be a subtiH trayne ;
Vppon) the way we hovyd and a boode.

3998

4001

4004

4005

4008

4011

4012

4015

4018

4019

4022

4025

4026

- Generides thanne reskewid hir ayeyn), 4029 and how
 Thanne was the day passid in certayn), Generydes
 And nere nyght, wherefore he thought it best rescued her,
 Ther to abide as for oñ nyghtez rest. 4032
- 'As for Generides this dare I now saye, 4033
 he was neuer that man), I yow ensure,
 To dishonour your daughter be eny way,
 Nor neuer while his liff may endure ; 4036
 But whels he sleppe this cursyd creature
 ffuH trayturlly wiH hir is goo ;
 ffuH wele I woote it is he and no moo.' 4039 and how,
 while he slept,
 Sir Yvell had
 carried her off.
- To here answerd the Sowdon in this wise ; 4040 The Sultan
 'Ye say ffuH trew, it may non) other be, answered,
 With his fayre wordes, ffuH of flatrise, 'It is full true
- he hath deseyuyd now bothe yow and me, 4043 he hath deceived
 Butt where is now Generides ?' quod he ; us both.
 'Trewly,' quod she, 'ser, he hath take the waye But where is
 Aftur this knyght, and thus he bad me say.' 4046 Generydes ?'
 'Truly,' said she,
 'he is gone
 after this knight.'
- 'What think ye best,' quod he, 'that I shaft doo ?'
 'ffor sothe,' quod she, 'this is now myn) avise ;
 Aftur ser yueH Generides is goo,
 To take hym) if he canne in eny wise ; 4050
 And as for yow to take the enterprise,
 It shaft nede if his liff may endure,
 he wiH do moche ther to I yow ensure.' 4053
- And as thei spake to geder he and she, 4054 As they spake
 Came NataneH as fast as he cowde ride ; together
 MyrabeH sone perseyuyd it was he, Natanell
 ffuH ertely she prayde hym) to abide : 4057 rode up.
- Anon) withaH he reynynd his hors aside,
 Thanne seid he this to MirabeH, 'I yow prae,
 What is your' wiH now pleasit yow to say.' 4060

- [leaf 22]
Mirabell gave
him Generydes'
message.
- ‘[M]ynne owyn lady,’ quod she, ‘Clarionas, 4061
Ser yueff now ayeyn with here is gone,
Whils we were bothe on sleppe this is y^e case,
Generides is after all alone, 4064
And wold that ye shuld follow hym anone.’
‘Maystres,’ quod he, ‘now trost me verily,
To hym I wil as fast as I canne highe.’ 4067
- Natanell rides
after his master ;
- the Suttan and
Mirabell return
to the city,
- and Clarionas
by this time is
going on board
with Sir Yvell.
- Now Natanell, in all the hast he may, 4068
Is rideng after now Generides ;
Myrabeff with the Sowdon take the way,
And to the Citee ward the Sowdon ganne hym dresse,
Complayneng sore in right grete hevynes ;
And by that tyme ser yueff redy was,
Takyng the shippe with fayre Clarionas. 4074
- When they were
under sail
Generydes
came up.
- It was not long or thei were vnder sayle, 4075
And by that tyme come was Generides ;
Ser yueff knewe hym wele withoute fayle,
By his stature and by his likenesse, 4078
And these wordes he sayde to hym expresse ;
- ‘It is too late,’
said Yvell.
- ‘Generides,’ quod he, ‘I telle the playn),
Thou comyst to late to haue hir now ageyn). 4081
- Thow slepist to long, and I woke the while 4082
To spede this mater after my device,
My purpose was the fully to be gile,
With the Sowdon whanne I was in seruice ; 4085
I sette not be the thretyng in noo wise,
And vterly this wolle I saye the more,
ffro this day furth thou hast lost her yefore.’ 4088
- ‘Thou hast
lost her.’
- Generydes was
sore grieved,
- Generides thanne was agrevid sore, 4089
ffor thoo wordes were saide in mokkery,
And in hym self abasshed more and more,

- Butt att that tyme ther was noo remedy : 4092 but there was
 Clarionas be held hym verily, no remedy.
 his countenance was aH togeder doon, Clarionas
 Anone with aH ther she fylle down in swoune. 4095 saw him,
 and fell down
 in a swoon.
- Syr yuch sawe she made suche hevynes, 4096
 And with hir self she was not aH aright ;
 ffor as the story doth witnessse,
 xv tymes she swounyd in his sight : 4099
 he hir comfortid in aH that euer he myght ;
 To turne hir hart he dede his besy payne, Sir Yvell tried
 And aH for nought his labour' was in vayne. 4102 to comfort her,
 but to no
 purpose.
- Generides the porte goth aH a longt, 4103 Generides
 To seke a shippe streight be the havyns side ; went all along
 Att last he saw a galy fayre and strongt the port to
 lay atte rode, which was both large and wide, 4106 seek a ship,
 And men I nowe therin for to gide ;
 The maister of aH was ther present, and found a
 Generides anon to hym he went. 4109 galley with
 master and men.
- 'Owt of what cost come ye, I prae yow say, 4110 He asked
 Or what contre,' quod he, 'telle me the right.' them of what
 The maister thought anon be his array, coast they came.
 Be cause he was armyd and like a knyght, 4113
 he was a man of powre and of myght,
 Wherefore in sothe he was sunwhat dismayde,
 And to Generides right thus he saide. 4116 The master
 was afraid,
- 'Sir, be not ye displeasid now,' quod he, 4117
 'Be cause I haue of yow noo knowlachyngt,
 Owt of danger I wold be and in surete.'
 'Surete,' quod he, 'drede yow no maner thyngt ; 4120 but Generides
 On your part ther is non other desirengt, reassured him,
 Butt I haue a mater now to begynne,
 And I wold fayn haue your counceH therin.' 4123 and asked
 his advice.

- 'My counsel,
sir, is but simple,'
he said. 'My counceH is but symple, *ser*,' he seide ; 4124
' Butt as I canne I shaH say myn) avice :
In this havyn) this galy now is layde,
I shaH yow teH wherefore and in wha[t] wise ; 4127
- ' I come from
Syria, where
King Auferius
lieth. I come fro Surre and fro those partis,
Kyng' Auferius hath it in mariage,
And ther he lith with aH his Baronage. 4130
- I was with
100 ships on
the way to
India to win A hunderyd shippes I lift ther Also, 4131
With them) I was in company certayn),
And toward) ynd they purpose them) to goo,
To wynne kyng' auferius right ageyn), 4134
And of his sonnys, to say yow trew and playn),
- Auferins his
right again. A likely knyght on) And of mannys age,
The whiche is callid IsmaeH the Savage. 4137
- To one of
his sons, Ismaell
the Savage, The kyng' his fader hym) hath gevyn) fre 4138
The Reme of Trace, to rule it in his hand ;
And ferthermore, in very certente,
He hath a broder as I vnderstonde, 4141
- the other,
Generydes, a
good knight, As good a knyght as is in eny lande,
And as it is seide I telle yow very right,
And for certayn) Generides he hight. 4144
- After deceasse of auferius the kyng', 4145
He shaH haue Surre in his owne demeyn,¹
And aH the Reme of ynd withoute feyning',
If fortune wiH that he it gete ayeyn) ; 4148
- and my errand
is to seek him. In to this contre was myn) erande playn)
hym) for to seche, and as I vnderstonde
Withynne few dayes he was here in this land. 4151
- And if ye knowe wher that I may hym) fynde, 4152
Now lete me wete, I prae yow hartely.'
Generides remembryd in his mynd

Let me know
where I may
find him.'
[leaf 22, back]

¹ MS. *demenyng*.

- he was not wonte hym self to be wreye ; 4155
- Yet this to hym he seid fuH soberly,
 ‘ My frend,’ quod he, ‘ ye shaft knowe my counceH,
 I am the same withoute eny fayle. 4158
- Generides I hight, this is noo nay, 4159 my name is
 kyng auferius my fader is certayn ; Generydes,
 Butt I am a carefuH man this day, but I am full of
 By fortune suche before was neuer sene, 4162 care to-day, for
 By a subtitH and false compassing trayn), my lord’s
 Clarionas, my lordis doughter dere, Clarionas is
 Vntrewly is betrayed as ye shaft here. 4165 untruly
 betrayed.
- It is but late sithe she was vnder sayle, 4166
 A knyght of Egipte, callid ser yueH,
 With here is gone away withoute fayle.’
 Thanne the maister seid, ‘ woH ye do weH? 4169
 This galy lith not here to by ne selle ;
 Do now be myn avice, and hardely
 With goddes grace ye shaft fynde remedy. 4172
- The master said,
 ‘ Do now by my
 advice ;
- This galy shalbe redy for to goo, 4173
 If ye wiH come ye shaft hym ouer take.’
 ‘ Now,’ quod Generides, ‘ late it be soo,
 I prae yow hartly for cristis sake.’ 4176
 And furth with aH he did it redy make,
 In aH the hast possible that¹ he may,
 To shippe he goth withoute more delay. 4179
- And whanne they were aH redy for to goo, 4180
 Came NataneH onto the havyns side,
 his Maisters hors he brought with hym Also ;
 And whanne Generides hym had aspyed, 4183
 he prayde the maister sumwhat to Abide,
 fuH wele content he was of his comang,
 Anone thei putt ther horses to shippyng’. 4186
- horse, and was
 taken on board.

¹ MS. *that that*.

- The master and
Generydes
sailed on, Now is the Maister and Generides 4187
Vppon the see, and sayle beganne to make,
And in here viage sailed stiH opece,
- and if the wind
had not begun
to slacken,
Sir Yvell would
have been taken,
but he landed
with Clarionas, TiH atte last the wynde beganne to slake, 4190
And ellis in very trougth they had be take ;
Butt afterward, withynne a litiH space,
Syr yueH londyd with Clarionas. 4193
- And thanne anon, as fast as euer he myght, 4194
Thei hastid them forward of ther Iurnay ;
Ser yueH gidyd hir the way full riht,
ffor he had knowen the contre many A day ; 4197
To kyng^t Guynan he toke the redy way,
To his palys ther as his abideng^t was,
In a Cite callid Egidias. 4200
- Four hours after,
Generydes landed
with the others Not long^t after¹ the space of ourez fewe, 4201
The galy landyd with Generides ;
in the guise of
merchants. In gise of mercaundez thei dede them shewe,
ffuH craftely in AH ther besynes, 4204
Not like no men of warre but all of pece,
So to gide them thei wer' weH apayde,
To harkyn tidynges what these pepiH saide. 4207
- The king was
glad when
he heard of
Clarionas, And whanne the tidynges came onto the kyng^t 4208
Of ser yueH and fayre Clarionas,
A gladder man was ther non leving^t,
Nor might not be more ioyfuH thanne he was : 4211
The Citee made grete festis in euery place,
his knyghtes went to mete here on the way,
hym self come after in full good Arraye. 4214
- and his knights
went to meet
her, himself
following. He sent for his
lords to come
to his marriage, And for his lordes furth with all he sent, 4215
They for to come onto the mariage,
And to folowe the effecte of his entente,

¹ MS. *after after*.

- To the Citee came AH his Baronage : 4218
 And as it is the custom and vsage
 AH way for princes shortly to device,
 The ffeſt was made in right ſolempne wiſe, 4221 and the feaſt
 was made,
- And laſtid long, my Auctour ſeið expreſſe ; 4222 and laſted long.
 Another cuſtome was in that contre
 Of old vsage, the writeng' doth wiſneſſe, It was the -
 the feaſt that
 What tyme that eny kyng' weddid ſhuld be, 4225
 Duryng' the tyme of that ſolempnite,
 The kyng' and ſhe ſhuld neuer togeder mete, the king and
 his bride ſhould
 To tyme the feſt were done And full complete. 4228 not meet.
- Thanne ſeid the Maister onto Generides, 4229 The maſter ſaid
 to Generydes,
 ' Now it is wiſdome to do be good avice,
 ffor by manhood¹ ſuerly or by prow[e]ſe
 Yow ſhaſt ſpede your' mater in noo wiſe ; 4232
 ffor your' entente I ſhaſt a craft devise
 With goddeſ grace, and if it fortune wele,
 That ye ſhaſt haue your' purpoſe euery dele. 4235
 ' I ſhall devise
 a craft that you
 may gain your
 end.
- I haue A thing' ſhaſt lye vppon your' face, 4236 You ſhall put
 ſomething on
 your face which
 ſhall make you
 ſeem a leper,
 That ye ſhaſt ſeme a meſeð [in] certayn,
 Butt doughit ye not withynne a litið ſpace, 4239
 Whanne euer ye liſt it ſhaſt a voyde ayeyn,
 And your' viſage to be as fayre And playn,
 As wele coloured and ther with alſo clene, '
 With onys waſſhyng' as it had neuer ben. 4242
- And forthermore ye muſt change your Array 4243 and you
 muſt change
 your clothea
 with ſome
 poor man.
 With ſum pore man, and take ye his clothing',
 And bere with yow ſum tokyn that ſhe may
 Of your' perſone haue redy knowlaching' ; 4246 [leaf 23]
 And from here pales as ſhe is comyng',
 Bothe to and froo ther muſt ye haue A place,
 Now do as wele as god will geve you grace ; 4249
 Take with you
 ſome token by
 which ſhe may
 know you,

¹ MS. *mandhood*.

- and she will
ordain some
way to speak
with you. And, weH I woote, som way she wiH ordeyn) 4250
That she may speke you¹ atte your' own device,
And as ye canne accorde betwix you twayne,
This wold I that ye did be myne avise ; 4253
- Bid Natanell
be ready to
meet you with
your horse.' Bid NataneH in eny maner wise,
That he be redy and in especiaH,
To mete yow with your' hors what euer faH.' 4256
- So Generydes
did,
and changed
his clothes with
a beggar, Generides dede after his counceH, 4257
And with a begger he chaungyd his wede,
The pore man) thought it was for his availe,
And glad he was, for he ther of had nede. 4260
Thanne seide Generides, 'so god yow spede,
Whanne were ye atte court I pray yow saye.'
- who told him
he had been
at court, 'Trewly,' *quod* he, 'I come fro thense to day ; 4263
- and seen the
queen, And ther I sawe the quene in riche araye, 4264
But as me semyth by here countenance,
And as she came from) the tempiH by y^e waye,
She likyd not that riaH ordenaunce ; 2467
Me think ther was some cause of displesaunce,
Butt me ought not to speke therof in dede.'
- but that she
looked unhappy
as she came
from the temple. 'Now goo, fader, and Ihu be thy spede.' 4270
- Now Generydes
goes to the court Now goth) Generides furth, I vnderstonde, 4271
Vn to the courte, his clothis aH to Rent ;
with his enp
and clapper
in his hand, holdyng' his cuppe, his claper in his hande, 4274
And on) his face he layde this oyntement,
To bryng' abought the effecte of his entent ;
- and stood in a
place near the
temple where
she should pass. And ther anon) he purveyd hym) a place,
Withoute the tempiH ther as she shuld pase. 4277
- He put a ring
on his finger, Whanne he had restid hym) he putte a ryng'
On his fynger, be cause she shuld it see,
And fro the tempiH as she is comyng', 4278

¹ MS. *yom*.

- Thorough owt the prese anon to hir com he, 4281 and as she came
 And Askyd Almes for seynt charite, from the temple
 he asked alms.
- The ryng^t vppon his fynger sone she knewe ; She knew the
 ring,
- 'I sha^{ll},' thought she, 'here sum tidynge^z newe.' 4284
- Thanne seid the quene, 'good man, whense be ye?' and asked
 whence he was.
- 'Madame,' quod he, 'o trougth I sha^{ll} yow say ; 'Madam,' said
 he, 'I was
 gotten in India,
- In ynd I was goten in very certente, 4288 and born in
 Syria,
- In surre I was born, this is no nay ; and now I come
 from Persia,
 where I was
 brought up.'
- Now come I owt of perse the redy way, 4291
- And ther I was brought vppe, I telle yow playn,
- Sone¹ I was first att mannys age [certayn].
- Ye are a lady born of that contree, 4292
- God hath me visite as his creature,
- Besechyng^t yow your' almes man to be.'
- The quene Answeryd with countenaunce demure, 4295
- 'Of myn Almes,' quod she, 'ye sha^{ll} be sure.'
- And furth with a^{ll}, withoute taryeng,
- She bad he shuld be brought to hir loggyng. 4298 She ordered
 him to be
 brought to her
 lodging.
- To hir chaunbyr right sone he was conueyed, 4299 He was
 conueyed
 to her chamber,
 and spoke with
 her alone.
- And ther he spake with hir hym self alone ;
- 'Madame,' quod he, 'be ye noo thing^t dismayde, 4302 'Madam,' quoth
 he, 'be not
 dismayed,
- Thoughe my visage be lothe to loke vppon,
- With onys wasshyng^t it with away anone,
- And trost that I say withoute othe,
- I am your' trew seruaunt Generides in sothe.' 4305 I am your
 true servant
 Generydes,
- 'Generides !' quod she, 'nay that is not so, 4306
- It is to me a wonder thing to here.'
- 'Madame,' he saide, 'ye sha^{ll} wete or ye goo,
- Plese it yow to see a ryng^t that I haue here, 4309
- The whiche I had of yow, my lady dere ;
- And though² I seme a mesett in your sight,
- It is but counterfete,³ I yow be hight.' 4312 and though I
 seem a leper
 it is but
 counterfeit.'

¹ So MS. ? *Sene*.² MS. *thought*.³ MS. *counterfete*.

- 'This ryng,' quod she, 'I know it veryly, 4313
Butt of your' persone yet I merveh more.'
With hym he had a water ther redy,
And from his face he wessh away it thore, 4316
he was as faire as euer he was be fore,
And whanne she sawe his vesage fayre and clene,
She toke hym in hir Armys as I wene ; 4319
- He had with
him a water
with which he
washed his face,
and he was
as fair as ever.
When she saw
it she took him
in her arms.
- She was soo glad, she had noo worde to saye. 4320
- 'Madam,' said
he, 'appoint
some redy
place,
and Natanell
and I will meet
you.
- 'Madame,' quod he, 'in sothe this is the case,
If ye wil now for sake all this arraye,
And that ye list apoynte some redy place, 4323
Bothe Natanell and I, be goddes grace,
With hors and harnes noo thing' shaft be lette
To mete yow ther, what our' ye wil sett. 4326
- There is a ship
redy to sail.'
- Ther is a shippe All redy for to sayle, 4327
A bideng' still opece of my comyng'.
- 'Generydes,'
quoth she,
- 'Generides,' quod she, 'I haue merveh
That ye putt dough't in eny thing' 4330
As to meward, for though he were a kyng'
Of reames x, And so fourth to endure,
yet wold I goo with yow, I yow ensure. 4333
- 'though he
were king of
ten realms,
I would go
with you.
- And for to spede this mater to purpose, 4334
- You and Natanell
must hide in
my garden to-
night early.'
- In my garden Att nyght sone must ye be,
Bothe Natanell and ye, and kepe yow close,
Treis and bussches full thikke yer shaft yow se, 4337
To kepe yow secrete in, and as for me
I wil be ther, trost me in feithfull wise,
Betwix the day and nyght, I yow promys.' 4340
- [leaf 23, back]
- Generydes joined
Natanell in
the forest,
put off his rags,
- Generides owt of the Casteft went 4341
To Natanell, whiche in the forest lay,
Ther he dede of his ragyd garment,

- his disshe, his claper, and aȝ he cast awaye, 4344
 And harnesid hym aȝ now ayeyn in his array :
 To the garden he toke the waye [att nyght],
 And tared ther as he had hir be highȝt. 4347
- Thanne Clarionas is now in grete musyngȝ, 4348
 And in this case be thinkith hir full strayte,
 hir purpose craftely abougȝt to bryngȝ,
 And vterly hir seaseone for to wayte ; 4351
 Atte last she founde one of hir consaite
 To whom she told here counceȝt aȝ in fere,
 And in certayne she was a lavendere. 4354
- To here thanne sayde fayre Clarionas, 4355
 ‘Ye are,’ quod she, ‘a woman that is to trost
 Of eny one that is withynne the place,
 Of my counceȝt fayne wold I that ye wist.’ 4358
 ‘Att your’ pleasure, Madame, what euer ye list.’
 Quod she ageyn, ‘withoute wordes moo,
 That lith in me I witt be glad to do.’ 4361
- ‘Ye say right wele, and as it semyth me,’ 4362
 Quod she onto the lavender thanne ayeyn,
 ‘I am a straunger here in this contre,
 This is my mater aȝ togeder playn ; 4365
 The kyngȝ, whiche is my lord and souereyn,
 On hym my hert is sette, I yow be highȝt,
 That I for gete hym not neyther day ne nyght ; 4368
- And most I drede of eny maner thingȝ, 4369
 That I to hym am noo thingȝ in this case,
 Butt be the sterrys,’ quod she, ‘and be my connyngȝ,
 Where euer he goo or ride in eny place, 4372
 I trost to god to stond so in his grace,
 And in his favour’ lengest to endure,
 Of eny other levyngȝ creature. 4375
- and armed
 himself again,
 and then waited
 in the garden.
- Clarionas found
 a laundress
 to whom she
 told her plan.
- ‘You are a
 woman to
 be trusted,’
 said she.
- ‘I am a stranger
 here,
- and my heart
 is set on the
 king my lord.
- I wish by the
 stars to stand
 always in his
 favour.

- You and I must go into my garden when the stars are up ; In to my gardeyn) yow and I must goo, 4376
Whanne sterrys are vppe and whan) it is very nyght,
Butt I must surely be disguised soo
That I may goo vnknowen) to eny wight, 4379
- I will wear your kirtle, and each of us must bear a truss on our heads.' Your' kirtiH wiH I were be cause of light,
And iche of vs a trusse vppon) oure hede,
This is trewly my counceH and my rede.' 4382
- The laundress answered, ' I will keep your counsel.' Thanne Answeryd the lavender ayeyn), 4383
Seid [she], ' Madame, your' *seruaunt* wiH I be,
And aH your' counceH kepe and layn),
I trost ther shaH no fawte be founde in me, 4386
haue here my hande for a surete ;
And trostith wele that at I shaH saye,
ffor erthely good I wiH not yow bewraye.' 4389
- She went to her house and brought a kirtle And so fourth withoute wordis eny moo, 4390
And to hir house as fast as euer she myght
She went, and brought ayeyn) with hir also
A kirtiH, like as she be fore hight. 4393
Whanne the day was passid and it was nyght,
- which the queen put on, leaving her rich array. The quene dede on) hir kirtiH fayre and weH,
here riche aray she left it euery dele ; 4396
- Her clothes were well tucked up, And tokkyd vppe she was weH fro the grounde, 4397
Before hir eyne a kerche hanging' side,
Ther trusses on) ther hedes aH redy bounde,
And furth thei went, them nede non) other gide ; 4400
- and forth they went. ' Stop, stop,' said the laundress, ' your white legs will betray us.' Thanne saide the lavender, ' abide, abide,
This white leggy's,' *quod* she, ' I woote it wele,
They wolle shende oure purpose euery dele.' 4403
- She washed Clarionas's legs with ashes and water, and ' Ye, wote ye what,' *quod* she, ' that ye shaH do ? 4404
Bryng' me water, and thanne late me alone,
A Coppe of Aisshes ye must bryng' Also,

- Where with my leggys shalbe wasshid anone, 4407
 That Añ the white I warant shalbe gon);'
 Right thus she dede in like wise as I saye,
 And to the gardeyn) right thus she toke the waye. 4410
- she and Clarionas
went on to the
garden.
- Thorough owt the hañ bothe to geder gan) goo, 4411
 As no thyng' were, fuñ sofft And demure,
 Thorough out the courte they toke the way Also,
 And atte gate thei mette att aventure 4414
 With *ser* yueñ, that cursid creature ;
 She hard hym) speke, and knewe hym) be y^e voyse,
 To me[te] hym) ther was none other choyse. 4417
- At the gate they
met Sir Yvell.
- Whanne she perseivid weñ that it was he, 4418
 A bak she drew and was fuñ iñ apayde.
 Thanne came he hir nere to knowe the certente,
 What that she was ; ' Whom) haue yow here ? ' he seid. ' Whom have
 ' Me think,' quod he, ' it is a praty mayde ; yon here ? ' he
 I cast here for to se what euer fañ : ' said he, and
- And vppe he lift here kerchewe furth) with añ. 4424
 She was so ferde hir truse was in falling), 4425
 With that the lavender putt hym) abak aye,
 ' Ye are to blame,' quod she, ' be hevyn) kyng) ;
 Now late my mayde alone, *ser*, I yow praye, 4428
 We must hast bo[the] as moche as euer we maye,
 These are the quenez clothes, I tel) you playn),
 And she must haue them) añ to morow ayeyn).' 4431
- The laundress
put him back,
saying
' Let my maid
alone, sir,
we must
make haste ;
these are the
queen's clothes.'
- ' Yet woñ I wete,' quod he, ' withoute fayle, 4432
 ffrom whense she came, and what she is,' quod he.
 ' Now, good *ser*,' quod she, ' what shañ it availe
 To make iche man) to speke of yow and me ? 4435
 Yet and ye wiñ be rewlid weñ,' quod she,
 ' ffor your' entente and after myn) avise,
 Ye shañ speke with hir att your' owyn) device. 4438
- ' I will knowe,'
quoth he, ' from
whence she
came.'
[leaf 24]

- This is the mater in short conclusion), 4439
 I am hir maystres and here *gouernour* ;
 hir fader is a *merchaunt* of this town).
 Ther is a knyght hir wowitz euery owre, 4442
 Not for to wedde butt for his *paramour* ;
 hir frendis wold haue hir in suerte,
 And for that cause she is now here with me. 4445
- Not withstondyng, withoute wordes moo, 4446
 Go to my house, Go to myn house and tary ther,' *quod* she,
 and wait there, 'Till I haue washt, and this moche wold I doo ;
 Whanne I come home I shall bryng' hir with me,
 and you shall And att your' pleasur' ther shall ye hir see,
 see her at your And speke with hir, ther shall noman sey nay.'
 pleasure.' ' I graunt,' *quod* he, ' will ye do as ye saye?' 4452
- He goes He left them ther, and on he goth a pase 4453
 to her house, Vnto hir howse as fast as euer he may :
- and the laundress The lavender with Clarionas
 and Clarionas In to the garden all another way. 4456
 go into the garden, Whanne thei were ther *yer* trussez down thei lay ;
 ' Now, faire Madame,' seide the lavender,
 ' Do now sum good for spede of this mater.' 4459
- where they Thanne in to the gardeyn came Natanel, 4460
 see Natanel, Clarionas full sone had hym aspied ;
 ' Where is your maister?' *quod* she, ' will ye me tell ?'
 who tells them ' Madame,' he saide, ' her be the gardeyn side, 4463
 Generydes is Att your' comyng ther he will abide,
 close at hand. And euery thing' is redy to your' entente.'
 Thanne was Clarionas right wele content. 4466
- The laundress The lavender thanne was some what dismayde ; 4467
 wishes her- self hence, ' I wold,' *quod* she, ' I hadde be hense this nyght,
 ffor we do noo thyng' here as ye haue sayde,

- Noyther in noo wise like as ye be hight ; 4470
 Madame,' quod she, ' this goth not aH aright ;'
 ' Now be not wrothe,' thanne seid Clarionas, but Clarionas
 ' And I shaH teH yow trougth of aH the case.' 4473 tells her that
- To hir' anon) thanne Answerd the lavender, 4474
 ' As for my part,' quod she, ' this shaH I saye,
 I wolle not here noo thyng' of this mater,
 ffor me likith noo thyng' in this arraye, 4477
 I wiH calle after helpe some maner way!'
 ' Nay, god defende it,' quod Clarionas,
 ' That ye shaH inpert me so in this case ; 4480
- I haue your' faythe and promys in my hand, 4481
 That ye shaH kepe my counceH secretly ;
 If ye do this, ye shaH wele vnderstonde,
 Ye shaH repente it sore as wele as I, 4484
 Me think ye were moche better certainly
 To be rewlid as I shaH yow counceH,
 And it shaH suerly be to youre avayle : 4487
- To knowe the very trougth of this case, 4488
 I shaH declare it aH [at] aventure ;
 Ther is a knyght not ferre owt of this place,
 I loue hym) best of eny creature, 4491
 And of his loue ayenward I am sure ;
 Right sone I wote he wiH be here with me,
 And streight with hym) I will goo in to my contre. and who will
 take her to her
 own country.
- Wherefore I counceH yow leue aH this fare, 4495 She advises
 And come with me, it shaH be for *your* best, her to come
 here shaH ye leve in sorow and in care, with them.
 I canne not thynk that ye shaH leve in rest, 4498
 And I suerly wiH make yow this behest,
 If ye wiH take the payn) me for to plese,
 I shaH o trowgth make yow right wele At ease.' 4501

- The laundress
thought that as
she had deceived
Sir Yuell this
would be the best
thing to do.
- The lavender be thought hir in hir mynd, 4502
That she disseuyd *ser yueH* be a trayn),
And if so¹ were that she abode be hynd,
She were vndone for euer in certayn); 4505
Thanne seid she to Clarionas ayeyn),
'ffor your' plesure, madame, I am contente,
With you to go att your' commaundment.' 4508
- Off hir Answere Clarionas was fayn), 4509
And ellys she had gon) all womanles,
Whiche had not ben) hir honour in certayn),
And as thei went to geder stiff opese, 4512
- Generydes came
to the garden,
- In to the garden) came Generides,
And atte first he wist not whiche was she :
'Where are ye now? fayre lady myn),' *quod* he. 4515
- Now what nedith long¹ processe of y^{is} mater? 4516
- and took up
Clarionas behnd
him.
In like manner
Natanell took the
laundress.
- She was sette vppe behynde Generides,
And NataneH sette vppe the lavendere
vppon) his hors, and furth they ganne them) dresse.
Aft this while was *ser yueH* stiff opese,
Euer wayteng¹ whanne the lavender shuld bryng¹
That she *promysed* att hir departeng¹. 4522
- Butt as it hath be sayde full long¹ agoo, 4523
Some bete the bussH and some the byrdes take,
And wheder that I be on) of thoo or noo,
- [leaf 24, back]
- I me reporte onto the letterys blake, 4526
And reasone wiH it may not be forsake,
he that entendith villany of shame,
It is no synne to quyte hym) with the same. 4529
- Meanwhile Sir
Yuell was waiting
at the laundress's
house till he
thought
something was
wrong.
- Syr IueH thought she taryed passyng¹ long¹, 4530
And vppe he rose and furth he goth alone,
In his conseite he demyd that it was wrong¹,

¹ MS. *sore*.

- And to the quenys chaunber he is furth gon) ; 4533 He went to the
 'Where is the quene?' quod he, 'telle me anon.'
 'It is not long;' they sayde, 'sithe she was here,
 And with hir also spake the lavander.' 4536 and heard she
 had been with the
 laundress.
- Whanne he hard that his hert was aH away, 4537 Then he wist
 thanne wist he wele it was not aH a right,
 'This lavender,' quod he, 'this is noo naye,
 hath don) aH this, that most vnhappy wight. 4540
 Butt I shaft do my powre and my myght
 hym) for to take, and if I happy) wele
 fuH sore thei shaft repent it euery dele.' 4543
- He armyd hym) and left aH other thing, 4544 He armed himself
 And furth he goth in aH the hast he myght ;
 he and his page, withoute more taryeng,
 After Generides toke the way fuH right, 4547 and rode after
 Generydes.
 And att the last, of hym) he had a sight,
 Clarionas thanne cast hir yee a side,
 And ser yueH fuH sone she had Aspyde. 4550 Clarionas saw
 him coming,
- Thanne to Generides fuH sone she saide, 4551 and said to
 'yender comyth your' mortaH enmy,¹
 The whiche fuH oft hath made me affrayde,
 Now may ye wele ordeyne a remedy ; 4554
 Wherefore,' quod she, 'I prae yow hartely,
 That what some euer he say be his promys
 late hym) not skape your' handis in noo wise.' 4557 Let him not
 escape.'
- To here answeyrd Generides aycyn, 4558 'Be not afraid,'
 'Be ye noo thying a ferde as in this case ;
 Or we departe,' quod he, 'he shaft be fayn)
 his quareH vppe to yelde, be goddis grace.' 4561 Clarionas
 alighted.
 With that anon) alight Clarionas ;
 Generides anon) hym) dressid in his gere,
 And NataneH was redy with his spere. 4564

¹ MS. *elmy*.

- Sir Yuell and
Generydes meet, Syr yueH ranne onto Generides, 4565
Thorough owt the sheld he smote hym [in] certayn,
Butt for all that he skapid daungerles,
And furth with aH ranne to hym) ayeyn, 4568
That with his spere he brast his sheld on twayn),
and Yuell is
wounded, And in his body he woundid hym) so sore,
That down) he felle, endure myght he no more. 4571
- and yields up
his horse to
Natanell. Hys stede he delyueryd to Natanell, 4572
A myghti hors and called passing' wight;
'I wold,' quod he, 'this hors were cherisshid wele,
ffor he is sure and good, I yow behight.' 4575
Generides adown) from) his hors alight,
Ser yueH sawe it wold non) other be,
And vppe he rose and knelid on) his kne. 4578
- He begs mercy
of Generydes, Thanne seid he thus, 'mercy, Generides, 4579
I haue affendid yow, I wiH no more;'
but Clarionas
warned him not
to trust him
again. Clarionas cryed alway stiH opece,
'Though he speke fayre, trost hym) not therfore; 4582
And if ye do ye shaft repente¹ it sore:
Remembre wele he hath desseyuyd yow twyes,
ShaH he neuer be trew, I yow promys.' 4585
- Generides remembryd hym) ther one, 4586
She sayde hym) trew, he knewe it verily;
With that Clarionas aspyed anon),
Ser yueH held a knyffe in his hande secretly; 4589
'He will slay you,
he hath a knife in
his hand.' 'By ware,' quod she, and ganne hym) to Aspye,
'he wiH sle yow, ye may wele vnderstonde,
A knyff aH way he kepith in his hande.' 4592
- He stabbed
Generydes in
the thigh, He smote generides in to the thye, 4593
And he was not gretly hurt, it was his vre;
his purpose was to sle hym) vterly,

¹ MS. *repentid*.

with fals tresone vnder a coverture : 4596
 Thanne Generides thought on hym to be sure,
 And with his swerd he clefe his hede on twoo,
 That neuer after spake he wordes moo. 4599

and he in return
cleft his head in
two.

Thanne vppon his stede lept generides, 4600
 Be hynd hym was sett Clarionas his lady dere,
 And Nataneh aH redy ganne hym dresse,
 Vppon an hors befor the lavendere, 4603
 And soo thei rode togeder aH in feer',
 Owt of ther enmys handes they were sure,
 Euerychone talkyng^t of ther aventure. 4606

In this meane tyme the body of the knyght 4607
 his page anon vppon his hors it layde,
 And to the courte¹ he went ayeyn ful right.
 Whanne it was knowen the kyng^t was sore dismayd,
 'Now haue I lost my wor[l]dly Ioye,' he seid :
 Grete thought he toke and way[led] more And more,
 Wher with the courte¹ was trobelyd very sore. 4613

The king was
sore dismayed
when he heard

And how it was of aH that aventur', 4614
 Thanne to the kyng^t he told aH the hoole processe,
 'Ther is,' quod he, 'no levyng creature
 So dere to hir as is Generides ; 4617
 Whiche in long^t tyme hath dured stiff opese,
 This is the trougth I say yow for certayn. 4619

.....

[A leaf has been here cut out of the MS., containing 187 lines.
 The catchwords of the next line are, 'And he it is suerly.']

.....

'And it obeye with humble reuerence, 4620
 I[n] yow only is aH my feithfull trest ;
 I am your' child, demeane me as ye list.' 4622

[leaf 25]

¹ MS. *contre*.

- She was glad
for Generydes,
but when she
thought of his
departure
her joy turned
to heaviness.
- Right gladde she was as for Generides, 4623
But whanne she thought of his departeng,
hir ioy was turnyd in to hevynes,
yet therof she made non opyn tokenning, 4626
By countenaunce or by other thing,
Butt alway kept it close in hir entente,
And to hir chaunber furth with she went. 4629
- She lay on her
bed in despair,
- Down on hir bed she felle¹ and ther she laye; 4630
Mirabeſt had merveſt what it was,
'Madame,' she seid, 'what is this new affraye? 4632
What mysfortune²? and hough be felt this case?'
To here anon Answerd Clarionas,
'This is,' quod she, 'come to me a late,
ye may wele saye I am vnfortunate.' 4636
- 'Vnfortunate,' quod she, 'that is not soo; 4637
I canne wele think it is your' owyn conseite.'
'Nay,' quod Clarionas, 'so mote I goo,
I doo none other but myn owen deth Awayte, 4640
Generides hath done me this disseite,
My fader hath geve hym half his eritage,
And me also ther with in mariage. 4643
- and told Mirabell
that Generydes
had deceived her
- In to the reame of ynd now with he goo, 4644
And ther he seith that he shalbe a kyng,
Thanne with he come ayeyn whanne that is do,
And so make an ende of our weddyng': 4647
But wele I wote aft this is butt feyning,
he is purveyd of some new Acquentaunce,
Whiche I canne think is more to his plesaunce.' 4650
- in saying that he
would go to
India and be
made king,
and then come
again.
- 'Leave these
fancies,' saith
Mirabell.
- Thanne seid Mirabeſt, 'Good Madame,' quod she, 4651
'ffor goddes loue leve aft these fantasies,
ffor this I knowe in very certente,

¹ MS. *lay*.² MS. *my fortune*.

- ye shaH not fynde it thus, I yow promes ; 4654
 Wene ye that he wiH departe from) *your seruice*
 And vtterly refuse yow now euerydele ?
 Nay, Madame, I know his trougth soo wele.' 4657 'I know his
 truth so well.'
- To hir anon) thanne answerd Clarionas ; 4658
 'Ye make yow sure of euery maner thing'.
 I warante yow,' *quod* she, 'as in this case,
 That I haue seid ye shaH fynde noo lesing' ; 4661
 he will wedde me, he seith, whanne he is a kyng',
 In grete estate and wurchippe many wayes,
 And aH these are butt triffolys and delays.' 4664
- So lay she stiH in riht grete hevynes : 4665 Clarionas lay still
 in great
 heaviness,
 MirabeH thanne owt of hir chaunber went ;
 In hir goyng' she mette Generides,
 And told hym) aH hir ladyes entent, 4668 and then
 Mirabell brought
 'ye must come now,' *quod* she, 'or AH is shent,
 ffor she canne think non) other sekerly,
 Butt that ye haue for sake hir vtterly.' 4671
- 'For sake,' *quod* he, 'aye, benedicite, 4672 Generydes
 Why wiH she me mystrost in eny wise ?
 Trewly MirabeH,' *quod* he, 'As for me,
 My hert his heris, my trowth and my *ceruice*, 4675 to her
 It grevith me full sore suche fantesyce,
 ffor be that lord that formyd me of nowgth,
 Other to wedde came neuer in my thought.' 4678
- 'AH that,' *quod* she, 'I haue told here full playn),
 Yet takith she noo credence what I say,
 Ther is noo bote butte ye must come certayn),
 And that anon) as fast as euer ye may.' 4682
 'I come,' *quod* he, 'withoute more delay ;'
 So with MirabeH furth he went anon),
 And to Clarionas streight he is goon). 4685

- chamber. In to hir chaunber furth he goth a pace, 4686
 Of his comyng' full redely she knewe ;
 'What do yow here?' thanne seid Clarionas,
 She taunted him 'Of all knyghtes,' quod she, 'the most vntrew ; 4689
 with his untruth. Your' fayre behest all now may I rewe,
 Your' beyng' here is to my grete displeasunce,
 Goo now away onto your' old Acqueyntaunce. 4692
- ' Sir Amelok hath a fair daughter Syr Amelok hath a doughter certayn), 4693
 and the peace will soon be made betwene you.' Whiche is right fayre and lucidas she hight,
 The pece is sone made betwix yow twayn),
 ffor to the chaunge your' hert is wonder light ; 4696
 I say for me, ther was no maner wight
 That loved yow better thanne I dede before ;
 All that is doo, for now I will nomore.' 4699
- At this Generydes fell down in a swoon. Whannie she hadde sayde that pleasid hir to say, 4700
 Thanne was Generides a wofull man) :
 Anone he felle in swouneng' and ther he laye,
 All discolored in vesage, pale and wanne, 4703
 And furth with remembre she beganne
 What man) he was, and also what seruice,
 That he hir fader dede in euery wise, 4706
- With right good will he was redy alway : 4707
 MirabeH saide, 'what maner thing' is this ?
 Now certeynly ye are to blame, I saye ;
 ffor wele I wote in hym) ye demyd amys : 4710
 yet atte last,'¹ quod she, 'ye shuld hym) kysse.'
 [leaf 25, back] Thanne seid Clarionas, 'sith it is soo,
 If that may do hym) good, it shalbe doo 4713
- Clarionas kisses With all myn) hert,' quod she, 'what euer fah ;' 4714
 To se hym) soo she was right sore dismayde.
 Ther as he lay she kyst hym) furth withaH,

- And he ther with aȝ sodenly abrayde, 4717 him, and he
like as a man had ben sore affrayde ; recovers,
'Madame,' quod he, 'now please it yow to here
What I shaȝ say as towchyng this mater. 4720
- As for my parte ther is noo creature, 4721 and all was
That wiȝ do more your' honour to avaunce, forgiven.
And o my trowth it was I neuer sure,
Vnto this our' of now none Acqueyntance, 4724
In that ther is noo cause of displeaunce,
I haue ben alway trew in myn entent,
And of aȝ this god wote I am fuȝ innocent. 4727
- Whanne he had seid so trewly and so playn, 4728
In euerything as towchyng this mater :
'Aȝ is for geve,' quod she, 'betwix vs twayn,
And late vs stiȝ be frendis as we were.' 4731
'Ther to I graunt,' quod he, 'with riȝt good chere
To endure ;' so wiȝ good contenuaunce
Iche to other made thei fuȝ assuraunce. 4734
- Vppon this thanne he toke his leve for to goo, 4735 He took his leave
Of the Sowdon and of fayre Clarionas ; of the Sultan,
With hir he left a litȝ dogge also, and of Clarionas,
Whiche went with hir a bought in euery place, 4738 and left with her
In here conseite a grete Ieweh it was ; a little dog.
So toward ynd Generides is gon,
With hym the new made knyȝtes euerychone. 4741
- To Surre came Generides and his knyȝtes a pace,
Ther was the ost of auferius y^e kyng,
In a Cite whiche was callid Damas,
Theder thei came withoute more taryeng : 4745 The army of
Grete ioye made aȝ the ost of ther comyng, Auferius was at
And of aȝ other namyd in the prese, Damas when
They were most ioyfuȝ of Generides. 4748 Generydes came
with his knights.

- They took ship
in all haste,
- To the shippe they went in all the hast y^ei myght,
And as thei wold desire thei had the wynd ;
Vppon the see thei toke ther course full right,
That sone thei were vppon the cost of ynde, 4752
Right fayre havenys all redy ganne thei fynd,
- and soon landed.
- And sone thei landyd, shortly for to say,
All atte ther ease, was no man seid nay. 4755
- ffurth one thei went, and made noo taryeng^t, 4756
The Cryes were made in euery good village,
All thoo that wold obey the rightwise kyng
Shuld haue ther lyves and ther heritage ; 4759
And euery man to haue his avauntage,
A moneth day to take avisement,
This was the kynggez own poyntement. 4762
- Furth with his ost kyng auferius is gon, 4763
And many lordes in his companye,
The townys and the castelys euerychon
Euer as he went he wanne them by and by, 4766
Save one, whiche was full stronge and myghty,
And as the story makith remembraunce,
Wold not be wonne withoute grete ordenaunce : 4769
- called Vice,
near which Sir
Amelok lay.
- And Vice it high^t, whiche is a fayre Cite ; 4770
Ser Amelok fro thense a liti^t he lay,
And of auferius comyng^t wist not he
No maner o thing, ne of all that Arraye ; 4773
Thanne was ther on that had hast in his way,
And ser Amelok Anon he ganne hym dresse,
Whiche with a knyght was playeng^t Att chesse. 4776
- He was playing
chess.
- ‘ What tyme is now to play Atte Chesse?’ quod he,
‘ Thu byddest thy felaw chese, I vnderstonde ;
Butt for certeyn I saye chek mate to thee,

‘ This is no time
for chess,’ said
one, ‘ it is check-
mate to thee,

- Kyng Auferius is here withynne the land,
Townys and Castelys are yelde to his hand,
With hym is come Generides also,
Take hede be tyme or aH is goo.' 4780 for Auferius and
Generides are
here.'
- Syr Amelok, whanne he the tydenges hard,
A wrother man yet saw he neuer non,
And as a man beside hem self he farde,
These tydengys came so hastely vpon; 4784 Sir Amelok was
beside himself
for rage.
- Ther with he sent his lettres owt anon,
A H men to come and in hir best arraye,
Euery man to make as many as they may 4787 He sent out
his letters
- The townys and the Castellys on be on,
he sett them vnder rule and gouernaunce,
And made them to be vitaylid euerychon
With stuff of pepiH And of ordenaunce; 4791 and victualled
his towns and
castles,
- And specially in his remembraunce,
And in his mende the fayre Cite of Vice,
To make it strong in eny maner awise. 4794 especially Vice.
- And so he ded in A H that euer he myght; 4797
Withynne ij myle thanne was the kyngges ost,
And ther was on that gidid them fuH right,
Whiche somtyme kept the forest in the cost, 4801
And brought tidengges whanne the Cite was lost, [leaf 26]
The same forster suerly was ther gide,
ffuH wele he knew the wayes on euery side. 4804 led by the faithful
forester.
- Whanne the ost was come before y^e town,
he sett his felde and made no more delay;
Whanne that was do, the kyng rode vppe and down,
Beholding wele the grownde in euery way, 4805 When he came
before the town
- And thanne he sette the pepiH in his arraye,
A xx. Rankys trewly for to accompt,
And iche of them A M men affronte. 4811 he set his peop^e
in array in 20
ranks, 1000 in
each.

They of the town were ware,	They of the town) were ware of <i>yer</i> comyng, And toke good hede hough they made ther feld ; Among them) was noo lenger abideng, But furth they dressid them) with spere and sheld Owt of the town), that myght a wepon weld, And ther thei made a feld vppon the playn), xv thowsand to say yow for certayn).	4812 4815 4818
and mustered 15,000 strong.		
The battles met,	It was not long) or bothe the battellez mett, And on that side of Auferius the kyng) Generides fuH fresshly on they sett, And was the first of that encounteryng), ffuH wele horsyd att his likyng),	4819 4822
and Generides bore down Ananyell,	And with a spere, the story can) yow tell, he bare down) a knyght callid Ananyell),	4825
brother to Sir Amelok.	And broder to <i>ser</i> Amelok he was ; A semely knyght, a man) of grete powre, Generides toke NataneH ¹ his stede, And hym) he wold a taken) prisoner,	4826 4829
	Thanne was ther of his felisshepe soo nere, That saw thei hough his stede was gon) So furth with aH they reskewe hym) anon).	4832
He had a sworn brother called Sir Amysell,	He had a felaw that callid was <i>ser</i> AmyseH, his sworn) broder he was in sothfastnes ; Anone with aH ranne to hym) <i>ser</i> DareH, And hym) vnhorsyd ther in aH the prese,	4833 4836
whom Darell unhorsed.	And in like wise so ded Generides, ffurth on he goth and <i>yer</i> as the prese was most, Syr DareH toke the stede and led hym) to y ^e ost.	4839
The other party were wroth.	The toder part avaunce them) anone And wrothe thei were <i>yer</i> men) were so outrayed,	4840
King Lamedon was there,	kyng lamedon) was ther, and formest of euerychon),	

¹ So MS. for *Ananyell*.

- And aH for love of lucidas the mayde, 4843 and all for love
The whiche was endly fayre, as it was sayde, of Lucidas
- Of aH hir manerys callid trew and p[l]ayne, 4846 the daughter of
Ser Amelok hir fader was certayn : Amelok
- Serenides hir moder was Also, 4847 and Serenydes ;
And aH she was of another dissposicion) but she was
As ye haue hard, withoute wordes moo, of another
Vn WurchipfuH of hir condicion), 4850 disposition.
- like as the story makith mencion),
And so furth on, to say yow forther more,
Anone beganne the bateH passing^r sore. 4853
- Syr Amelok in the myddes of the playn) 4854 Sir Amelok smote
Ranne to A knyght, and smote hym) with his spere a knight with his
Thorough owt the brest, and slew hym) in certayn). spear,
- Thanne he toke¹ the kyng^r in this maner, 4857
'Be my counceH take ye this present here, and sent to the
And so departe and ellys I yow behight, king—'Take this
ye shaft haue more long^r or it be nyght.' and go.'
- 4860
- Thanne who was wrothe but Auferius y^e kyng? 4861 Auferius was
With a spere he ranne in to the prese wroth,
- fuH egerly, and atte first metyng^r
he slew the kyng Sanyk withoute lese, 4864 and slew Sanyk
The whiche was fader onto Serenydes, king of Africa,
kyng of Auferyk, the story makith mynd, the father of
As here before in writeng^r may ye fynde. 4867 Serenydes.
- Hys sonne was ther and saw hym) wher he laye, 4868 His son, Sir
Ser ysores he high^t, to say yow fuH trew, Ysores, said to
Thanne to ser Amelok this ganne he saye, Sir Amelok,
- 'Woo worth the tyme tha[t] euer I the knewe ! 4871 'Wo worth the
Thy cursyd lyff,' quod he, 'and most vntrew, time that ever
Thy hatefuH hart, and thy mysgouernaunce I knew thee !'
hatH browgtH abowt this onhappy chaunse.' 4874

¹ ? told.

- With 1000
knights he bore
his father to
town
- Syr ysores, as sone as it myght be, 4875
Made certayn) knyghtes bere his fader to town),
And with A M̄ knyghtes in his company ;
And aH they made grete lamentacion) : 4878
The prestis mett hym) with A procession),¹
And of the Citee many a creature,
to his sepulture. Right so they brought hym) to his sepulture. 4881
- Serenydes
saw them,
- Quod Serenydes, ‘ beholde them) eu[er]ychon) ;’ 4882
And what it ment she wold a wist fayn) :
And so among’ aH other was one,
‘ Madame,’ quod he, ‘ the sothe I wiH not layn) ; 4885
The kyng’ your’ fader ded is for certayn),
his knyghtes yender bere hym) on his sheld,
kyng’ Auferius hath slayn) hym) in the feld.’ 4888
- and when she
wist how it was
she was a woful
creature.
She took Lucidas
apart, and said,
- And whanne Serenydes wist hough it was, 4889
wete ye wele she was a wofulH creature ;
She toke aparte the mayden) lucidas,
‘ Doughter,’ quod she, ‘ now am I very sure, 4892
My Ioy is gon), And AH good aventure ;
[leaf 26, back] I myght right wele A knowen) AH this before,
I haue deseruyd it if it were more. 4895
- This is all come
for my untruth to
- For myn) on) trowth aH this come too [me], 4896
For more vntrew I trow ther was neuer non) ;
A better prince was neuer born),’ quod she,
‘ In aH this world thanne I was sure of on), 4899
And vtterly for euer he is now gone,
Vppon) his grace it botith not to wayte,
ffor I shaft neuer stonde in his conseite. 4902
- Auferius.’
- Kyng’ auferius it is in certayn), 4903
To whom) I weddid was be mariage,
I toke a new whiche sore repentith me,

¹ MS. *precession*.

- It hath and wiþ turne me to grete damage ; 4906
 And doughter myn, now ye be yong^t of age,
 haue this in mynde, bothe now and euery owre,
 late noo thyng^t meve yow to your^t dishonour.' 4909
- In this meane tyme that she complayned soo, 4910
 The bateH lasted alway stiH opece,
 Moche pepyH hurt and many slayn) Also ;
 ffuH egerly thanne came rideng^t ser ysores, 4913
 And with a spere ranne to Generides,
 And with grete corage aH redy to fight,
 To avenge his faders detH if that he myght. 4916
- Generides fuH suerly hym) beheld, 4917
 hym) for to mete anone he ganne hym) dresse,
 And ther they ranne to geder in the feld :
 The toder knyght, callid ser ysores, 4920
 vppon) the shelde he smote Generides ;
 And with [the] stroke his stede came on) so rounde,
 That hors and man) were almost cast to grownd. 4923
- Generides recoueryd vppe than) ayeyn), 4924
 Thinkyng suerly to quyte hym) to for on),
 And with his swerd he brast his sheld on) twayn):
 The swerde poynte ranne onto the shulder boon), 4927
 Sore hurt he was, and reskewse was yer non),
 Nor non) comyng^t, wherefore ser ysores
 Anon) he yelded hym) onto Generides, 4930
- And furth with aH delyueryd hym) his swerd. 4931
 To hym) thanne seide Generides ayeyn),
 'What man) be ye that I haue here conquered?'¹
 'I am,' he seid, 'to say yow for certayn), 4934
 The kynggez sone that here to day was slayn);
 And eyre to his landes withoute lese,
 My suster is the quene Serenydes.' 4937

The battle went
on meanwhile,

and Sir Ysores
ran at Generydes
to avenge his
father.

He struck him,
and nearly
brought him
down.

Generydes in
turn cut him
down with
his sword,

and took him
prisoner.

'What man be
ye?' he asked.
'I am son to
the king who
was slain to-day,

and Serenydes is
my sister.'

¹ MS. *conquered here.*

- 'I know her well,' 'Serenydes,' *quod* he, 'I knowe here weH ; 4938
 quoth he, This warre beganne noo creature but she,
- 'she is crop and ffor she is crophe and rote and euery dele, 4941
 root of the war. yet as for your' *persone* ye shaH goo fre,
- Tell her I am he And say to Serenydes that I am he
 that she would Whiche she woldt haue distroyed euer more ;
 have destroyed.' And now I trowe she wolle repent it sore.' 4944
- Sir Ysores was Sore wondid Was *ser* ysores in dede, 4945
 sore wounded, And sore for bled that vnnethe myght he stonde,
- and Generydes Might had he non) to kepe hym) on) his stede,
 held him up Butt as Generides put to his hande ; 4948
 on his horse, Whereby a man) myght knowe and vnderstonde
- like a noble A noble knyght and full of prow[es]se,
 knight. his enmy so to helpe in his distresse. 4951
- To the Cite goth) now *ser* ysores, 4952
 Ridengt alone soft and an easy pace ;
- Serenydes saw Vppon) the waH stode Serenydes,
 him from the And saw hym) come and callid lucidas ; 4955
 wall. 'God wote,' *quod* she, 'I stonde in an hevy case,
 I se my broder woundid passingt sore,
 My hevynes encreasith) more and more.' 4958
- Ther anon) the mayde lucidas 4959
 Comfortid hir in aH that euer she myght ;
- Sir Ysores Ser ysores be that tyme come was,
 dismounted in And with) grete payne down) of his hors light ; 4962
 great pain,
- and told her To his suster he toke the way full right,
 what Generydes Rehersyngt euery wortt bothe more and lesse,
 had said. Whiche he shuld telle hir fro Generides. 4965
- And whanne Serenydes wist hym) so nere, 4966
 God wote she was a wofull creature,
 withoute eny comfort or eny maner chere,

- Trostyng¹ vpon² noo better aventure, 4969
 ffor of his frendshippe cowde she not be sure.
 And so furth on to telle yow ferthermore,
 AH way the bateH lastid passing¹ sore. 4972
- Off euery side grete pepiH were slayn), 4973
 And moche grounde of *ser Amelok*¹ thei wanne ;
 Ser DareH with a spere vpon² the playn)
 Come rideng¹ on, and to an erle he ranne, 4976
 Born¹ in europe, his name was Ioatan,
 And in serteyn), be writeng¹ as I knowe,
 Both hors with the Erle was ouer throwe. 4979
- Syr DareH toke with hym¹ his stede ; 4980
 With that anon¹ his knyghtes were redy,
 hym¹ to reskew thei made hasty spede ;
 A long¹ the Citee DareH rode by and by, 4983
 Vpon² A towre ther with he cast his yee,
 And [on] that towre he sawe a mayde sitting¹,
 Right Inly fayre she was to his semyng¹. 4986
- And thanne he callid Sygrem furth¹ with aH, 4987
 ‘Segrem,’ he saide, ‘now for the loue of me,
 Of on¹ thyng telle me in especiaH,
 A gentilwoman¹ that I yonder see, 4990
 What that she is, sey me the certente ;’
 ‘Ser,’ quod Sygrem, ‘the soth I wiH not layn),
 Ser Amelok is hir fader in certayn) ; 4993
- And she is callid good in euery place, 4994
 Of hir maners soft and eke demure.’
 Thanne saide DareH, ‘trewly this is the case,
 My seruice she shaH haue I yow ensure, 4997
 ffor me thinkiH hir a goodly creature ;
 And yet I drede Generides therfore,
 lest he ther with will be displeasid sore.’ 5000

Many people were slain on each side.

Sir Darell overthrew Ioatan,

and took his horse,

and as he rode along the city he saw a maiden on a tower,

right fair as he thought.

Then he called Sygrem,
[leaf 27]

and asked who she was.
‘To tell the truth

she is the daughter of Sir Amelok.’

‘She shall have my service,’
quoth Darell,

‘but I fear Generydes.’

¹ MS. *Amelek*.

² MS. *A vpon*.

- 'Doubt not,'
said Sygrem,

' for he doth not
hate her.'
- 'Syr,' quod Sygrem, 'dought not in this case, 5001
If he loue not hir fader by noo maner waye,
In trowth yet hate[t]h he not lucydas.
'Why, Who is that?' quod he, 'I prae yow say.' 5004
It is the mayde,' quod he, 'ye sawe to day,
And if ye wiþ I shaþ a token bere
To hir anon, and bryng' a trew answe're.' 5007
- Darell then gave
him a ring to
carry to Lucidas,

and went back
to the field,
- 'That I beseche yow hartely,' he saide ; 5008
And ther wiþ aþ he delyueryd hym a ryng',
'Goo now,' quod he, 'to lucydas that mayde,
With this tokyn and make noo taryeng', 5011
And do your' massage wele in euery thing'.
Whanne he hadde told hym aþ his erand playn),
In to the feld he returnyd hym ageyn), 5014
- and unhorsed
Ananyell,
who was uncle
to Lucidas.
She saw it,
- And in the thikkest prece of aþ the place 5015
he bare down Ananyell, hors and aþ,
The whiche was vnkyþ onto lucydas ;
She saw aþ that stondeng' vppon the waþ, 5018
Thanne thought she this, what thing' y' euer faþ
Shaþ noman think but that I do very right,
Though I besette my loue on) suche a knyght. 5021
- and asked her
mother,
'Which is
Generydes ?
I think it is he
with the black
steed.
- Thanne sayde she to hir moder in this wise ; 5022
'wote ye whiche is generides ?' quod she :
'As ferre furth as I canne device,
his stede is blak, me think the same is he ; 5025
A noble knyght is he, in very certente :
And o thing shaþ I telle yow that is trew,
Myn owen vnkiþ now he ouer threw. 5028
- But there is
another knight
on a white steed.'
- Ther is,' quod she, 'another knyght also, 5029
his stede is whight, this wote I for certayn),
In aþ the ost suerly ther is no moo,

- That in knyghtwoode Are like to them twayn.' 5032
 Thanne to hir answerd Serenydes ayeyn,
 ' AH that is sothe,' she saide, ' and as for me,
 Yett of them bothe I wote not whiche is he. 5035
' I know not which of the two he is,' said Serenydes.
- But as for hym namyd first of all, 5036
 I shaH declare yow trewly myn entent,
 With that ther myght be made a pece fenyaff,
 And bothe partes beyng of on assent, 5039
 Whiche in this case were fuH conuenient,
 And if it myght be soo thanne wold I fayn
 The mariage were made betwix yow twayn.' 5042
- In this mene while that she these wordes seid, 5043
 Come Sygrem vppe and founde them sitting;
 Whanne she hym sawe thanne was she wele apayd:
 ' Sygrem,' she saide, ' canne ye telle me eny thing,
 Whiche are the knyghtes of auferius the kyng?'
 ' Ye, ye, madame,' [quod he] ' soo mote I goo,
 I know Generides and other moo. 5049
Meanwhile Sygrem came up,
and she asked him of the king's knights.
- And if ye wiH haue knowlache whiche is he, 5050
 he wiH come here anon be fore your sight,
 his stede is white, this is the certente;
 With hym ther is also, I yow be hight, 5053
 Another man whiche is a worthy knyght;
 his stede is blak, and therto Wight and good,
 hym self also is come of right noble blode. 5056
' Generydes is he with the white steed,
but there is a knight on a black one,
- Hys fader is a man of grete estate, 5057
 And p[r]ince of Cesare by his enheritaunce,
 A famose man, and alway fortenate
 In euery thing his honour shuld Avaunce; 5060
 Now haue I told yow all the circumstaunce.'
 ' What is the knyghtes name?' quod she ayeyn;
 ' Ser DareH he hight,' quod he, ' this is certayn.' 5063
Sir Darell.'

- Lucidas blushed
a little,
and Serenydes
pretended not
to notice.
As they were
going, Sygrem
whispered
Lucydas,
and gave her
the ring.
She hesitated
about taking it
- Whanne lucidas had hard hym) euery dele, 5064
Anon) she wex a litiH rede with aH,
Serenydes *perseuyd* it fuH wele,
She let as though she knew noo thyng¹ At AH, 5067
And ther with aH she rose vp fro the wall ;
And as thei ¹ were remevyng¹ fro the place,
fuH sustely² Sygrem callid lucydas, 5070
- And furth with aH delyueryd hir the ryng¹, 5071
Wherwith in sothe she was right wele apayde,
Yet made she danger in the reseuyng¹,
Of his massage she was sumwhat dismayde, 5074
And soberly to Sygrem) thus she saide :
' Ryng ne Writeng¹, as I remember canne,
I neuer yet reseuyd of noo gentilman) : 5077
- [leaf 27, back] Butt this I trost, in his grete gentilnes, 5078
That his desire suerly and his entent
Is only me yn honour' to encrease,
And in that wise this ryng¹ that he me sent, 5081
It to resevue I am right wele content.'
And so she toke the ryng¹ in this maner,
And gave Segrym) another for to bere. 5084
- but did so,
and gave him
another,
which Sygrem
- Now is Sygrem departid on) his way 5085
ffrom) lucidas, his erande for to do,
In to the feld as fast as euer he may,
To *ser* DareH withoute wordes eny moo, 5088
his tokyn) ther he delyueryd to hym) Also ;
Whanne he it had he was right wele apayde,
And to Sygrem fuH curtesly he sayde ; 5091
- who thanked him, ' Ser, ' quod he, ' I thank yow right hertely 5092
Of your' good wiH and trew *seruice*,
And one thyng¹ I yow ensure verily,

¹ MS. *ther*.² ? *softely*.

- The first stede that I wynne in eny wise, 5095 and promised him
 It shalbe your', and that I yow promes ; the first horse he
 So furth he gothe in to the feld anon, should win.
 And rode a course onto kyng' lamedon. 5098 He rode at King
 Lamedon,
- Anone thei mette to geder in the feld, 5099
 Ther with ser DareH saw his lady fre,
 he smote kyng' lamedon vppon the sheld,
 And suche a stroke he gave hym with a spere, 5102
 That hors and man bothe atte grownde were ; and brought
 And ther kyng' lamedon his stede he lost, horse and man
 Ser DareH hym toke and led hym to his ost 5105 to the ground.
- Callyng' anon to his remembraunce, 5106
 What full promys he had made before,
 Vnto Sygrem for his trew attendaunce, 5109 The horse he
 That he shuld be rewardid wele therfore, gave to Sygrem.
 And to Sygrem, I say yow forthermore,
 he gave that stede withoute more taryeng',
 The whiche he wanne of lamedon the kyng'. 5112
- Vppon the towre on highe stode lucidas, 5113 Lucidas saw all
 And saw aH this to hir grete plesaunce ; this, to her great
 Serenydes perseivid hough it was, delight.
 She seide noo word, nor made no contenaunce. 5116
 And so furth on, to telh yow the substaunce,
 The bateH stiH endure[d] to And fro,
 Moche pepyH slayn And Alway moo And moo. 5119
- Kyng' lamedon, of whom ye hard me speke, 5120 King Lamedon
 Was sette aH now appon anothe[r]¹ stede, mounted another
 To that entent he wold hym hym self A wreke, horse and rode
 And to Generides he ranne in dede ; 5123 at Generydes,
- Ther hors came on with suche a spede,
 And sothely, atte first encownteryng',
 Generides strake lamedon the kyng' 5126 who smote him

¹ MS. originally *A stede*, but *anothe[r]* is written above.

- to the brain,
so that he
fell dead. Thorough the hede streyght in to the brayn; 5127
The kyng^t was dede withynne a litiß space,
ffor hym was made grete hevynes certayn,
And for to tell yow certayn as it was, 5130
Whanne he was dede they stode in hevy case;
Thei lost the feld, and fled atte last
His side then
fled to the city. In to the Citee, and shette the gateg fast. 5133
- They without
pitched their
tents, Thanne thei withoute the tentys vppe y^et pight, 5134
Eche after other streight abowt the town,
In all the hast possibiß that thei myght;
And first of All, the kynges pavilion 5137
Set for the kyng^t and ther vppon a crown;
and set up engines
to break down
the walls. Engyins grete were purveyd for the nonys,
To breke the wallys with casting^t of stonys. 5140
- While they be-
sieged the city And whiß that thei besegid the Cite, 5141
These lordes and these knyghtes euerychone,
the news came to
Gwynan that
Generides was
gone to India, Ther cam tidengys in very certente,
Vnto Gwynan the kyng^t be many on), 5144
hough in to ynde Generides is gon,
With meche people and many a nobyß knyght
To helpe the kyng^t his fader in his right. 5147
- so he resolved to
invade Persia,
and avenge his
father's death,
and get Clarionas. Thanne in to perse purposith he to goo, 5148
his faders deth to venge if¹ that he myght,
And of Clarionas he thought also,
hir to haue he thought it was his right, 5151
he made a massinger redy day and nyght
Vnto ser Amelok, And hye hym fast
He sent to
Sir Amelok, Streyght in to ynde in All the possible hast. 5154
- bidding him
hold out, and
he would come
to his rescue. 'Goo now to Amelok, and byd hym kepe hym close,
That in noo wise he stere not to And fro,
And kepe hym owt of daunger of his foys,

- ffor with myn ost streight to perse I wiþ goo, 5158
 To wyne the Sowdon and his land Also ;
 ffro thense I wiþ into ynd without fey[n]ing,
 And reskew hym from Auferius the kyngt.' 5161
- Now goth the massenger on his viage 5162
 Streight in to ynd, withoute more taryengt,
 And to ser Amelok seide his message,
 Whiche likid hym right wele in euery thyngt, 5165
 And very glad he was of his comyngt :
 Grete chere also made quene Serenydes,
 ffor she purposid wele to leue in pece. 5168
- Thañ furth with aþ quod she to lucidas, 5169
 'Telle me, doughter, of very frendlehede,
 What Sygrem seid, and what his massage was,
 And as longith to my womanhede,' 5172
 With thoo wordes she wexe a litiþ rede ;
 'Madame,' quod she, 'if it please yow to here,
 I shaþ teþ yow the trowth of this mater. 5175
- There is a knyght of good and noble fame, 5176
 In very trowth hath sent me here a ryngt,
 ffor noo slaunder ne hurt onto my name,
 Butt to wurchippe in aþ his demeanengt, 5179
 And myn honour above aþ other thingt,
 This is his wiþ and his desire certayn.'
 Thanne seid Serenydes to hir ayeyn, 5182
- 'What is the knyghtes name ? now teþ it me.' 5183
 'Trewly, Madame,' quod she, 'ser Dareþ he high[t],
 And of Cesare the prince sonne is he,¹
 Of his handis callid a noble knyght, . 5186
 And ayre to his lande, I yow be hight ;
 Now haue I told yow aþ the circumstance,
 I prae yow take it to no displeasaunce.' 5189

The messenger
came to Sir
Amelok,

[leaf 28]
who was glad
of his coming.

Serenydes asks
Lucidas what
Sygrem said.

She blushed,
and told her of

Sir Darell and
his ring.

¹ MS. *he is*.

- 'Therof,' *quod* she, 'dowte ye neuer a dele, 5190
 Butt my conseite wiH I telle yow playne,
 'If he love you,'
 said Serenydes,
 'let him get
 If it be so that he love yow so weH,
 ye shaH right sone haue knowlage in *sertayne*, 5193
 your' pleasur' to *perfourme* he wiH be fayn);
 Send for Sygrem,' *quod* she, 'that he may goo
 To *ser* DareH your' erand for to do. 5196
- And as he owiH yow feiH and trew *seruice*, 5197
 That of Generides he wiH purchase
 A ryng^t of gold, in eny *maner* wise,
 a gold ring
 from Generydes
 which Clarionas
 gave him. 5200
 Whiche he in perse had of Clarionas ;
 Why and wherefore I shaH teH you y^e cause,
 I haue a frende, a fuH seke creature,
 I have a sick
 friend 5203
 Grete payn) of ache aHway he doth endure.
- And by a vision) it come hym) too, 5204
 he shhuld be hoole if he the ryng^t mygh^t haue ;
 And for certayn) it were grete pite also,
 who has been told
 in a vision that it
 will make him
 whole.' 5207
 That he soo soone were dolvyn) in his grave,
 If suche a ryng^t mygh^t hym) socour' And save.
 ffor the whiche doughter I yow require,
 Send for Sygrem and tender this mater.' 5210
- To hir anon) Answerd lucidas ayeyn), 5211
 Whiche in this mater was fuH Innocente ;
 'Madame,' *quod* she, 'I wiH putt to my payn),
 In that I canne to folow your' entente.' 5214
 Sygrem anon) on) this massage was sent,
 Lucidas sent
 Sygrem to Sir
 Darell to borrow
 the ring.
 And to *ser* DareH dede his erande soo,
 The ryng^t to borow withoute wordes moo. 5217
- As for *ser* DareH he thought noo thyng Amys, 5218
 Nor he that brought the ryng^t, but wote ye what ?
 ffuH ofte it hath be seide, and trew it is,

- ffalshede and trougth is euer atte debate : 5221
 And yet Sygrem was allway fortenate ;
 ffor lucidas, whanne he brought hir the ryngt,
 Gave hym a mantell of hir owne weryngt. 5224
- nor Sygrem,
to whom Lucidas
gave a mantle
when he brought
the ring.
- Serenides perseivid be the ryngt, 5225
 hir prayour was obseruyd and obeyde,
 And furth with all withoute more taryengt,
 She callid lucidas, and this she saide ; 5228
 ‘Doughter,’ quod she, ‘I am right wele apayde,
 ffor now I wote ye haue chose you a man),
 That with please yow in all that euer he canne. 5231
- And fayre doughter,’ quod she, ‘this I yow prae, 5232
 As late me see the facyon of that ryngt.’
 ‘Madame,’ quod she, ‘ye wote right wele alway,
 I haue not disobeyde yow in noo thingt ;’ 5235
 And from a lose anon ther as it hyngt,
 Be cause she wold in no wise her displesse,
 She toke the ryng onto Serenydes. 5238
- Whanne she it hadde thanne was she wele content,
 And callid furth on) of hir Acqueyntaunce,
 Suche on) as wold do after hir entent,
 And brought vppe was vnder hir gouernaunce, 5242
 A man) that cowde hym self right wele avaunce,
 And born) he was, the story seith the same,
 In Ethiope, and Gusare was his name. 5245
- Gusare,
- Ther with all right this to hym she sayde ; 5246
 ‘On my massage,’ quod she, ‘now must ye goo
 ffurth in to perse, and this may not be nayde,
 And ye shaft bere with you this ryngt Also.’ 5249
 ‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘your’ pleasure for to doo,
 I wold be glad in eny maner wise,
 To ryde or goo ye shaft haue my seruice.’ 5252
- and sent him
to Persia,
to carry the ring
to Clarionas,

- [leaf 28, back] 'Gusare,' *quod* she, 'in sothe this is the case, 5253
 haue here a ryng^t and kepe it stiH opece,
 To the tyme that ye come onto Clarionas,
 ffor she it gave on to Generides; 5256
 The love of them) is grete, but,¹ neuer the lese,
 I wold ther were a variaunce fuH fayn,
 So that the love were broke betwix them) twayn). 5259
- that she might
 break the love
 between her and
 Generydes.
- By this meane my pece I may purchase, 5260
 And other wise I trow it wiH not be,
 If ye do wele your' labour' in this case,
 ffor your' rewarde yow shaft wele know and se, 5263
 That ye shaft haue A cause to *praye* for me.'
 'Madame,' *quod* he, 'this shaft be don) right wele,
 In this mater dowte ye neuer a dele.' 5266
- Falshede and gile is now togeder mett, 5267
 In A persone to awayte ther Avauntage.
 vppon) han) hors [Gusare]² hym) self was sett,
 And rideth) into perse on) his massage. 5270
 Whanne he come ther he mett in his viage
 A pore palmer, goth) in sympiH gise;
 To hym) anon) he sayde right in this wise: 5273
- When Gusare
 came to Persia
 he met a poor
 palmer,
- and asked him
 where the Sultan
 was.
 'At Moun-toner,'
 said he,
- 'Now good fader, what contre come ye fro?' 5274
 'ffro Moun-toner,' *quod* he, 'the redy waye.'
 'Good *ser*,' *quod* he, 'now or ye ferther goo,
 Where lith,' he seide, 'the Sowdon? I yow praye.'
 'I left hym) ther,' *quod* he, 'as yesterday;
 A grete people surely with) hym) ther was,
 'with Clarionas.' And his doughter also, fayre Clarionas.' 5280
- 'And where is
 Generydes?'
 'He is gone to
 India to maintain
 his father's right.'
- 'Where is now hir love, Generides?' 5281
 'he is furth) into ynd,' *quod* he, 'certayn);
 his faderys right) to maynteyne and encrease,

¹ MS. *but it*.² *om.* MS.

- ffor ther shaft he be lord and souereyn.)' 5284
 'ffader,' quod he, 'of on) thyng' yet ageyn),
 This wold I vnderstonde in myne entent,
 What token) he gave hir whanne he went?' 5287
 'What token did he leave with her?'
- 'In sothe,' quod he, 'that canne I tell some dele ; 5288
 Whanne he departid owt of the Citee,
 With hir he left, I am remembryd wele,
 A lityH dogge, and ther ye may hym) see.' 5291
 'ffader,' he seide, 'do now sum what for me ;
 we ij wolle change our' clothyng' or we goo.'
 Quod the palmer, 'I gree me wele therto.' 5294
 They change clothes,
- Now is Gusare weH onward on) his way, 5295 and Gusare came
 And gave the palmer money largely ;
 To mountoner he came the redy way, 5298 and heard of
 Ther was brought tydengez sekerly, Gwynan's
 That Gwynan was enteryd certainly invasion.
 Into the lande of perse withoute eny delay,
 ffor to make a feld and wyne it by bateH. 5301
- And so furth on) to say yow ferthermore, 5302
 Gusare is now as besy as he may,
 To do that he had promys[ed] before ;
 And as the palmer went in his Arraye, 5305
 So goth Gusare, and toke the [redy] way
 Into A tempilh, wheare as the Sowdon) was,
 With hym) ther was also Clarionas. 5308
 He goes to a temple where the Sultan and Clarionas were,
- On his fynger the ryng' anon) he sett, 5309 and puts the
 And in the temple purveid hym) A place ring on his finger,
 Among' the prese, for no man) wold) he let and posted
 That he myght stonde before clarionas ; 5312 himself so that
 'And ther he stode as for a certeyn) space, Clarionas might
 The ryng' vppon) his fynger for to shewe, see him.
 She sawe the ryng' and saide butt wordez fewe. 5315
 When she saw the ring

- Yet in hir self she was gretly dismayde, 5316
 And ther with aH she chaungyd countenance ;
 MyrabyH sawe it wele, and this she saide,
 ‘Madame, ye haue som) cawse of displeaunce ; 5319
 I prae yow, tell me what is your’ grevaunce.’
 ‘That shaH ye knowe,’ quod she, ‘withoute fayle,
 And wele I wote therof ye wiH mervett. 5322
- ‘I saw a palmer
 in the press,
 with a ring on
 his finger,
 which I gave to
 Generydes.’
 I saw a palmer stondeng’ in the prese, 5323
 On) his finger,’ quod she, ‘ther is a ryng’,
 The whiche I gave,’ quod she, ‘onto Generides,
 And to non) other creature that is levyng’ 5326
 ‘Madame,’ quod she, ‘that is a wonder thing’,
 yet for AH that dismay yow neuer a dele,
 ye shaH se aH this shalbe right weH ; 5329
- ‘I will bring
 him to your
 chamber,’
 said Mirabell ;
 For I myself wiH speke with hym),’ quod she ; 5330
 ‘To your’ chaumber I shaH hym) bryng’ anon),
 Ther shaH yow fele and knowe the certente,
 In very trougth if it be so or noo.’ 5333
 So her vppon) MirabeH is gon),
 And taryd not, but as hir commandement was,
 She brought the palmer vnto Clarionas. 5336
- and the palmer
 came,
 Whanne he hir sawe, he knelyd on) his kne, 5337
 ‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘take ye not in disdayne
 Of on) fortune, whiche wiH non) other be,
 ffor in this case to yow I wiH be playn) ; 5340
 Generides is weddid in certeyn),
 It passith not a fourthnyght sithe it was,
 To Amelokkez doughter lucydas. 5343
- and told her that
 Generydes was
 married to
 Lucydas
 It was ayenst his wiH in euery thing, 5344
 The cause was suche that he myght not say nay,
 his fader chargyd hym) on his blissing’,
- [leaf 29]
 against his will,

- That pece myght be apoyntid for alway, 5347 to make pece.
 If y^e trost not the wordes that I say,
 here is a ryng^t whiche he sent yow be me,
 ye gave it hymⁿ in very certente. 5350
 ‘Here is the ring
 you gave him.
- And fethermore also he chargid me, 5351 And he charged
 To late you wete and suerly vnderstonde, me to let you
 That ye may now stonde att your’ liberte,
 To wedde where euer ye wiſt in eny lande.’ 5354 know that you
 were free to wed.’
- Whanne she herd that noo lenger myght she stond,
 Butt downe she felle swoninge for very paynⁿ;
 Mirabeſt ranne and toke hir vppe ageyn), 5357 Clarionas fell
 down in a swoon.
- Comfortyng^t hir in aſt that euer she myght, 5358
 And whanne that she was recoueryd vp ayeyn),
 To hymⁿ that brought the ryng^t she went right,
 And in noo wiſe she cowde not hir refrayn), 5361
 And smote the ryng^t owt of his handes twaynⁿ;
 Aſt sodenly the ryng^t fromⁿ hymⁿ was gone,
 With that Mirabeſt toke it uppe anon), 5364 she smote the ring
 out of Gusare’s
 hands,
 and Mirabell
 picked it up.
- And putte the ryng^t in full sure kepyng^t. 5365
 Thanne saide Gusare onto Clarionas,
 ‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘I haue forgete a thing^t,
 Whiche I shuld say as I commaundid was, 5368
 Ye haue a litiſt dog^t, this is the case;
 My charge was this to teſt yow euerie dele,
 In eny wiſe that ye shuld kepe hymⁿ wele.’ 5371
 Gusare then asked
 for the dog,
- ‘As for the dog^t,’ quod she, ‘here it ys;
 I wiſt noo lenger kepe it sekerly,
 Nor no thing^t that I may knowe was his.’
 To hymⁿ she threw the dog^t full hastily, 5375
 With that Mirabeſt kaught it sodenly;
 ‘Thow shalt nomore,’ quod she, ‘come in his way,
 ffor lucidas with the shaſt neuer playe, 5378
 which Clarionas
 threw to him,
 but Mirabell
 caught it.

- And I wiþ haue the att myn owen device.' 5379
 Whanne Gusare saw that ther was non other¹ way,
 he toke his leue anon in hasty wise,
 Gusare then returned to India,
 And so departid vppon his Iurnay, 5382
 Ayeyn to ynd as fast as euer he may.
 and Clarionas to her chamber,
 Clarionas is to the chaunber gone,
 With syghys depe and thoughtes many on), 5385
- a woful woman. A wofull woman full of hevynes, 5386
 Generides alway now remembryng,
 Complayneng^t gretly of his vnstabilnes,
 Of wheche he was not gilty in noo thyng^t; 5389
 Mirabell thought And so Myrabell alway demyng^t
 Of this mater to vnderstonde it wele,
 there was treason. That it was do be treson euery dele. 5392
- When the Sultan heard of it he came to his daughter's chamber,
 And whanne the Sowdon hard of y^{is} array, 5393
 And hough his daughter toke suche a hevynes,
 To hir chaunber he toke the redy waye,
 As nature wold and also gentilnes, 5396
 And fond hir in hir bed in grete distresse ;
 and asked what was amiss. ' Daughter,' quod he, ' ther is some thing^t amys,
 What euer it be now tell me what it is.' 5399
- ' My lord,' quoth she, ' Generydes is false,
 ' My lord,' quod she, ' plese it yow to vnderstonde,
 ye gaue me onys onto Generides
 In mariage, with half your^t lande ;
 Now is he false alas, an[d] cawseles 5403
 With hym ser Amelok hath made his pece,
 And trewly accordid in euery case,
 and married to Lucidas.' ffor he is weddid vnto lucidas.' 5406
- ' This aventure,' quod he, ' is passing^t new, 5407
 And as me think a very wonder thing^t;
 ' But is it true ? ' Butt wote ye verily that it is trew ?'

¹ MS. *eyer*.

- ‘Ye, ye, my lord,’ *quod* she, ‘without feyning’; 5410 ‘Yea, yea, my
And ferthermore he sent me here a ryngt,
That I gave hym in very certente,
Where by I wote it may non other be.’ 5413 it cannot be
otherwise.’
- To his doughter the Sowdon gave answer, 5414 The Sultan
‘Who wold,’ *quod* he, ‘have thought in suche a knyght,
That he wold be ontrew in this mater?
A grete merveH to here, I yow be hight, 5417
ffor this is do [a]yent aH maner right,
And if he shew yow suche onkyndnes,
yet for aH that take ye noo hevynes, 5420
- For I wiH purvey for yow another waye, 5421 but, said he,
And moche better as after myn entent;
kyng Gwynan wold be glad, I dare weH say,
That he and I shuld make apoy[n]te]ment 5424 ‘Gwynan will
Betwix yow twayne, and if ye wiH assent,
That mariage, I cowde wele vnderstonde,
ShaH bryngt a fyniaH pece in to this land.’ 5427 we may make
a final peace.’
- Clarionas seide neuer a worde ageyn, 5428 Clarionas said
The whiche MirabeH liked neuer a dele;
To the Sowdon than spake she wordes playn,
‘My lord,’ *quod* she, ‘as ferre as I canne fele, 5431
In this mater I canne think but wele;
And weH I wote that he is suche a knyght,
he wiH not breke that he hath onys behight.’ 5434
- ‘Now, good MirabeH,’ *quod* Clarionas, 5435
‘ye wote right wele he sent me here a ryngt.’
‘In very trought, madame, and trew it is;
Butt this I wote as wele as eny thingt, 5438 [leaf 29, back]
AH that he saide,’ *quod* she, ‘it is lesyngt.’
The Sowdon toke good hede of þ^t she saide,
Of hir wordes he was right wele apayde. 5441 it was all false.
The Sultan took
heed of her words,
and was well
pleased.

- 'What is best
to be done,
Mirabell?' 'What think yow best, Mirabell?' thanne quod he,
'That shuld be do as towchyng' this mater?'
'Trewly,' quod she, 'the best that I canne se,
late me go furth and be the messanger; 5445
And whanne I come ayeynd thanne shaft ye here
The very trougth, and trew as it is
Doo as ye list, for this is mynd avise I wis. 5448
- But if I go,
promise to put
off the marriage If I shaft goo, of one thing' I yow praye, 5449
That I may haue a surance or I passe,
The mariage to putte in delay
between my lady
and Gwynan.' Betwix my lady here, Clarionas, 5452
And kyng Gwynan, rehersed here in this case,
And att my comyng' home ye shaft wele know
Aft other maner tidynges as I trow.' 5455
- The Sultan
assented,
and she went
off to India Too hir desire the Sowdon seid not nay, 5456
And furth with gave hir license for to goo;
In to the reame of ynde she toke hir way,
with two squires
and two pages. With hir ther went ij squyers and noo mo, 5459
Save ij pages to kepe ther horses also,
On hir Iurnay to kepe the way full right,
In AH the hast possible that she myght. 5462
- Generydes in
his sleep dreamed
that the Sultan
and his daughter
came to him,
complaining sore
that his promise
was not kept, Now I shaft telle yow hough befelle y^e case; 5463
Generides was dremyd in his sleppe,
hym thought the Sowdon and Clarionas
Come hand in hand, and she with sighys depe 5466
Complayned sore, and first beganne to wepe,
And thanne anon the Sowdon to hym spake,
'Awake,' quod he, 'Generides awake! 5469
- Thy promys is not kept that thow behight, 5470
And namely to my doughter and to me,
and that he had
taken ffor thu hast take, ayenst aft maner right,

- Another wiff in very certente, 5473 another wife.
 By tresone colour' vnder a suerte.
 Thanne seid Clarionas, 'geve me my ring',
 ffor suerly I wiſſ haue Gwynan the kyngt.' 5476 'Give me my ring,' said Clarionas, 'for I will marry Gwynan.'
- After aſſ this hym) thought Gwynan y^e kyngt' 5477
 In to Egipte ſhuld lede Clarionas :
 Thanne came Mirabeſſ as ſhe was goyngt,
 And toke hir from) him) as hir fortune was ; 5480
 he awoke and of this soden) caſe,
 To Dareſſ and to Nataneſſ aſſ in fere,
 Of his dremys he told them) the mater. 5483
 When he awoke he told Darell and Natanel.
- Syr Dareſſ, as ſone as he hard of y^e ryngt', 5484
 his hart anon) mysgave hym) furth) with aſſ,
 hym) thought ſom) tresone was ymagenyng,¹
 And fayn) he wold haue wiſt what was faſſ ; 5487
 Vppon Sygrem anon) he beganne to calle,
 Whanne he was come he told hem) mor And leſſe,
 Of aſſ the dreme of Generides. 5490
 and he called Sygrem,
- ' Now, good Sygrem, I *prae* yow goo,' *quod* hee, 5491
 ' To lucidas and ſpeke for the ryngt',
 Beſechyngt' hir that ſhe wiſſ ſend it me,
 As euer I may do for hir eny thingt.' 5494
 ' Ser,' *quod* Sygrem, ' I ſay withoute feyningt',
 I wiſſ do your' maſſage and ſee what ſhe wiſſ ſay,
 And bryngt' ayeyn) the ryngt' if that ye may.' 5497
 and ſent him to Lucidas to get the ring again.
- Thanne went Sygrem the way to lucidas, 5498
 ffrom) *ser* Dareſſ to telle his erande playn),
 In euery thyngt' rehersi) here the caſe,
 And ſpecially to haue the ryngt' Ayeyn), 5501
 It was his deſire and his comyngt' certayn).
 Vppon) this anon) ſhe gave an aſſwere,
 ' I ſhaſſ,' *quod* ſhe, ' ſpeke for this mater.' 5504
 Sygrem went to Lucides.

¹ MS. *ymagenyd*.

- and she to her
mother, To hir moder anon with all she gothe, 5505
And tenderly she prayde here for the ryngt,
Butt lucidas wheder she was lefe or lothe,
- but could not
get it, She cowde not haue it for no maner thyngt, 5508
So partyd she and gretly complaynengt,
Right grete vnkyndnes she thought also,
That vnder trost she shuld be *seruyd* so. 5511
- and went her
way back to
Sygrem. And whanne she sawe it wold non other be, 5512
ffull hevilly she went hir way ayeyn,
'I shaH telle yow the trowth, Sygrem,' *quod* she,
This ryngt wiH nott be goten for certayn,¹ 5515
I haue both lost my labour and payn,
- 'There is some
treason, I pro-
mise you, And wele I wote it is not all a right, 5518
ffor some tresone ther is I yow behight.
- and Darell will
bear the blame. And all I trow be for Generides, 5519
I canne weH think that DareH shaH bere ye name
Of this vnhappy werk, yet neuer the lese
Right wele I wote that he is not to blame ; 5522
And I suppose ye wiH reporte the same :
- But tell him 'Butt this I *prae* yow hartely,' *quod* she, 5525
'Do my message as sone as ye hym see,
- that Gwynan
is gone to
Persia to destroy
the Sultan and
his land. And say I send hym word this in *sertayn* ; 5526
Gwynan the kyngt is gon, I vnderstonde,
ffourth in to perse, and his erande is playn),
The Sowdon to distroye and his land : 5529
It to *perfourme* he hath made full covebant.
- Beg him to get
leave to go to
[leaf 30]
Persia, Now, good Sygrem, I *prae* yow say hym soo, 5532
And that he gete hym licence for to goo
- where he will
hear tidings of
the ring, Furth in to perse withoute more taryengt, 5533
And say hym suerly this is myn avice,
Ther shaH he here some tidynges of the ryngt,

¹ MS. *certente*.

- And whoo that take on hym that enterprise, 5536
 hough it was brought about, and in what wise,
 And he most dele with all so sekerly,
 That no man knowe it save he and ye and I.' 5539
 but he must deal secretly.'
- Now goth Sygrem, and noo thyng weh apayd, 5540 Sygrem meets Darell,
 he mette ser Darell rideng on the playn,
 And told hym all that lucidas had seide ;
 hough he had lost his labour and his payn, 5543
 and tells him all that Lucidas had said.
 And hough the ryng wold not be gotten ageyn ;
 Whanne he had hard all this yan was he wroth,
 And to Generides anon he gothe. 5546
 As soon as he heard all,
- 'I pray yow, ser, now geve me leve,' quod he, 5547 he asked
 'ffurth into perse I purpose me¹ to goo,
 hough it is ther to knowe the certente,
 ffor I am alway trobolyd to and to ; 5550
 ffor your dremys right I drede also.'
 Generides ther of was wele apayde,
 'Goo on your way, in goddis name,' he seide, 5553
 'Go on your way in God's name,
 'As fast as euer ye may, and com ayeyn), 5554
 Owt of that lande sum tidyngez wold I here ;
 I pray yow, darell, bryng me word sertayn,
 And of Clarionas my lady dere.' 5557
 and bring me some tidings of Clarionas.'
 'That shaH not be for gete in noo maner.'
 Ser darell toke his leve, and went his way
 Into the lande of perse, as I yow saye. 5560
- Now is Gusare, that most on happy wight, 5561 Gusare is now come out of Persia,
 Out of the lande of perce com² into ynd,
 ffuH fast seching, in all that euer he myght,
 The redy way Generides to fynde, 5564
 With new contrivid faldhede hym to blynd,
 In all the hast to seche hym furth he went,
 And atte [last] he founde hym in his tent. 5567
 and goes straight with a new lie to Generydes,

¹ MS. *ne.*² MS. *is com.*

- ‘My lord,’ *quod* he, ‘fro perse now am I come, 5568
 ffro the Sowdon with tidynge^s y^t be there,
 ffor I wi^{ll} te^{ll} yow playnle a^{ll} and som),
 that Clarionas is married to Gwynan.
 Gwynan the kyng^t is ther *with* grete powre, 5571
 They ben^d accordid a^{ll} bothe in on^d maner,
 The pece is made and cryed in euery place,
 The kyng^t is weddid on to Clarionas. 5574
- These tydingez sendith yow *ser* Anasore ; 5575
 Anoder erand haue I for to do,
 The dog which Clarionas sent,
 A liti^{ll} dog^t Clarionas hath^t ther,
 She bad I shuld bryng hym^d *with* me Also, 5578
 Butte be the tyme I shuld part And goo,
 Thanne shuld I haue brought it *with* me verily,
 he had had taken from him.
 And it was taken^d ayeyn^d from me sodenly.’ 5581
- Generides hard wele a^{ll} that he seide, 5582
 And in hym^d self he was abasshed sore,
 Generides was sore abashed,
 Thanne furth^t with^t a^{ll} the message[r] he prayde ;
 and asked when the wedding was.
 ‘Good *ser*,’ *quod* he, ‘yet telle me ferthermore, 5585
 Whanne she was weddid and hough^t [long] before,
 Of your^t departeng^t sey me the certente.’
 ‘Ther of I sha^{ll} te^{ll} yow the trouthe,’ *quod* he ; 5588
- ‘I come fro thense apoynted as thei were, 5589
 The same day that I left,’ said Gusare.
 The same day thei were weddid fu^{ll} sekyrly ;
 My hast was suche that I myg^{ht} not be ther,
 To see the rewle and it was trewly.’ 5592
 Generides toke it fu^{ll} hevily,
 In petuose wise complayneng^t euer in on^d,
 Thanne Natane^{ll} comfortid hym^d Anon. 5595
- Now let us speak of Mirabell.
 Off Mirabe^{ll} now late vs speke a while, 5596
 Whiche is reden, in a^{ll} that euer she may,
 Into the reme of ynd^t fu^{ll} many A myle ;

- Whanne she came nygh the ende of hir Iurnay, 5599 When she came
Ther mette she with Darell vppon the waye, near the end of
A ferde she was in very certente, her journey
she met Darell,
ffor Atte first she wist not yat it was he.¹ 5602
- Whanne she hym sawe she was right wele apayde, 5603 and was well
And herd hym speke thanne very glad was she ; pleased.
'hough doth my lord, the Sowdon, now?' he said, 'How doth my
'And my lady Clarionas,' quod he, 5606 lord?' said he,
'Is she weddid? tell me the very certente.' 'and is my lady
'Weddid?' quod she, 'nay, nay, I yow ensure, Clarionas
Nor neuer wilbe to non erthely creature, 5609 married?'
'No,' said
Mirabell,
'and never will
- Save only on to my lord Generides, 5610 except to
In whom suerly is all hir fyence, Generydes.
ffor this I canne yow tell in sothfastnes,
ffull seldom is he owt of hir remembraunce, 5613
And as for eny new² founden Acqueyntaunce,
Ther is noo suche, I saye yow feithfully,
ffor wele I wote she had moche lever dye 5616 She would
rather die.
- Butt now I prae yow telle me,' quod she, 5617 And now tell me,
'Generides is he weddid, or noo?' is Generydes
'Nay,' quod Darell, 'for certayn levith me, married?'
It came neuer in his thought so for to do ; 'Nay,' said
And for to say the very trowth Also, 5620 Darell,
'it never came
ffor hym I dare wele answere in this case, into his thought.
he with non other but fayre Clarionas.' 5623 He will have none
but Clarionas.'
- 'The pece is not appoynted thanne,' quod she, 5624 [leaf 30, back]
'Of ser Amelok and of Generides?' 'Then the peace
'Nay,' quod Darell, 'trewly it with not be ; is not made
holde on your way,' quod she, 'stih opece, between Sir
And sette my lady³ more in hartes ease ; Amelok and him?'
ffor on thynge shaH I say yow that is sure, 'Nay,' quoth
Ye shaH fynde hir a wofull creature.' 5630 Darell.
'Hold on your
way,' said she,
'and set my
lady at rest,
for you will find
her a woful
creature.'

¹ MS. *she*.² MS. *now*.³ MS. *lorde*.

- 'I will,' said
 Darell,
 'in all the haste
 I can.
 Generydes is
 now sad for his
 dream.'
- 'In all the hast,' quod Darell, 'that I canne, 5631
 To hir I with withoute eny more ;
 Generides is now an hevvy man),
 As for a dreme whiche trobelyd hym) full sore, 5634
 No thyngt so meche sith he was boore ;
 And wenyngt in his dreme, this is y^e case,
 kyngt Gwynan had weddid clarionas. 5637
- The Sowdon) was agreyd weH therto, 5638
 All hym) thought was trew in euery thingt,
 Now may ye teH hym) it is noo thyngt soo,
 And putt Away all this Imagenyngt.' 5641
- They parted,
 he for Persia,
 she for India,
 to seek
 Generydes.
- Thanne departid thei and noo taryengt,
 he went to perse and she went to ynd,
 The redy way Generides to fynde. 5644
- Whanne she cam) yer, into y^e ost she went, 5645
 Generides to seche she ded here payn),
 Atte last she founde hym) in his tente,
 And ther she founde that false Gusare ageyn), 5648
 The massenger, wherof she was full fayne ;
 And bothe here squyers furth with all she prayde,
 'lay on handes on) that false theff,' she saide. 5651
- Whanne he hir saw he drew hym) owt aside, 5652
 hir comyngt theder likid hym) full ih ;
 MirabeH thanne anon) hym) had asspyde,
 She toke hym) be the hede and held hym) stih), 5655
 Thanne on) that knewe hir purpose and witht,
 he smote Gusare so harde vppon) the cheke,
 That leche craft hym) nede non) other seeke. 5658
- whom she seized
 by the head.
 One that knew
 her wish
 hit him a blow
 that put him
 beyond the help
 of doctors.
- And ther he dyed withynne a litiH stounde, 5659
 Generides had mervett what it ment ;
 As he came owt MirabeH ther he founde ;
- Generydes
 wondered what
 it meant,

- And as sche was comyng^t inward to his tent, 5662
 Of hir he was full gladde in his entente,
 And seid, 'mayde Mirabell, benedicite ;
 What thyng^t hath brought yow into this contre ?' 5665
- and asked
Mirabell what
had brought
her thither.
- 'I shall,' quod she, 'telle yow the mater playn), 5666
 And of my comyng^t heder all the case ;
 This fals traytour that here this day was slayn),
 he came and told to my lady Clarionas, 5669
- She told him
all Gusare's
treason,
- That ye were weddid onto lucidas,
 And on his fynger ther he brought a ryng^t,
 Whiche she gave yow Att your^t both departyng^t. 5672
- and all about
the ring
- For all his bost from hym I toke the ryng^t, 5673
 My lady it forsoke, she was so wroth ;
 The liti^t dog^t she toke that he shuld bryng^t ;
 Butt as for that,' quod she, 'I hadde them both : 5676
- and the dog,
- Now haue I told yow hough the mater goth.^t
 And he hir thankyd right curtesly,
 And hir rewardid as she was worthy. 5679
- 'As for the ryng^t,' quod she, 'loo here it is ;' 5680
 And furth with all delyueryd hym the ryng^t.
 Generides knowe wele that it was his ;
- and gave him
back the ring.
- 'This ryng^t,' quod he, 'Dare^t had in kepyng^t : 5683
 Wherefore,' quod he, 'me think it is a wonder thyng^t,
 his trouth I knowe and haue don many a day,
 The fawte is not in hym I dare wele say. 5686
- Now, fayre myrabell, go to hir ayeyn), 5687
 ffor this I canne vnderstonde and fele,
 She will not leve noo tidynges in sertayn),
 Butt if she here yow speke, this wote I weh ; 5690
- And yet Dare^t will tell hir euery dele,
 Yet will she geve noo credence I am sure,
 Butt ye be ther, ellys to noo creature. 5693

- and tell her how
unkind she is to
mistrust me.' And ferthermore I *prae* yow telle hir this, 5694
Me to mystroste trewly she is vnkynd,
ffor o thing^a shaft I say, and trew it is,
Vntrew to hir she shaft me neuer fynde, 5697
And this I wiH remembre in my mende
Eche creature of nature hym delitith,
That on good turne another quytith.' 5700
- At this Mirabell
took her leave. With these wordes MirabeH ganne to smyle, 5701
hir leve she toke, and furth she goth hir waye ;
Of *ser* DareH now late vs speke a while,
Whiche hastith hym as fast as euer he may, 5704
So ferre fourth he was on his¹ Iurnay,
That into the land of perse aryvid he,
And came to Mountoner the fayre Citee. 5707
- and went straight
to Clarionas. Full streyght he went onto Clarionas, 5708
And to her chaunber toke the redy waye,
he knockyd softly as the maner was,
Thanne came a mayde and this to hym gan say ; 5711
'Go fro the dore,' *quod* she, '*ser*, I yow praye,
My lady had noo rest of aH this nyght,
Nor slept not to now, I yow be hight.' 5714
- Her maid would
not admit him, FuH fast he prayde, but neuer the neer he was, 5715
And whanne he sawe it wold non oyer wise be,
he callyd alow vppon Clarionas ;
'Madame,' *quod* he, 'please yow for to see ; 5718
I am DareH, now speke a word with me.'
- who heard,
and said to the
maid,
'Open the door.' Thanne spake Clarionas onto the mayde,
'Goo vpon the chaunber dore,' she saide. 5721
- Then Darell
came in, Thanne DareH came in and knelid on his kne, 5722
And thus he saide onto fayre Clarionas,
'ffrom ynd I come to this contre,

¹ MS. *hir*.

- Generides commaundith hym on to your' grace ; 5725 and told her all
 As for my comyng' now this is the case, about Generydes.
- Off' yow he hath be dremyd passing' sore,
 Whiche dayly hym noyeth more and more.' 5728
- Thanne he told hir the mater hough it was, 5729
 She hard hym speke aH his entente to fele ;
 'lete be these wordes,' quod Clarionas, She professed
 'This that ye say is lesyng' euery dele, 5732 at first not to
 Suppose ye not I vnderstonde yow wele ; believe him.
- Generides, this is the mater playn),
 To lucydas is weddid for certeyn). 5735 'It is plain,'
 said she,
 'that Generydes
 is married to
 Lucidas.
- To hir it is this message shuld be do, 5736 This message
 And not to me, for I haue not to don) with aH.' should be to her.'
- 'Now good madame,' [quod he,] 'why say yow soo ?
 My message is to yow in especiaH, 5739
 Now please it yow onto your' mynd to caH,
 hough good, hough trew he was to yow alwaye,
 And yet is he the same this dare I say. 5742
- Off lucidas,' quod he, 'ye may be sure, 5743 Darell then told
 ffor I shaH teH yow trougth withoute feyning', of his own love
 I love hir best of eny creature ; for Lucidas,
- She sent to me, noo malyce supposyng', 5746 and how the
 By hir moderys subtile ymagening', ring had been
 The ryng' to borow of Generides, obtained.
- Seyng' she had a frende in grete distresse. 5749
- The ryng', she said, wold make hym hoole ayeyn), 5750
 And for that cause I sent it lucidas ;
 Now wote ye wele, it was but for a trayn)
 Serenydes it had, this is the case ; 5753
 That false Gusare the messenger he was,
 ffor yow and for Generides also,
 To make a variaunce betwix yow bo.¹ 5756

¹ MS. *bothe*.

This is,' *quod* he, 'the trowth that I have seide, 5757
 And putt me to what othe that ye list.'
 In here conseite thanne was she weH apayde,
 'To you,' *quod* she, 'now haue I noo mystrost.' 5760
 'Trewly, Madame,' *quod* he, 'and I had it wist,
 That ye shuld me mystrost in my message,
 I had not A take vpon me this viage.' 5763

With that she
 became friendly,

With that she made hym very frendly chere, 5764
 And whanne the Sowdon wist of his comyng,
 To hir he went som tidynggez for to here,
 And gave *ser* DareH anone his welcomyng; 5767
 'What tidynges now,' *quod* he, 'do yow bryng?'
 'ffor certayn, *ser*,' he seide, 'suche as thei be,
 To yow I wiH declare the very certente. 5770

and the Sultan
 welcomed Sir
 Darell,

who told him
 that Parentyne
 was closely
 besieged,

The Sege is leyde to parentyne,' *quod* he, 5771
 'A grete dele nerrer thanne it was before,
 The gates ar aH shett of that Citee,
 And of vitayle thei haue but easy store, 5774
 Nor non may haue, to say yow ferthermore ;
 So streyte them kepith auferius the kyng,
 That owt thei may not for noo maner thing. 5777

and that
 Generydes was
 at Vice.

Generides lithe atte Citee of vice, 5778
 Whiche is the strongeth Citee of aH the land ;
 he hath besegyde it in suche a wise,
 That thei may not skape I vnderstonde, 5781
 The contre hoole obeyeth to his hand.'
 The Sowdon hard hym wele, and this he seid,
 'Of these tidynges I am right wele apayde ; 5784

'I would he
 were here,'
 said the Sultan,
 'for Gwynan is
 in the land,

Butt now I wold he were here with me, 5785
 Tell hym so, DareH, in eny maner wise.
 Gwynan the kyng is now in this contre,

- And to my land he doth grete preiudice, 5788
 Therefore haue I nede of his seruice.'
 'Ser,' quod Darell, 'as fast as I canne goo,
 In all the hast your' erande shalbe doo.' 5791
 and I have need
 of his service.'
- Syr Darell toke his leue and went his way, 5792
 Whiche euer hath be founde both good and trew ;
 Mirabeall is homeward in hir Iurnay,
 Ser Darell and she mette togeder now, 5795
 Echeon tolde suche tidyinggez as thei cowde,
 Betwix them was noo lenger abideng,
 Butt furth they rode withoute more taryeng'. 5798
 Sir Darell took
 his leave,
 and met Mirabeall
 coming home-
 ward.
- Ser Amelok came owt of the Citee of vice, 5799
 With sertayn of his pepill furth he went,
 ffor it was tolde hym in credibill¹ wise,
 Generides lay seke in his own tent, 5802
 Whiche boldith hym the more in his entent ;
 yet were thei blynd in that opynyon,
 ffor he was rideng' owt before the town). 5805
 Sir Amelok heard
 that Generydes
 lay sick,
 and came out of
 the city.
- Now is ser Darell come ayeyn to ynd, 5806
 And furth withall into the feld he went,
 ffuill fast rideng' Generides to fynde,
 And furth withall he sought hym in to y^e tent, 5809
 To telle hym all the effecte of his entent,
 Butt ther he founde non erthely creature,
 So furth he rode seching' his aventure ; 5812
 [leaf 51, back]
 Sir Darell rode
 over the field in
 search of
 Generydes,
- And with a Duke of Ethiopie he mette, 5813
 Vppon a courser crossyng' hym the way ;
 Eche vppon other ferly on they sett,
 And or thei partid, shortly for to say, 5816
 The duke was slayn and in the feld he lay :
 Whanne lucidas hym saw thanne was she fayn),
 And glad she was of his comyng' ageyn). 5819
 whom he slew.
 Lucidas saw this
 and was glad.

¹ MS. *credibill*.

- Generides rode
to meet him, 5820
Generides thought wele that it was he,
And furth with aH came rideng' apace,
'DareH,' he seid, 'right welcom be ye,
- and asked news
of Clarionas. 5823
What tydinges bryng' yow fro Clarionas?'
'To telle yow,' quod he, 'I haue noo space,
Goo now on) and take your' sease as¹ it is ;
- 'All is well,'
said Darell. 5826
ffor aH is weH, ther is noo thyng' Amysse.'
- Generides was
well pleased, 5827
FuH wele apayde thanne was Generides,
And in his mynd reioysid passing wele,
- and rode into
the press,
and met with
Ananyell, 5830
In to the feld he rode among' the prece,
And in his way he mette ananyell,
A manly knyght, the story canne yow telt,
A wise man) and sadde in euery case,
- the brother of
Amelok. 5833
And broder onto ser Amelok he was.
- 5834
Anon) thei ranne togeder in the feld
With sperys sharpe, and made no more delay ;
- He narrowly
escaped his
spear, 5837
he smote Generides vppon) the sheld,
The sheld to brast and fro hym) feH away ;
And as his grace and fortune was that day,
The spere ranne down) by generides side,
And ellys withoute fayle ther had he dyed. 5840
- 5841
And furth with aH² or they departid yer,
Generides thanne smote hym) so ayeyn),
- but struck him
dead in return. 5844
That thorough owt the body ranne the spere,
And with that stroke Ananyell was slayn),
Down) from) his hors he felle vppon the playn) ;
- Sir Amelok
saw this, 5847
And whanne ser Amelok saw aH the case,
ffor his broder an hevyn man) he was,
- and ran at Sir
Darell. 5848
And to ser DareH he ranne with spere & sheld ;
Thanne luydas was sory in hir hert,
To see them) twayn) togeder in y^e feld,

¹ MS. *at*.² MS. *all all*.

- And fast she prayde that thei myght sone departe,
like as nature required for hir part :
Butt bote was non) to pray ne for to trete,
And bothe thei mette anon) with speris grete. 5854
- FuH long) thei fought, to say yow ferthermore, 5855 They fought till
And lenger wold) haue don) as by ther wiH their horses fell
Vnder them) bothe ther stedys feynted sore, under them.
That bothe togeder to the grownde ganne y^{ei} faH, 5858
- Ser DareH in the feld) ther lay he stiH, The crowd was
The prese was suche he myght not gete away, so great,
Butt stiH defendid hym) ther as he lay. 5861 Sir Darell could
not get away.
- Syr amelok was holpyn) att his nede, 5862
- his knyghtes came and fechid hym) anon) ;
Sone after that ser DareH was on) his stede,
With that Generides came rideng on), 5865 At length
They made hym) rome among) them) euerychone, Generydes
And where that euer he rode in eny side, came up,
Ther was non) in the feld wold) hym) abide. 5868 and they made
room for him.
- The dede body vppon) a sheld) they layde, 5869 Ananyell's body
Toward the Citee thei caried it anon) ; was carried to the
Ser amelokkez men) were so dismayde, city,
To the Citee thei fled his pepiH euerychon), 5872
- And yet ther were distroyed many on),
And or thei myght gete the Citee, this is sertayn),
An C knyghtes were take and slayn). 5875
- Whanne thei were in thei shette ye gates fast, 5876
Ananyell) thei beried furth) with aH ; and buried.
- Thanne afterward in aH) the possible hast,
Too knyghtes thei sent echone in generall), 5879 Two knights
This was the message in especiaH), were sent to
ffuH tenderly Generides for to praye, Generydes to
To graunt them) truse for ij monethis day, 5882 ask for two
months' truce,

- His knyghtes for to bery euerychone. 5883
 which was granted. he grauntid them) and was right wele apayde,
 Ser DareH thanne he callid furth anon,
 And Natanest Also, and this he saide ; 5886
 ‘The trowse is now appoyntid and prevyed
 Betwix the Cite and Me ij monethys day,
 And now I wiH goo see Clarionas I say. 5889
- Generydes left Darell in command, Wherefore, DareH, I *prae* yow now,’ quod he, 5890
 ‘That ye wiH do so moche as take the payn),
 To rewle these men), that hir be vnder me,
 In my absence as lord and cheff^t capteyn), 5893
 Or ought it be long^t I wiH be here ayayn),
 And if ther fortune eny hasty nede,
 Thanne wiH I come as fast as I may spede. 5896
- and ordered Sygrem to come with him with 100 knights to go to Clarionas. Off^t knyghtes And squyers that be here, 5897
 Of them) will I haue A C and no moo ;
 ffuH secretly,’ he seid, ‘in aH maner,
 [leaf 32] I wold^t they were warnyd with me to goo ; 5900
 And say to Sygrem that he come also
 In eny wise, that he may be my gide,
 ffuH wele he knowith the wayes on) euery side.’ 5903
- Meantime, Mirabell came home and told the whole story. In this meane tyme thanne was come home ayeyn) 5907
 MirabeH on) to fayre Clarionas ;
 She saide, ‘Madame, Generides for certayn)
 hym recomaundid onto your’ good grace
 In humble wise, and as for lucidas,
 hir for to wedde came neuer in his thought ;
 The messenger is slayn) that the tidynges brought.
- And so furth on) she told aH the hole processe, 5911
 hough that she founde Generides *sertayn*),
 AH discomfortid in right grete hevynes ;

- Thanne saide Clarionas to hir ayeyn), 5914
 ‘ Moche thank to yow for *your* labour’ a[nd] payn.’
 And thus I leve them) bothe in hartys ease,
 And ferthermore I wiH speke of Generides. 5917
- Now toward perse ridith Generides, 5918
 Takynge his viage in the evyn) tide, As Generydes
was riding
towards Persia
 And of his¹ Iurnay wold he neuer sese,
 TiH he came ther wher he shuld abide ; 5921
 With hym) ther went Sygrem to be his gide,
 Costyng) the contre many dyuers way,
 And so came he in to perse the redy waye. 5924
- The contre was distroyed in that tide, 5925
 And as he rode vppon) the way,
 A lady he sawe ridenge) be a forest side, he saw a lady
by a forest side,
 Grete hast she had on) hir Iurnay, 5928
 To hir he rode withoute more delay, and rode after
her.
 Whanne she hym) saw come toward hir so fast,
 Away fro hem) she fledde in aH the hast. 5931 She fled,
- With hir ther were xvij. in company, 5932
 Generides rode after hir so fast,
 And on) his way so fast he ganne hym) hye,
 he ouer toke the lady atte last ; 5935 but he overtook
her,
and told her no
one should do
her harm.
 ‘ Madame,’ he seid, ‘ be ye noo thyng) agast,
 Why ride ye thus and in so hasty wise ?
 Ther shaft no mañ do yow harme o warantise.’ 5938
- ‘ In trowth I am a wedow, *ser,*’ quod she, 5939
 ‘ The Sowdon) is myn) vnclē in certayn) ;
 kyng) Gwynan wold that I weddid shuld be
 To his Cosyn), and me he wold) constreyne 5942
 So for to do ; this is the mater) playn) :
 And thus fro hym) in aH the hast I went,
 Because I wold not folow his entent. 5945 ‘ I am a widow,
said she, ‘ and
the Sultan is my
uncle.
King Gwynan
wishes to marry
me to his cousin,
but I will not,
and therefore am
fleeing to
Mountoner.’

¹ MS. *hus*.

- Too Mountoner now I wiþ take my way, 5946
 And wiþ myn vnkiþ ther I wiþ abide,
 ffor here I leve in drede and in affray.'
- 'Madam,' quoth he, 'I prae god be your' gide, 5949
 After kyng' Gwynan I purpose me to ryde,
 ffayne I wold knowe the way and not to mys.'
 'I shaþf yow tell,' quod she, 'where that he is. 5952
- 'He is here in a castle a mile or two off, 5953
 In a casteþ here be a forest side,
 ffrom hens it passith not a myle or twayne,
 hold on your' way streight as ye ride,
 And ther ye shaþf hym fynde, this is certayn, 5956
 A bideng' ther Otran the kyng' of spayne,
 Whiche comyþ the kyng' to helpe I vnderstonde,
 To warre vppon my vncle and his lande.' 5959
- 'Now, Madame,' thanne seid Generides, 5960
 'What pepyþ hath he ther? I prae yow say.'
 'Trewly,' quod she, 'as ferre as I canne gesse,
 with 200 men, he passith not CC men this day, 5963
 And Chosen men they be in good arraye,
 he is noo thyng' a drede in certente,
 and every day he goes hunting.' ffor euery day on huntyng' rideth he.' 5966
- 'Madame,' quod he, 'thanne I beseche yow this, 5967
 That it may plese yow do so meche for me,
 Whanne ye be ther as your' vncle is,
 That I to hym may recomaundid be, 5970
 A knyght of Surre gladly wold hym see,
 Butt now I may not come, the cause is soo,
 ffor I wiþ seche the kyng' where euer he goo.' 5973
- The lady went on to Mountoner, Too Mountoner the lady toke the waye, 5974
 And to the forest Generides is gon),
 And whanne it was ferre past on the day,

- In a buschement he layde his men) eche on), 5977 and Generydes
 And thanne he callid Sygrem furth anon) ; laid his men
 in ambush,
 'Sygrem,' quod he, 'afore aH other thyngt,
 I prae yow wete where lith Gwynan the kyngt. 5980 and sent Sygrem
 to find where
 Gwynan was.
- Off his demeanyngt I woldt wete also, 5981
 And with my felisshepe I wiH abide.'
 'Ser,' quod Segyrem, 'anon) it shalbe doo ;
 Att your' commaundment now I wiH ride, 5984
 And bryngt yow worde her be the forest side.'
 Now goth Segrym), withoute more taryengt,
 To monperson), and ther he founde the kyngt. 5987 He found him at
 Monperson,
- The town) was fast by the castell wher he lay, 5988
 Thorought owt the town) he went among ye prese,
 And whanne that he had Aspyed aH yer array,
 Agayn) he came vnto Generides ; 5991 and came and
 told Generydes
 [leaf 32, back]
 they were all
 at dinner,
 'I shaH yow telle,' quod he, 'that is noo leese,
 I left them) ther att dyner euerychon),
 And to this forest he wiH come anon). 5994
- Armyd thei be eche on) atte poynte device, 5995
 here wiH thei hunte I say yow verily ;
 Butt this I counceHt yow be myn) avise,
 Whanne yow them) se late them) go by and by, 5998
 TiH thei be passid thanne may ye them) askry.
 And this suerly if ye do after me,
 Betwix them) and the Castell shaH ye be. 6001
- And ferthermore,' as my Auctor doth write, 6002
 'Gwynan if ye wiH [know] whereuer he be,
 his owne Array is aH togeder white,
 hors and harnes and so is non) but he, 6005
 his spere also is white, that ye shaH see,
 Now haue I sayde, do as ye semes best,
 here wiH he come anon) in to this forest.' 6008

Gwynan dressed
 all in white.

- The king rode out, Anon vpon [on] huntyng^t rode the kyng^t, 6009
 Generides was ware therof anon,
- and Generydes kept his men quiet till they were all past, No noyse was made nor ther was noo steryng^t, 6012
 To tyme the kyng^t and aH his men^d were goon^d;
 And whanne that thei were passid euerychon,
- when he called to them to turn. Generides anon hym^d ganne Askerye, 6015
 And bad them^d 'turne, for tyme it is trewly.'
- The king turned his horse, With that the kyng^t his hors he turnyd then, 6016
 And to his knyghtes aH thanne he saye,
 'Serys, now is tyme to shewe that we be men,
 ffor yender folk will lette vs of our' way.' 6019
 Anone thei mette them^d withoute more delay,
- and in the first encounter lost 20 of his knights, And atte first encounteryng^t certayn, 6022
 kyng^t Gwynan had xx. of his knyghtes slayn^d :
- and 15 were taken. And xv more were taken^d furth^r with aH, 6023
 Where with the kyng^t was greuyd passyng^t sore,
 And sware his othe what euer shuld hym^d falle, 6026
 he wold^t suerly avenge hym^d therfore,
- In revenge the king slew Lucas, And in that hete, to say yow ferthermore, 6029
 Anon he ranne to lucas with a spere,
 And bare hym^d thorough^r and slewe hym^d ther.
- and Generydes was full sad thereat, remembering all his love and kindness. Whanne he was dede ther was grete hevynes, 6030
 And with Generides was fuH hevy chere,
 Remembryng^t the grete love and kyndnes,
 Whiche he had shewid to hym^d in aH maner ; 6033
 And specially whanne he was prisoner,
 And by his meane the Sowdon^d gave hym^d grace,
 Whanne he so long^t lay in prisone for Clarionas. 6036
- He then ran at Gwynan, And for by cause kyng^t Gwynan had hym^d slayn^d, 6037
 To go vn quyte he thought noo wurchippe in,
 And with his spere ranne toward hym^d ageyn,

- Thanne was ther on of the kynggez kynne, 6040 but one of his kin came between,
 Betwene them bothe his wurchippe for to wyne,
 And with a spere in myddes of the prese,
 ffurth with aH he ranne vnto Generides. 6043
- And bothe thei mette to geder in the feld, 6044
 And for to telh yow aH the mater playn,
 Generides stroke hym thorough the sheld and was pierced by the spear.
 Owt atte bak, and slew hym for certeyn; 6047
 And whanne ther felawes were take And slayn,
 A bak thei drewe, and sperkelyd her and yer,
 Thanne was the kyng' full wrothe in his maner, 6050 At this the king's men drew back, and scattered themselves.
- And blew his horn to geder them to bryng', 6051
 ffuH sory he was to se them goo so wide ;
 Thanne seid Sampson these wordes to y^e kyng',
 Off CornyssH was he born, and of that side ; 6054
 'It is noo tyme here for vs to Abide,
 Drawe to your' CasteHward, and that anon,
 ffor here we do butt lese oure men euerychon.' 6057
- Too monpersone the kyng' with drew hym yan, 6058 The king withdrew to Monperson, pursued by Generydes.
 Generides hym folowid in the chase ;
 'Syr,' quod Sygrem, 'thus shaH yow lese your men,
 And very them, withynne a short space : 6061
 Butt this me think better in this case ;
 Gete yow be fore, this wold I yow avise,
 Betwix hym and the town in eny wise.' 6064 'Get between him and the town,' said Sygrem.
- Generides dede after Sygrem's counceH, 6065
 And to blanchard his stede he saide,
 'Blanchard,' quod he, 'thow dost me neuer fayle,
 Nor vpon the I was neuer ovtrayde.' 6068
 With these wordes thoughtfuH in A brayde
 A nother way he rode, and in a while
 he was be fore the kyng' welle half a myle. 6071 and outstripped Gwynan by half a mile.

- He crossed
his path,
- And whanne the kyng^r perseivid that it was he, 6072
Adrede he was, And litiH wold^r he say ;
And verily he thought not hymⁿ for to Asse,
Nor hymⁿ to mete he thought no more y^t day: 6075
Generides thanne crossid hymⁿ the way ;
'This way,' quod he, 'thū shalt noo ferther pas,
Or thū do armys for fayre Clarionas.' 6078
- and told him
he should go
no further,
except he did
battle for
Clarionas,
- The kyng^r sawe weH he-mygh^t nonⁿ oyer way, 6079
Nor to the townⁿ he mygh^t not ride in pece ;
Anonⁿ he dressid hymⁿ in his arraye,
And thanne he turnyd vnto Generides : 6082
Ther mette thei bothe withoute the prese,
And shortly the processe for to make,
Atte first encoun^{ter}ying^r bothe ther sperys brake. 6085
- [leaf 33]
- At the first
encounter both
their spears
broke,
- and they went
to work with
their swords.
The sparks flew
from them,
- With yer swerdes to geder thei went, 6086
And layde euerychone onⁿ other strokes grete,
The fyre sparkelid and fro the harneys glynt ;
Betwix themⁿ twayne it was noo tyme to trete, 6089
Aⁿ maner love and frenshippe was forgete,
The kyng^r in his conseite he was stronge,
he thought nomanⁿ shuld fight with hymⁿ so long^t. 6092
- and Generydes'
shield was
broken.
- Hee strake Generides vppon the sheld^r, 6093
It aH to brast in peces to and fro,
The handdeH it feH in to the feld^r,
A grace of god that he askapyd soo, 6096
That with that stroke his arme was not a twoo !
'Go now,' said
the king,
- Thanne seid the kyng^r, 'if thū wilt leve in rest,
Goo now thy way and hold it for the best.' 6099
- Generydes
was wroth,
- Generides wrothe was in his maner, 6100
That he shuld byd hymⁿ voyde owt of y^e place,
Remembryng^r whiche was to hymⁿ soo dere,

- That fayre lady, that mayde Clariõnas, 6103
 he thought to ease his hert as in this case,
 And ther with aH, withoute more taryeng,
 Vppon the helme he smote Gwynan the kyngt, 6106
 and struck him
 on the helmet,
- And the helme to brast that was good and strong,
 A quarter of it felt vppon the grene, cutting off a
 quarter of it,
 The swerde ranne down and clave y^e sheld along, and cleaving
 his shield
 And ij fyngers he smete¹ of quyte and clene, 6110 and two of his
 fingers.
- Thanne was he bare his visage myght be sene,
 AH discomfeyte and aH forbled Also,
 That in noo wise he wist not what to do. 6113
- Thanne spake the kyngt, and seid in y^{is} maner, 6114 'Who are you?'
 'what maner a man, be ye? I prae yow say ; said the king,
 ffor I wiH fight with yow noo lenger here,
 My swerd and aH I yeld it vppe this daye ; 6117 'I will fight
 no more.
 Here is my
 sword.'
- What is your' name?' quod he, 'I prae you say'
 'Trewly my name,' quod he, 'I wiH not layn,
 Generides men) calle me for certayn).' 6120 'My name is
 Generydes.'
- The kyngt toke hym) his swerd, and seid ayeyn, 6121 Gwynan gave up
 his sword,
 and said,
 'Though I have ben) Ayenst yow in this case,
 yet am I not blame worthy in certayn),
 By yow only my fader slayn) was, 6124 'I am not
 to blame,
 you slew my
 father.
- Butt now it is for gevyn) certayn) y^t trespas,
 And this I wold desire of yow also,
 In to my land that I may savely goo. 6127 Let me go to my
 land, and I will
- AH this I wiH ensure yow be myn) othe, 6128 never trouble the
 Sultan more.'
- ShaH I neuer the Sowdon) trobiH more,
 hym nor his land ; and for his ayris bothe,
 I wiH be sworne like as I seid before, 6131
- ffor I saw neuer that day sithe I was bore²,
 Atte my full age and was att mannys myght,
 That euer I medled with soo good a knyght.'³ 6134

¹ MS. *smete*.² MS. *born*.³ MS. *kyng*.

- Generydes in
jest asked,
'What say you
now about
Clarionas?' Generides in Iapyng^r said agayn), 6135
'You have bought
her full dear,'
said the king;
'she is yours.' 'What sey ye now as for Clarionas?'
'Syr,' quod the kyng^r, 'with grete trobit^h,
ffu^h dere ye haue hir boug^ht, this is y^e case; 6138
Now is she yourez by fortune and by grace,
And I am we^h content that it be soo,
And as for my part now ther *with* I haue doo.' 6141
- Peace was
proclaimed,

and they rode
together to
Monpersone. After a^h this whanne pece was made and A^h, 6142
The kyng therof sent tydinges to his ost,
Thanne were thei glad his men in esspecia^h,
Among them^h A^h whiche of them^h myg^ht be most,
The pece was cryed aboug^ht in euery cost,
The kyng^r and he no longer ther abode,
To monpersone to geder thanne they rode. 6148
- Theder were come the kynges men^h before; 6149
As sone as he hym^h see he seide anon),
'Now *serys*,' quod he, 'withoute eny more
I wold^t that ye went homeward^t euerychon): 6152
The pece is made and a^h the werre is gon).
Now hye yow fast, I canne noo ferder say,
And I sha^h come as sone as euer I may.' 6155
- The Sultan had
dremed that
Gwynan and
Generydes fought,

and that Gwynan
was thrown into
a river. Now speke we of the Sowdon^h in this case, 6156
Whiche hard^t no maner thing^r of A^h y^{ls} pece,
And in this mater dremyd sore he was;
hym thought kyng^r Gwynan and Generides 6159
had fought hand to hand, yet neuer the lesse
Right this hym^h thought it happid atte last,
That in A Ryuer Generides hym^h cast. 6162
- The kyng^r hym^h thought for mercy yanne he prayde,
Generides thanne toke hym^h vppe to grace;
Whanne this was do, this dreme Aforeseid

- he told them) AH in to fayre Clarionas ; 6166 He tells it to
 Thanne was the lady present in the place, Clarionas,
 whiche with Generides spake on) the way, and then the
 She had forgete hir erande for to say. 6169 lady who had
 spoken with
 Generides
- Fuþ vmbely of pardon) she hym) prayde, 6170 remembered the
 'To yow I haue offendid, ser,' quod she, message of the
 'ffor Amessage the whiche I shuld haue seide ; strange knight.
- Ther is a knyght come in to this contre, 6173
 To yow he recomaundid hym) be me, [leaf 33, back]
- his name he wold not telle me, ne what he hight,
 Of Surre he¹ was born) the gentiþ knyght. 6176
- Right wele armed this knyght is also, 6177
 And gladly wold haue sene yow or he went,
 Butt nedis he must owt of this contre goo.'
- Thanne was Clarionas not weþ contente, 6180 Clarionas guessed
 ffor wele she vnderstode in hir entent, who it was.
- And euer in one she thought stiþ opece,
 That it shuld be hir love Generides. 6183
- And for by cause she had hym) in mystrost, 6184
 Allway she demyd the² woldþ hir quyte,
 hym) to Absente awhile while that hym) list,
 And so to putte his comyng' in respite ; 6187
- Thanne ferthermore, as my auctour doth weþe,
 The kyng' and Generides for ther disporte and play,
 Att Mounperson) to geder bothe thei lay, 6190 Gwynan and
 Generides stay at
 Mounperson
 two days or more,
- Att ther pleasure ij dayes or a litiþ more, 6191
 And thanne to Mountoner he toke the way ;
 Sygrem was made the messenger before,
 Onward to goo as fast as euer he may 6194 and then go to
 Mountoner,
 sending Sygrem
 before to say that
 the war was
 over.
- To the Sowdon, commaundyng' them) to say :
 "The warre is att anende, and aþ is pece
 Betwix kyng' Gwynan and Generides, 6197

¹ MS. of he, but of is struck out.² So MS. for that he?

- Neuer to vex the Sowdon and his land, 6198
 With grete suerte, in euery maner thyngt.¹
- Syngrem delivers
 his message, Now hath Syngrem this message take in hand,
 To the Sowdon the tidyngges doth he bryngt; 6201
 Thanne was he glad, as eny man levingt,
 hym self he goth onto Clarionas,
 and the Sultan
 goes and tells
 Clarionas, And told hir all these tidyngges hough it was; 6204
- And hough the kyngt and he shuld mete Also, 6205
 In the forest appoyntid betwix them twaynt):
 ‘Butt trow ye, *ser*¹, that it be now soo?’
 ‘yae, doughit ye not,’ quod he, ‘it is certaynt); 6208
 Syngrem is come which is bothe trew and playnt),
 ffor thense he come, he knowith all in fere,
 he shaft tell yow the trougth of this mater.’ 6211
- Now goth Syngrem as fast as euer he may 6212
 To hir chaunber, and told hir this processe;
 ‘The warre is done,’ quod she, ‘this here I say;’
 ‘Madame,’ he seid, ‘for certaynt) all is pece; 6215
 ‘Butt now,’ quod she, ‘where is Generides?’
 ‘ffor sothe,’ he seide, ‘I left hym with y^e kyngt,
 She asks
 ‘Where is
 Generydes?’
 ‘At Mounperson,’
 said Syngrem, To Mounperson he is withoute feynengt.’ 6218
- ‘And is he not
 coming here?’ ‘Butt wil he not come heder now?’ quod she; 6219
 ‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘of that I canne not say,
 ffor atte this tyme I trow it wil not be;
 his purpose is to ryde another waye, 6222
 ffourth in to ynd as fast as euer he may,
 ffor to his ost he must take hede amongt,
 his people after hym think full longt.’ 6225
- From hir he went withoute wordes moo, 6226
 To the Sowdon furth he goth his way;
 ‘My lord,’ quod he, ‘it is good tyme to goo,

¹ MS. *sero*.

- ffor ye wiþ mete wiþ hym I dare weþ say.' 6229
 Now goth the Sowdon furth in good array,
 With lordes and wiþ knyghtes many on,
 Toward the forest rode thei euerychone. 6232
 In this meane while abode Clarionas 6233
 In hir chaunber, noo thyng^t in hartes ease,
 Gretly musyng^t and in fuþ hevy case,
 Whanne she be thought hir on Generides ; 6236
 And Alway she remembryd stiþ opece,
 hough she had mystrostid hym before,
 Supposyng^t well he¹ wold se hir nomore. 6239
- To Mirabeþ thanne told she aþ hir hart, 6240
 In euery thing^t as it felle in hir mynde ;
 'Madame,' quod she, 'for eny wo or smerte
 That euer he had, I wist hym neuer on kynde, 6243
 So vncurtese ye shaþ hym neuer fynde ;
 And ferthermore I warantt yow,' quod she,
 'Or it be long^t here wiþ yow wiþ he be.' 6246
- To the forest the Sowdon doth ride, 6247
 And first of aþ he mette Generides,
 Thanne came the kyng^t along^t by y^e forestes side,
 And whanne that thei were mett in aþ y^e prese, 6250
 And made betwix them bothe a fyniaþ pece,
 And wiþ a suraunce sworn in broderhode,
 Togeder bothe in grete frendshippe thei rode. 6253
- Thanne they departid bothe the kyng^t and he, 6254
 In aþ maters to ben of on assentt ;
 The kyng^t gothe homeward in to his contre,
 The Sowdon streight to Mountoner he went ; 6257
 Generides ther was wiþ hym present,
 And prayeth hym of licence for to goo,
 The Sowdon mervelid why he shuld do so. 6260

The Sultan and his lords ride forth to the forest to meet him.

Meanwhile Clarionas was ill at ease in her chamber.

Mirabell consoles her,

saying, that Generydes will soon be here.

The Sultan met Generydes and the King in the forest,

and peace was made.

The King goes home,

and Generydes asks leave to depart.

- 'Will you not come and see Clarionas?' 6261
 'Noo trewly, *ser*,' he seid, 'that may not be;
 I must praye yow of pardon) in this case,
 ffor in to ynd now must I goo,' *quod* hee : 6264
 Another tyme I purpose hir to see ;
 [leaf 34] And in certayn), herof ye may be sure,
 I love hir best of eny creature.' 6267
- Fro the Sowdon) Generides is gon), 6268
 And to his men) he seid this for certayn);
 He then sends his men back to Mounperson,
 'To Mounperson) I wiſh that ye goo euerychon),
 And ther to Abide in to the tyme I come Ayeyn); 6271
 Sygrem and I, this is the mater playn),
 and he and Sygrem go secretly to Montoner,
 To Mowntoner) we wiſh goo sekyrly,
 In secrete wise noman) but he and I.' 6274
- Now is Sygrem gon) with Generides, 6275
 To Mountoner) he take the way full right,
 Savyng) thei twoo ther was non) other preese,
 and at night he stands in the garden, near her chamber,
 Theder thei came be thanne² it was nyght; 6278
 Generides whanne it was sterre light,
 hym) self anon) gothe vnto Clarionas,
 Thorough) owt the gardeyn) wher hir chaunber was. 6281
- Whanne he came ther he hard a womannes voyce, 6282
 and hears a woman's voice complaining.
 In pytues wise complayneng) more and more,
 Save only detſh ther was non) other choyse,
 She had so meche hevynes in store, 6285
 vnkyndnes had greuyd hir so sore,
 That Generides was in the countre her),
 Butt see hir wold he not in noo maner). 6288
- And whanne Generides had hard hir speke, 6289
 He knew it was Clarionas,
 Thanne wist he wele it was fayre Clarionas,
 ffor very payn) hym) thought his hert wold breke,

¹ MS. *Uyll*.² MS. *be tranne*.

- And in hym self discomfeyte sore he was, 6292
 Speke myght he not as for a certeyn space,
 Butt down he fel and ther with he cryed ; and for very pain
 Myrabe he hym hard and some hym had Aspyde. 6295 he fell down with
 a cry.
- ‘Myrabe he,’ she seid, ‘what may this be? 6296 Mirabell heard
 Whanne I hym hard mervell it was.’ him, and said,
- ‘In hevvy plight my lady is,’ quod she.
 ‘Whom speke ye to?’ thanne seid Clarionas : 6299
 ‘Madame,’ quod she, ‘in sothe this is the case,
 Now shaft ye fynde me trew in my *seruice*,
 here atte wyndow is generides.’ 6302
 ‘Here is
 Generydes at the
 window.’
- Thanne with thoo wordes arose Clarionas, 6303 At these words
 And to the wyndow came she all dismayde ; the window,
 Generides full redely ther he was,
 Ther was kyssyng butt noo wordes were seid ; 6306 and then there
 Eche of oyer wer full well apayd : was kissing,
 Anone thei putt all hevynes away, but not a word
 And thanne Clarionas beganne to saye : 6309 said.
 Then Clarionas
 began,
- ‘Generides, why are ye so vnkynd, 6310 ‘Generydes, why
 In this contre so long? As ye haue be ? are you so
 Me thought I was full liti in *your* mynde, unkind ?’
 And all be cause ye wold not come to me.’ 6313
 Thanne seid Generides, ‘Madame,’ quod he,
 ‘I yow beseche of pardon in this case,
 In very tought a liti thynge ther was. 6316
 ‘Madam,
- Ye wend that I had be weddid in certayn 6317 you thought
 To lucidas, whiche grevid me full soore ; I was married to
 To yow alway I haue be trew and playn, Lucidas.
 Now haue I lete yow wete why and wherfore, 6320 I have always
 been true to you,
 And yet I am mystrostid euermore, and yet you
 In easyng of myn hert I haue don this, mistrust me.
 ffor now is all for geven that is amys. 6323 But all is forgiven.

¹ This and the following line should be transposed.

- You must give me
leave to go back
to India. Off yow I must haue licence for to go 6324
ffurth in to ynd, and therof haue I nede ;
My felisshepe they wote not who to do,
The treson of *ser* Amelok I drede : 6327
In aH the hast homeward I wiH me spede,
ffor euer the sonner that I goo certeyn),
Meche the sonner thanne I wiH come ayeyn).¹ 6330
- Quoth she, Quod she ayeyn, 'my reson) doth me bynde, 6331
And as ferre furth as I canne vnderstonde,
I canne wele think your' goyng' in to ynd
Shalbe wurchippe and profight' to your' land, 6334
Your' pepiH glad to wete yow so nygh' hande :
wherfore,' quod she, 'if I me weH avise,
I may nott be ayeinst it in noo wise.' 6337
- That night, in all
innocence, they
were together
in great pleasure. That nygh't they were to geder as I rede, 6338
Nor sownyng' to [no] villany ne shame,
In grete pleasure and in aH goodlyhede ;
She made hym) chere and he dede hir y^e same, 6341
In feithfull wise withoute spotte or blame,
Anone with aH withoute spotte or eviH fame bothe ;¹
Whanne it was day, though' thei were neuer so loth.
- Generydes and
Sygrem ride to
Monperson to his
men, To Mounperson) rideth Generides, 6345
In company with hym) Sygrem is gon),
his men) were ther abideng' stiH opece,
like as he had commaundid hym) before icheon), 6348
- and so away to
India. Thei made no taryeng' but furth anon),
With hors and harnes in ther best Array,
Streight in to ynde thei toke the [redy] way. 6351
- The people were
glad of his return. Whanne he was come ther as the pepiH lay, 6352
Thanne were thei Ioyfull euery creature ;
Ser amelok fuH bold' he was that daye,

¹ This line is corrupted by the copyist from the preceding.

- ffor vnder a trete at AH aventure 6355
 Of *ser* DareH he thought he had be sure :
 Butt of his werkyng' *ser* DareH knew it well,
 And so he brake his purpose euery dele. 6358
- Generides rode streight into the feld 6359
 With his knyghtes, for noo thyng wold he lette,
 his stede was blak, his spere and eke his sheld,
 Anone with aH with Sampson) ther he mett ; 6362
 Generides fuH fresshely on) hym) he sett,
 Owt Atte bak he bare hym) quyte and clene,
 Sampson felle down) and dyed vppon) the grenc. 6365
Generydes rode straight into the [leaf 34, back] field,
 and runs Sampson through.
- Thanne came *ser* Amelok into the prese, 6366
 And thought he wold a be avengyd for his sake,
 Vppon) the hede he smote Generides,
 A quarter of his helme ther with he brake : 6369
 Generides ther with to hym) he spak,
 'Thu wend,' *quod* he, 'that I had lakkid sight,
 ffor now I may se better thanne I myght.' 6372
Up came Sir Amelok to avenge him,
 and struck Generydes on the head,
 cutting off a quarter of his helmet.
- And ther with aH he smote *ser* Amelok 6373
 Vppon) the hede, and brast [his] helme in twayn) ;
 Downe by the cheke his ere away he strake,
 AH quyte and clene it felle vppon) the playn) ; 6376
 And with that stroke, I say yow the certayn),
 his Arme was smette fro the body clene,
 So from) his hors he felle vppon) the grenc. 6379
In return Generydes cleaves his helmet,
 and cuts off his ear and arm,
 so that he fell.
- Thanne was *ser* Amelok fuH woo begon), 6380
 AH ouer come for angwissH and payn) ;
 his men) were ther and reskewyd hym) Anon),
 vppon) his sheld thei brought) hym) home ayeyn), 6383
 AH for wondid and sore in euery vayne :
 Thanne seid he this, complayneng' passing' sore,
 'I haue deseruyd this though it.were more.' 6386
His men rescued him, and took him home.

- Sir Darell knew
not of Generides, 6387
Syr Darell wist not of Generides,
B[utt] Alway demyd that¹ it shuld be he ;
To Sygrem thanne he came in to the prese,
- and asked Sygrem
who the knight
was on the black
horse. 6390
'Sygrem,' seid he, 'teff me the very *sertente*,
What knyght is that that I may yender see ?
his stede is blak ; good Sygrem, teff me this,
I canne weff think Generides it is.' 6393
- 'It is Generides,'
quoth Sygrem. 6394
'Syr,' *quod* Sygrem, 'it is as ye haue rede,
Generides it is withoute fayle ;
he come butt late and right weff hath he spedd,
Wherby his honour gretly doth prevayle, 6397
ffor he hath wonne kyng^t Gwynan in bateff ;
The corde is made, the mortuall werre is sese,
Betwix hym and the Sowdon AH is pece.' 6400
- Sir Amelok,
on his bed,
repented of the
time past, 6401
Now lith *ser* Amelok vppon his bed ;
Of tyme past full sore he doth repente,
Wery and feynt, his wondys AH for bled,
A basshed passyng^t sore in his entent, 6404
- and sent for
Serenydes, 6407
And for Serenydes anon he sent,
Whiche in hir mende full gretly was dismayde ;
Whanne she was come right thus to hir he seid : 6407
- 'Madame,' *quod* he, 'ye vnderstonde full weff, 6408
Sithe I beganne to love yow first of AH,
I haue my hert, my *seruice*, euey dele,
To yow allonly in especiaff ;² 6411
- and told her they
had both done
wrong. 6414
And now reasone constreyneth me to call
Vnto my mend and to my remembraunce this,
Bothe ye and I haue done ferre Amys. 6414
- 'I made you
leave my lord
Auferius 6415
Ye were the wyff of auferius the kyng^t,
Whiche was my very lord and souereyn),
And trayturly first Atte begynneng^t

¹ MS. *that that*.² MS. *especially*.

- I made yow to forsake hym in *sertayn*), 6418
 And thanne vnder a false compassion trayn),
 The lande anon and I were atte accorde,
 To be rebelt ayenst our' *soueryn* lord. 6421
 and the land to rebel.
- I take noo hede of aH this werk before, 6422
 Wherfore I am in bytter paynes strongt ;
 And though that I shuld suffer¹ meche more,
 In very trowth I thinke it were noo wrongt, 6425
 As for my dayes thei witt not now be longt,
 And fayne I woldt my consciens were clere,
 Wherfore anon do calle a messenger, 6428
- And to *ser* DareH chargid hym to goo, 6429
 Besechyng hym that he witt speke *wit*h me ;
 After his counceH gladly wold I doo,
 To pray the kyngt of grace and it wold be, 6432
 On me to shew his mercy and pitee.'
 A CarefuH woman was Serenydes,
 And euer wept that no man cowde hir sese. 6435
 Send now to Sir Darell
 Serenydes was sad, and wept.
- To lucydas she seid in this maner, 6436
 'Doughter,' *quod* she, 'this is now myn entent ;
 Your' fader wold, as towchyngt this mater,
 That to *ser* DareH a messenger were sent ; 6439
 It were weH done that Sygrem theder went,
 And to your' fader *prae* hym for to come,
 In aH the hast, loo this is aH and som.' 6442
 send Sygrem to Darell,
 and pray him to come to your father.'
- Now on this message Sygrem furth [is] went, 6443
 To² *ser* DareH and this to hym he seid ;
 'The mayde lucidas now heder me sent,
 And hir *commaundement* I haue obeyde ; 6446
 ffor hir fader now good hath so purveyde,
 A febyH man he is, I yow ensure,
 And in this liff he may not longt endure. 6449
 Sygrem goes on his message to Sir Darell,

¹ MS. *suster*.² MS. *And to*.

- This is the effecte of my massage, 6450
 That ye wiſſ doo so mekiſſ as take y^e payn,
 To come so ferre hir fader for to se,
 The whiche gretly shuld counfort hym certayn; 6453
 [leaf 35] To speke with yow truly he wold be fayn,
 That wote I wele, and she wold *purvey* so,
 That ye shaſſ savely come and savely goo.' 6456
- Off these tidynges was he weſſ contente, 6457
 And part also as for his hartes ease;
 Yet he remembryd hym or *euer* he went,
 who asks leave of he wold haue licence of Generides, 6460
Generydes,
 ffor in noo wise he wold not hym displease;
 And her vppon he made noo lenger space,
 To hym he goth and told hym all the case 6463
- Off *ser* Amelok and of his repentaunce: 6464
 Generides answerd, and this he seid;
 'If I may fynde his wordes of substaunce,
 In very trougth I wiſſ be weſſ apayde.' 6467
 'ffor my comyng' his doughter hath so *purveyde*,
 Ser,' *quod* Dareſſ, 'and that in suche wise
 I shaſſ goo save and come o warantise. 6470
- And to be playn to yow in euery wise, 6471
 This is the cause that he hath sent for me;
 I owe his doughter trewly my *seruice*,
 telling him of his So ye were weſſ content ther with,' *quod* he; 6474
love for Lucidas.
 'Ellys wiſſ I not goo in very certente.'¹
 Off his wordis Generides was full fayn,
 And smyling' softely answerd thus ageyn): 6477
- 'Dareſſ,' *quod* he, 'I know this very sure, 6478
 She is not long' owt of your' remembraunce,
 Ye love hir best of eny creature;

¹ MS. *certentente*.

- Wherin, god woote, I take noo displesaunce, 6481
 ffor AH that may be for *your* foryeraunce,
 I am contente to helpe yow to the same ;
 Wherefore,' *quod* he, 'goth on in goddis name.' 6484
 'Go on, in God's name,' said Generydes.
- To the CasteH *ser* DareH now is gon), 6485
 Whanne he was come first atte begynneng',
 his doughter lucidas mette hym) Anon),
 And thankfully she gave hym) his welecomyng', 6488
 Thanne furth with aH withoute eny more taryeng',
 She brought hym) to hir fader ther he lay,
 Seke and febyH, full nye his endyng' day. 6491
 and brought him to her father.
- Syr amelok was glad of his comyng'; 6492
 'Ser DareH, I *prae* yow, bere me witnesse,
 This I desire above aH other thyng',
 ffor to haue my pardon) of Generides : 6495
 I haue affendid sore, yet neuer the lesse
 Of AH thynges that is past what euer it be,
 Besechyng' hym) now of mercy and pite ; 6498
 Amelok begged him to pray Generydes to make his peace with Auferius.
- And of his fader auferius the kyng', 6499
 If it wold be, fayne I wold haue his grace ;
 ffor more vntrew ther was neuer non) levyng',
 Thanne I haue ben) to hym) as in this case : 6502
 My life woH now endure butt short space,
 Besechyng' yow to *prae* Generides,
 That he wold with his fader to make my peece. 6505
- And for to do your' dever in this case, 6506
 Remembryng' this mater euery dele,
 here is,' *quod* he, 'my doughter lucidas,
 The whiche, if I may vnderstonde and fele, 6509
 That ye with hert and thought y^t ye love hir wele,
 She shaft be youres, lo this shalbe your' wage,
 And aH my land with hir in mariage. 6512
 'Here is my daughter Lucidas, whom you love :
 I will give her to you, and all my land.

- Pray also that
Serenydes may be
forgiven.
- And also, DareH, as for Serenydes, 6513
This I beseche yow hartely,' quod he,
'That ye speke with hir that she may haue hir pece,
And so to leve in rest and it wilbe : 6516
And pray Generides to speke with me,
So wold god that he were here present,
loo her is all the effecte of myn entente.' 6519
- To lucidas he seid in this maner ; 6520
'Doughter,' quod he, ' here is a nobill knyght,
his aunccetours were men of grete powre ;
And of princes he is descendid full right, 6523
Ye shall be his, this I haue hym be hight,
In marriage, this is the mater playn,
And of my land I say yow for certeyn). 6526
- And be ye so agreyd ther to, 6527
And as ye think now tell me your' avise.'
- Lucidas agrees. 'Syr,' quod she, ' as it plesse yow to do,
I am contente ther with in euery wise, 6530
like as ye will appoynte it and devise ;
In euery thing to folow your' entent,
I am hooly atte your' commaundment.' 6533
- Darell goes back
to Generydes, Thanne ser DareH departid home ayeyn), 6534
Vnto Generides the redy way,
And ther he told hym all to geder playn
Of ser Amelok, and in what plight he lay ; 6537
' And this,' quod he, ' he prayde me to say,
In vmbill wise, desireng tenderly
That ye wold come and see hym or he dye. 6540
- and at length
prevails upon him
to visit
Sir Amelok.
He was in great
distress,
Wyth long prayour he brought hym atte last 6541
Vnto ser Amelok ther as he lay,
In grete distresse musyng of tymes past,

- And to Generides this ganne he say, 6544 [leaf 35, back]
 like as a man had ben half in affray ;
 'Mercy,' quod he, 'mercy, gentiH Generides,
 Graunt me that I with yow may haue my pece, 6547
 and cried
 'Mercy, mercy,
 gentle Generydes,
 let me have peace
 with you
- And with your' fader auferius the kyng', 6548 and with Auferius,
 ffor hym I haue offendid specially,
 To non so moche a creature levyng',
 This land I hym be raft fuH traytourly ; 6551
 To god and hym I yeld me now gilty,
 Pray hym of grace and ellys, I wote certayn),
 My sowle shaft lye in euer lastyng' payn. 6554
 I yield myself to
 God and him.
- And o thyng' I wold, this is the case, 6555
 Ye myght haue knowlage or [I] feryer goo,
 DareH shaft haue my doughter' lucidas
 In mariage, and aH my land also, 6558
 Besechyng' yow to be good lord therto,
 And shewe your' grace onto Serenydes,
 That sne may prae for yow and leve in pece. 6561
 Darell shall
 marry Lucidas.
 Be good lord to
 them,
- And ferthermore, now I remember me, 6562 and forgive me
 how I smote yow with villany and shame,
 Withinne the courte that euery man myght see,
 Nought remembryng' the wurchippe of your' name, 6565
 And therefore on that side I am lame,
 fuH vmbely besechyng' your' goodnes,
 That of aH this I may haue forgevenes.' 6568
 for smiting you
 in the court.'
- With that he felt in swounyng' for very payn), 6569
 Wherof Generides had grete pitye,
 And whanne he sawe he¹ was awake ayeyn) ;
 'Ser Amelok,' he seid, 'now as for me, 6572 'All that is past,
 AH that is past shaft clene forgevyn) be,
 And with my fader I shaft make your' pece,
 ffor yow and also for Serenydes. 6575
 and I will make
 your peace with
 my father.

¹ MS. *hym he.*

- But before you die, forgive me.' And or ye dye this I desire also,¹ 6576
 That ye for geve me or I ferther passe.'
- 'That may soon be done,' said Amelok, 'for you have done me no wrong.' 'Trewly,' quod he, 'ser, that may some be doo, 6579
 As for to me ye haue do noo trespace ;
 And [as] ferfurth as god wiſſe geve me grace,
 With aſſ the world, with highe and low degree,
 I ſhaſſ departe with loue and charite.' 6582
- Serenydes tears her hair, A Carefuſſ woman was Serenydes ; 6583
 She rent hire here, a petuouse thing to see,²
- and with a naked sword comes to Generydes and begs him to slay her. And with a nakyd swerd came to Generides, 6586
 'I yow requere for goddis loue,' quod she,
 'haue here this swerd, and make an ende of me
 Now or ye goo, and bryng' me owt of payn,
 ffor I haue weſſe deseruyd it for certayn.' 6589
- 'God forbid, madam,' he said, 'Do away, Madame,' quod he, 'god defende ;' 6590
 Ther with he toke hir in his armys twayne,
 'Aſſ that is amys,' quod he, 'may be amend,
 And so ye must comfort your' self ayeyn), 6593
 ffor this I haue promysed for certayn),
- 'I have promised to make peace for you.' Vnto my lord and fader for to goo, 6596
 To make the pece for yow and hym) Also.'
- Generides departid furth his way, . 6597
 Ser amelok lay in angwiſſe and in payn),
 Sighyng' fuſſ oft vppon) his bed he laye,
 And shortly to say yow the certayn), 6600
 he dyed anon) withynne a day or twayne.
- Sir Amelok died within a day or two, Thanne who was hevy butt Serenydes, 6603
 ffor more and more hir sorow ded increase.
- And ouer wharte his body ther [s]he lay, 6604
 Aſſ in swoune, grete pite to be hold,
 And in noo wise she wold not thens away,

¹ MS. *desire of yow also.*² MS. *rent hire a petuouse thing to here*

- Moche sorow was made of yong^r and old^d : 6607 and in an hour
With that hir face wex aH to geder cold,
helpe was ther non), reskewe ne socour',
Bothe he and she were dede withynne An owre. 6610
died of grief.
- A woofuH creature was fayre lucydas, 6611 Fair Lucidas was
To se the maner of ther departeng', very sad,
And bothe to geder in a fuH litiH space ;
So aH the day alone she sate wepyng', 9614 and sat all day
She had noo comfort of erthely¹ thyng', weeping and
Save euer more was ser DareH in hir mynde, thinking of
he was to hir so curtes and soo kynd. 6617 Darell.
- Generides sent furth a messenger, 6618 Generydes sent to
To telle the kyng' his fader tideng', the king
hough ser Amelok hath yeld vppe AH in fere to tell him of
The Reme of ynd, and knowith hym) for his kyng', 6621 Sir Amelok's
With petuese wordes gretly repentyng', repentance.
And of aH his offence and trespace,
ffuH vmbly besechyng' yow of grace. 6624
- Off these tidengys the kyng' was weH apayd, 6625 The king was
And toward Surre dressid hym) to ride, well pleased,
Thanne to the messenger right² yuus he seid ; and prepared to
'Sey to my sonne that he here abide, 6628 leaving Generydes
And sette the lande in rewle on) euery side, to rule India.
hole to be and vnder his obeysaunce,
And take it as his owen) inheritaunce.' 6631 [leaf 36]
- Kyng' auferius feH seke anon) vppon), 6632 Anon after he fell
Yet not withstondyng so as it myght be, sick,
With hym) he tooke his knyghtes euerychon),
The streight way toward surre rideth he, 6635 but went back to
And whanne that he was come in to y^t cuntre, Syria,
Tydynges he hard whiche grevid hym) right sore,
The quene Sereyne was dede a day before. 6638 where he found
queen Sereyne
had died the day
before.

¹ MS. *etherly*.² MS. *this right*, the former word being marked for erasure.

- Grete hevynes ther was for hir deceas, 6639
 The kyng^t went to the place ther she laye,
 And twyes he swouned among^t the prece,
 He went where she lay,
 and swooned twice,
 ffuH sory were his meñ to se that day, 6642
 Be one assent thei had hym^ð thens awaye,
 And furth with aH in to his chaunber y^{et} hym^ð brought,
 AH disfortles he was and fuH of thought. 6645
- And alway stiH he febelid passyng^t sore, 6646
 So what with thought and feyntid *with* sekenes,
 Withynne ij dayes he dyed or litiH more ;
 and within two days died,
 Thanne was the lande in grete hevynes, 6649
 To think vpon^ð so noble a princez
 That dyed be fore, and ther kyng^t Also,
 So woo thei were thei wist not what to do. 6652
- For hym^ð and hir was made grete ordenaunce, 6653
 Prelettes, prestis, syngeng^t ther *seruice*,
 And grete lordes doth^r ther obseruaunce,
 and they were both buried.
 ladys also in fuH lamentabiH wise, 6656
 Euerychon^ð of them^ð in blak as is ther gise ;
 Now late ys leue them^ð in rest and pece,
 And speke wee ferther of Generides, 6659
- Whiche is in ynd, and doth^r grete diligence 6660
 Thorough^r owt the land to sette good ordenaunce,
 Generydes, in India,
 set the land in order,
 In ponyssheng^t of them^ð that doo amys, 6663
 Suche as be good of witte and *gouernaunce*,
 Them^ð to charisshe and putte to fortheraunce,
 AH this remembert he both^r day And nyght,
 And for to see that euery man^ð haue right. 6666
- So wele he dede in euery maner thing^t, 6667
 The land of hym^ð were passing^t weH content,
 and was crowned king.
 As rightwise ayre thei toke hym^ð for yer kyng^t,

- And Crownyd hym be aH the hooH assent ; 6670
 Thus were thei AH att his commaundment,
 he was soo good soo curtese and soo fre,
 he had the loue of aH the hoole contre. 6673
- The same forster that came on to [the] kyngt, 6674
 And told of AH the treson that was do,
 he lost his office ther and his levyngt,
 And with quene Sereyne he went Also ; 6677
 Ther for his trowth withoute wordes moo,
 A C pownde of fee he had ther fore,
 With his office like as he had before. 6680
- Owt of Cesare thanne cam barons iij, 6681
 And in ther Iurnay thei rode passingt fast,
 To tell ser DareH the very certente,
 hough his fader owt of his life¹ is past ; 6684
 Desirengt hym to come in aH the hast,
 And by the Assent of AH his baronage,
 Of that contre to cleyme his eritage. 6687
- Whanne thei had told ther message hole and playn,
 Ye may weH wete ser DareH was not glad ;
 Vnto Generides he went certayn), 6691
 And told hym of the tidynges that he had,
 Besechyngt hym, with countenaunce right sadde,
 Of licence in Cesare for to goo ;
 Generides consentid weH ther too. 6694
- And whanne his leve of hym thus takyn) was, 6695
 ffor AH the payn he sufferyd and the smert,
 Ye shaH weH knowe the fayre mayde lucidas
 Right endly was inprentid in his hert ; 6698
 Vnto hir chaunber sone he made a stert,
 And curtesly of hir his leve he toke,
 With kyssengt fele as witnes[eth] the book. 6701

The faithful
forester was
rewarded with
100 pounds,

and restored to
his office.

Three barons of
Cæsarea bring
tidings to Darell

of his father's
death.

He asks leave of
Generydes to go
home,

and sorrowfully
parted with
Lucidas.

¹ MS. *list*.

- In to Casare now *ser* Darell is goon), 6702
 The countre hole was glad of his comyng,
 He was made king of Casarea,
 And for ther prince thei toke hym euerychon),
 And gave hym ther trouthe withoute feyneng, 6705
 he was soo good to them in euery thing,
 Shewyng them favour and grete gentilnes,
 he had the hartes hoole of more and lesse. 6708
- Whanne he had sett the rule and *gouernaunce*, 6709
 Thorough owt the land to mayteyn rest and pese,
 And made his officers to his plesaunce
 Suche as hym thought his honour wold encrease, 6712
 and then went back to Generydes,
 Thanne ageyn he went onto Generides,
 And in his turnay rideth he fast,
 ffurth in to ynd in all the possibi hast. 6715
- Now is the prince of Cesare come ayen), 6716
 Vnto the kyng of ynde Generides,
 [leaf 36, back] The which in sothe of his comyn),
 ffor he abode his comyng still opece ; 6719
 and without delay was wedded to Lucidas.
 And for to telle yow shortly the processe,
 Withoute delay or lenger space,
 The prince was weddid onto lucidas. 6722
- And whanne the fest was all to geder do,¹ 6723
 ffor tender love and special remembraunce,
 With hym and here he gave the lande also,
 Whiche was hir faders old inheritaunce ; 6726
 He is made governor of India in the absence of Generydes,
 The prince also, his honour to avaunce,
 he gave hym full powre signyd with his hande,
 In his absence to gouerne all his lande. 6729
- who goes to Syria, Now goth Generides, the kyng of ynde, 6730
 Toward Surre withoute more delay ;
 And in the story leke as I do fynde,

¹ MS. *done*.

- Too Counstable the mette hym be the way, 6733 and is met by two
 One of them twayne, the very trouth to say, constables,
 Of aH Surre cheff *gouernour* he was,
 The toder kept the Citee of Damas. 6736
- AH sad thei were, and made full hevy chere, 6737 who told him
 Generides had mervett what it ment ;
 To his presence he had thei shuld come nere,
 That he myght knowe the effecte of *yer entente*, 6740
 And vppon that A streight *commaundment*,
 Gevyng' them charge to tell hym aH the case,
 Trewly and playn what *maner* a thyng' it was. 6743
- Full lothe thei were to tell the certente, 6744
 ffor hevy tidinges came to sone Alway,
 Butte whanne thei sawe it myght non *oyer* be,
 To hym thei spake, '*ser*, please it yow,' *quod* thei, 6747 of the death of
 'To take it in pacient that we shaft saye, his father and
 The kyng' your' fader dede is for certeyn, mother.
 And your' moder also the quene Sereyne ; 6750
- Bothe he and she, withynne iij dayes of space : 6751
 It is grete hurt to the land were it goddes wilh.'
 And whanne Generides wist hough it was, He fell from his
 Down from his hors in swounyng' ther he fell, 6754 horse in a swoon,
 To tyme he was awake ther lay he still ;
 Thanne euery man dede grete diligence and payn),
 And vppon his hors thei sette hym Ageyn. 6757
- They brought hym to the Cite of Damas 6758 and was carried
 And passing' seke in his pales he laye, to Damascus,
 AH pale and wanne, owt of likeng' he was, where he lay sick.
 his fressh colour' it fatid al away, 6761
 And thanne to NataneH this ganne he sey,
 'Goo now, I prae yow hartely,' *quod* he, He sent for
 'And sey to Segrem that he come to me.' 6764 Sygrem,

- Whanne he was come thanne seid Generides, 6765
 and gave him a ring to take to Clarionas,
 ‘Sygrem,’ *quod* he, ‘I haue sent for yow here ;
 God wote I am noo thing^t in hartes ease,
 And very seke ye se, and in what *maner* ; 6768
 Goo to Clarionas myn^d owen^d lady dere,
 haue here this ryng^t, bere it here for me,
 I am aferde I shaft^t hir neuer see. 6771
- TeH ye hir soo in very certente, 6772
 Me recomaundyng^t in full humble wise,
 beseeching her to pray for him.
 Besechyng^t hir that she wiH pray for me,
 I aske no more for aH my trew *seruice* ;’ 6775
 Ser,’ *quod* Sygrem, ‘right as ye wiH devise,
 What I shaft^t do or say for your^t entent,
 I am redy att your^t owne *commaundment*.’ 6778
- Sygrem goes into Persia
 Now goth Sygrem withoute wordes moo, 6779
 ffurth in to Perce he ridith on^d a pace,
 To Mountoner Citee now is he goo,
 On^d his message As he *commaundid* was, 6782
 and tells Clarionas all.
 So Streight he goth on to Clarionas,
 And ther he told^t hir aH the circumstaunce
 Of his sekenes with hevy countenaunce. 6785
- And whanne Sygrem had aH to geder seide, 6786
 She swoons,
 Anon she fell in swounyng^t for very payn *with* aH,
 Where with MirabeH gretly was dismayde,
 and Mirabell counsels her
 ‘Madame,’ *quod* she, ‘what thing^t that euer faH?’ 6789
 And on^d hir lady fast beganne to caH,
 ‘hurt not your^t self, I *prae* yow, in this case ;’
 With thoo wordes a woke Clarionas. 6792
- ‘A^t way your^t comfort is full good,’ *quod* she, 6793
 ‘Butt in this case I wote not what to sey.’
 ‘Madame,’ *quod* she, ‘woH ye do After me?’

- 'Gladly,' she seide, 'aH that I canne or may.' 6796
 'Be my counceH thanne shaH ye take your' way to go to Syria
secretly.
 To Surre warde,' *quod* she, 'be myn) Avyse,
 In pore clothing^t and in full secrete wise. 6799

 And haue with yow Gwynot your chaunberleyn), 6800
 And one to kepe your' hors it shaH suffice,
 Take vppon) yow the labour and the payn),
 And ye shaH make hym) hoole o warantice.' 6803
 'I will,' *quod* she, 'do like as ye haue device,
She agrees,
 And certenly, withoute eny wordes moo,
 To morow erly forward wiH we goo.' 6806

 Fro Mountoner gothe Clarionas, 6807 and goes from
Mountoner with
[leaf 37]
Sygrem,
 With hir rode Sygrem to hir gide,
 ffuH secretly as she appoynted was,
 That noman) of the Cite hir aspide ; 6810
 ffurth on ther way to surreward thei hied,
 And in aH goodly hast as it myght be, till they come to
Damascus.
 ffuH sone thei came to Damas the Citee. 6813

 Sygrem from hir departid furth *with* aH, 6814
 Straight to the Castel) gothe Clarionas,
 Vppon) the porter she beganne to calle;
 And he ayenward askid what¹ she was : 6817
 'ffor certeyn), *ser,*' *quod* she, 'this is the case,
and tells the
porter
she is come to
cure the king.
 The kyng^t is seke, it is infourmyd me,
 I trost to god to make hym) hole,' *quod* she. 6820

 'In strenthe or erbys that ben profiteable, 6821
 In them I knowe the vertu that is sure,
 In euery kynd whiche is most comfortabiH,
 And accordeng^t to euery creature, 6824
 And often tyme I haue putte it in vre ;
 Wherefore, I *prae* yow, do my eraunde,²
 That I may see the kyng^t now or I goo.' 6827

¹ MS. *was*.² So MS. ? *my eraunde to do*.

- ‘Dameseh, quod he, ‘your’ erande shaft be do¹;’ 6828
- The porter brings
Natanell,
With that the porter goth vnto the place,
And spake with Natanell a worde or twoo,
And brought hym furth onto Clarionas, 6831
who does not
recognize her.
Vnknownen to them bothe what that she was ;
- ‘What is your
will?’ said he.
‘Ye are right welcom, suster myn,’ quod he,
‘What is your’ will? I prae yow telle it me.’ 6834
- ‘I am a poor
woman,
‘Trowly,’ quod she, ‘I am a pore woman), 6835
The kyng^t is seke, whom gretly I complayne ;
- and wish to make
the king whole.’
And I wold Shewe suche connyng^t As I canne,
Trostring^t to god to make hym hoole ayeyn).’ 6838
- He saw the ring
on her finger,
but still did not
know her,
Thanne he beheld^d hir ferthermore certayn),
A ryng^t he knew whiche on^d hir fynger was,
Yet wist he not that it was Clarionas. 6841
- and went straight
to the king,
From hir he went streight onto the kyng^t, 6842
‘Ser, please it yow to vnderstonde,’ quod he,
‘Ther is a woman whiche is full connyng^t
In euery sekene and, as thinkith me, 6845
By here wordes her semyth so to be ;
here atte CasteH gate with hir I spakke,
To make yow hoole this wolle she vndertake. 6848
- ‘On hir fynger ther is a ryng^t,’ quod he, 6849
‘The whiche in sothe me think a straunge case ;
And this I wote in very certente,
Ye gave suche on^d vnto Clarionas, 6852
And in myself I merueH hough it was.’
- who bade him
bring her in.
Thanne seid the kyng^t, ‘I wold now y^t ye goo,
Bryng^t hir to me withoute wordes moo.’ 6855
- Now Natanell goth to the CasteH gate, 6856
And brought this woman streight onto the kyng^t,
Butt she was wympelyd soo that woote ye what,

She came in
closely veiled,

- That he had no maner knowlachingt, 6859 so that he did not
 With that anon he had aspyed the ryngt, know her,
 The whiche hym thought he gave Clarionas,
 Yet for aH that he wist not what she was. 6862
- ‘I pray yow, *ser*, be of good chere,’ quod she, 6863
 ‘And if it please your’ goodnes for to here
 I am a woman of ferre contre ;’
 And ther withaH, in full curtes maner, 6866 and offered to
 She proferyd hym to kysse with louyngt chere ; kiss him.
 ‘Nay, suster myn,’ quod he, ‘with goddes grace,
 I must pray yow of pardon in this case : 6869
- For I with kysse no woman be ye sure, 6870 He refused to
 Though she myght make me hoole as euer I was, kiss any one
 Butt only hir whiche is that creature but Clarionas.
 That I loue best, the mayde Clarionas ; 6873
 And if that she were present in this place,
 If I here kyssid, I think, so god me save, She, perhaps,
 It were the best fisykke that I cowde haue.’ 6876 could cure him.
- ‘I haue,’ she seid, ‘brought with me hir ymage :’ 6877
 ‘Ye,’ quod the kyngt, ‘I *prae* yow, late me see ;’
 Anone she dede vnWympiH hir visage, She unveiled
 ‘Withoute fayle I am the same,’ quod she : 6880 herself,
 Thanne seid the kyngt, ‘Aye, Benedicite !
 hough haue ye take vpon yow aH this payn?’
 Ther with he toke hir in his armes twayn. 6883 and he took her
 in his arms
- Thanne he kyssid hir withoute more taryengt, 6884 and kissed her,
 And aH that nyght, till day beganne to rise, and they sat
 They twayne were sett withoute departengt, together till
 As glad and mery as thei cowde device, 6887 daybreak.
- To bothe ther pleasurez in aH goodly wise ;
 And on the morow, sothely for to say,
 To mountoner she toke the redy way. 6890 On the morrow
 she went back to
 Mountoner.

- Generydes
recovered, And hole he was and very weH att ease, 6891
And atte his hartes rest in especiall ;
- and was crowned
king, The iij^{de} day after Generides
Was crownyd kyng^t of Surry furth with aH ; 6894
Thanne the lordes echon in generaH,
With very dew and feithfuH obseruaunce,
Dede hym omage with vmble obeysaunce. 6897
- and soon after
set off for Persia, Whanne he had sette the land in gouernaunce, 6898
ffurth in to perce he takith his Iurnay,
In grete estate And in grete ordenaunce,
With his lordes and in suche array, 6901
Thus rideth he the redy way
- to wed Clarionas.
[leaf 37, back] To Mountoner, ther as the Sowdon was,
Ther for to wedde the mayde Clarionas. 6904
- Whanne he was come, the Cite was fuH fayn), 6905
ffor att aH tymes of necessite
he toke on hym the labour' and the payne,
And was ther sheld from aH aduersite ; 6908
So thanne withynne the space of dayes iij,
As rially as thei cowde device,
The mariage was made in solempne wise. 6911
- Gwynan was
there, Gwynan the kyng^t was atte mariage, 6912
The kyng^t of Trace also withoute lese,
and Ismael the
Savage, Whiche callid was IsmaeH the savage,
Broder he was onto the kyng^t¹ Generides, 6915
and Darell was
steward of the
feast, And so to gide and gouerne aH the prece
Appoynted was, likke as thei thought it best,
The prince of Cesare cheff stiward of y^e fest. 6918
- and many others. And other grete estatis ther were moo, 6919
Bothe of lordes and ladyes many on),
Grete Iustis ther the Sowdon made also,

¹ Omit *the kyng*.

- And all the plesure that cowde be thought vppon);
 And to be hold the pepiſſ euerychon,
 Whiche came to se the feſt of yong^r and old^r,
 It was a very wonder to be hold^r. 6925
- Sone after whanne the feſt was don) and All, 6926
 And euery man) gon) home in to his cuntre, Soon after,
 Withynne a while, as aventur' gan) faH, when all had gone
 The Sowdon) dyed, whiche was grete pite; 6929 the Sultan died,
 Grete mone was made of men) of the Cite,
 Save ther comfort and trost in¹ euery thyng^r,
 Was only on) Generides the kyng^r, 6932
- Whiche sesid all the lande in his demeane, 6933
 Be right wise titeH of his mariage, and Generydes
 Takyn^r homage, as lord and souereyn), took his land,
 Thorough owt the lande of all the Baronage: 6936 by right of his
 Bothe yong^r and old^r and euery man) of age, marriage.
 As glad thei were of hym), I yow ensure,
 As euer was land of eny levyng^r creature. 6939
- He was to them) so lovyng^r and so kynd, 6940
 The laugh abseruyd wiH bothe ferre and nere,
 No man) had Wrong that eny man) cowd fynde,
 ffewe compleyntes or non) that men) myght here, 6943
 Gentitt ther with, curtes in All maner,
 If eny man) wold wrong^r oyer day or nyght,
 he was redy for to forfeſe his right. 6946
- And for be cause it shuld not owt of mynd, 6947
 The good seruice so feithfuH and so playn) He married
 Off Natanell, whiche he had founde so kynde, Natanell
 And for his love hadde grete labour' and payn), 6950 to Mirabell,
 he thought he wold remember it ayeyn),
 In suche a wise as hym) thought honorable,
 And maryed hym) to the made Mirabell. 6953

¹ MS. *was in.*

- an^d gave them
the city of Seure. Too hym) and her he gave a faire Citee, 6954
Withynne the Reme of Surre callid Sevre,
A bought the town) a dosen) myle fre
Vnto hym) self, and yerly of valour¹ 6957
vj thousand pownde, to maynteyn) yer honour ;
And of that land he made hym) cheff Iustice,
To maynteyn) in euery maner wise. 6960
- Sir Anasore was
made lord of a
great baronye. Syr Anasore with hym) was not for gete, 6961
he made hym) lord of A grete baronye,
The whiche was fallyn) in perce be eschete,
Whanne lucas dyed that was of ydoney ; 6964
And for grete trost that he hadde specially
In hym), Añ myn) Auctour reherse,
he gave hym) ther the Stiwardshepe of perce. 6967
- Sygram was
wedded to the
laundress, Sygram also was in his remembraunce, 6968
Vn to the lavender weddid ther he was,
Whiche vtterly for soke hir acqueyntaunce,
And toke hir Iurnay with Clarionas ; 6971
- and had a fair
lordship given
him by the king. The king) hym) grauntid, of his speciall grace,
A fayre lordshippe onto them) bothe in fere,
The whiche was wurth an Cñ be yere. 6974
- Thus quyte he them) that were to hym) so kynd, 6975
And, for to seie¹ yow in shorte conclusion),
A better prince was neuer had in mynd,
Thanne he was on) that euer bare crown) ; 6978
And thus he was a man) of grete renown),
Sowdon) of perce with añ his signory,
And also kyng) of ynd and of surre. 6981
- Generydes and
Clarionas lived
many a year in
prosperity, In grete wurchipe Clarionas and he 6982
Good lyff thei ledde to geder many a yere,
In hartes ease and moche prosperite,

¹ MS. *valone*.² MS. *seia*.

Issue they had whiche was to them full dere,	6985	and had issue.
Right grete lordes and ladyes thei were,		
Whiche on of them of xv yere of age,		The daughter was
The kyng of Egipt had in mariage.	6988	married to the king of Egypt,
The remenaunt grew to grete honour,	6989	and the others
And thus I make an ende of this processe,		grew up in great
Besechyng hym that is our saviour,		honour.
All oure synnes of pardon to relese, ¹	6992	
And in the Ioy and blisse that ² is endlese,		
he graunt vs a place perpetuaH,		
In paradise where all his seyntes dwell.	6995	

Explicit the boke of Gene-
rides and of his faire lady Clarionas.

¹ MS. *be relese*, but the first word is struck out. ² MS. *this*.

VARIOUS READINGS FROM THE PRINTED FRAG-
MENTS OF SIR GENERYDES,

GIVEN IN THE PREFACE AND POSTSCRIPT TO MR FURNIVALL'S EDITION
OF THE HELMINGHAM MS. FOR THE ROXBURGHE CLUB.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2016. <i>claymeth it of</i>] they clayme this | 2058. <i>ij thowsand ... companye</i>] [Sir |
| 2017. <i>Also to be made</i>] And also to be | Crove]s with thre thousande |
| „ <i>your</i>] his | in theyr company |
| 2018. <i>voward</i>] forwarde | 2059. <i>ward</i>] batayll |
| 2019. <i>of right it longith</i>] it longeth of | „ <i>ser Anasore</i>] anazere |
| ryght | 2061. <i>they were thore</i>] that there were |
| 2021. <i>so it</i>] me so | 2062. <i>withoute</i>] withouten |
| 2022. <i>may withoute</i>] may bere without | 2064. <i>bothe the rule of more</i>] the reule |
| 2025. <i>it is but</i>] for it is | more |
| 2026. <i>full curtes</i>] curteys | 2067. <i>all</i>] and |
| 2027. <i>they ganne</i>] gan they | 2072. <i>by and by</i>] ryght hardely |
| 2029, 30. <i>withoute ... Batell</i>] without[^t | 2073. <i>after hym</i>] after |
| dowte] Unto the kyng of | 2075. <i>begely</i>] vgly |
| kynges to gyue a strou[^{te}] | „ <i>bothe in</i>] in |
| 2031. <i>ganne them</i>] gan | 2105. <i>was Bauer</i>] bare the banere |
| 2032. <i>princes</i>] knyghtes | 2314. <i>they twayne</i>] they |
| 2033. <i>other dyuerce</i>] dyuers | 2345. <i>sheld and thu goo</i>] shelde |
| 2034. <i>Dukes and Erles</i>] erles | agayne and go |
| „ <i>anon</i>] many one | 5339. <i>on fortune</i>] a fortune |
| 2035. <i>that they hadde vppon</i>] so that | 5343. <i>Amelokkez</i>] syr Amelokes |
| they shone | 5344. <i>It was ayenst</i>] This was |
| 2036. <i>perlys</i>] grete perles | 5345. <i>cause</i>] case |
| 2037. <i>in the fressest</i>] on the best | „ <i>certente</i>] certayne |
| 2038. <i>through owt in</i>] thrughe | 5351. <i>also he</i>] he |
| 2040. <i>enmys for</i>] enemies | 5352. <i>late</i>] let |
| 2042. <i>fro</i>] Forth of | 5354. <i>where euer</i>] where that |
| 2043. <i>rideth</i>] rode | „ <i>eny lande</i>] ony londe |
| „ <i>to his pavilion</i>] vnto his tente | 5355. <i>noo lenger myght she</i>] she myght |
| 2044. <i>With ... rome</i>] With his lordes | no lenger |
| aboute hym wente | 5356. <i>for very payn</i>] for grete doloure |
| 2045. <i>redy</i>] all redy | 5357. <i>ageyn</i>] that houre |
| 2046. <i>a companye</i>] company | 5359. <i>that she</i>] she |
| 2047. <i>were</i>] brought | „ <i>vp ayeyn</i>] agayne |
| 2049. <i>All redy to gye</i>] to guyde truly | 5361. <i>refrayn</i>] restrayne |
| 2052. <i>att his demenyng</i>] in his ledyng | 5365. <i>full sure</i>] sure |
| 2056. <i>he was baner</i>] dyde the baner | 5371. <i>shuld kepe</i>] kepe |
| bere | 5372. <i>here</i>] lo here |

5374. *that*] elles that
 5375. *full hastily*] hastily
 5378. *with the shall neuer*] shall neuer
 with the
 5379. *haue*] kepe
 5382. *vppon*] on
 5383. *as he*] as euer he
 5384. *the chaunber*] her chaumbre
 5386. *full of hevynes*] and full of per-
 plexcyte
 5387. *alway now*] alway
 5388. *of his vnstabilnes*] his duplycyte
 5389. *not gilty*] giltles
 5390. *alway*] had alway
 5392. *do be*] done by
 5394. *a hevynes*] mornynge
 5396. *also gentilnes*] as a gentyll kyng
 5690. *here you speke*] here you
 5692. *I am sure*] be ye sure
 5694. *ferthermore*] forthermore
 this] so
 5696. *o*] one
 is] is also
 5701. *these wordes*] this worde
 ganne] began
 5702. *goth*] wente
 5703. *late*] let
 5704. *kastith*] hasted
 5705. *So*] And so
 hir] his
 5706. *into*] in
 5707. *the*] that
 5708. *onto*] to
 5709. *redy waye*] way redy
 5711. *this to hym gan say*] to hym
 sayde preuely
 5712. *the dore*] this dore
 I yow praye] I pray you hertely
 5714. *to now*] tyll nowe
 5715. *the neer he was*] the nerer he
 coude
 5716. *otherwise*] other
 5720. *onto the*] to hir
 5721. *vpon*] open nowe
 5722. *Thanne Darell*] When he
 and] he
 5723. *onto fayre*] vnto
 5724. *ffrom ynd . . . contre*] Fro ynde
 I come now as faste as I can
 [te]
 5725. *on to*] to
 5726. *now this*] this
 5727. *be dremyd*] ben drenchyd
 5728. *hym noyeth*] and nyghtly is
 5731. *quod*] nowe quod
 5732. *lesyng*] lesynges
 5733. *yow*] it
 5736. *this message*] the erande
 5737. *not to don*] done
 5738. *why*] quod he why
 yow] ye
 5740. *onto*] to
 5742. *is he*] he is
 this dare I] I dare well
 5744. *I shall tell yow trougth*] in very
 trouthe
 5752. *wote ye*] wote I
 5753. *Sererydes*] Senerydes
 5754. *he was*] was
 5755. *ffor*] Fro
 for] fro
 5756. *betwix*] bytwene
 5757. *the tronth*] trouthe
 5758. *that*] that euer
 5759. *she*] the
 5761. *and I had it*] if I had
 5762. *shuld me mystrost*] mysdeme me
 sholde
 my] ony
 5763. *not A take vppon*] nat taken on
 5767. *ser Darell*] hym
 5768. *now quod*] quod
 yow] ye now
 5769. *he seide suche*] suche
 5770. *very certente*] certente
 5772. *nerrer*] nere
 5775. *to say*] I say
 5780. *it*] them
 5782. *to*] vp to
 hand] honde
 5784. *right wele*] well
 5785. *he*] that he
 5786. *eny maner*] ony
 5788. *preiudice*] dyspyse
 5789. *nede*] great nede
 5790. *caune goo*] may gone
 5791. *doe*] done
 5793. *both good*] euer gode
 5794. *is homeward in*] [home]warde
 gothe on
 5795. *now*] a newe
 5796. *cowde*] knewe
 5799. *Citee*] towne
 5800. *went*] sente
 5802. *his own*] his
 5803. []nes to hym verament
 5804. *that*] theyr

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

- A = He, 800.
 A, Ah ! 3049, 6096.
 A = of, 1150, 2752. A = in, 4810 ; unless this is an example of the indefinite article used redundantly with a numeral. A = have, 3483, 3955, 4829, 4883, 5763 (redundant).
 ABASSHID, *v. pret.* was abashed or confounded, 127. ABASSHED, 4091 ; confounded, 3451. *pp.* ABASSHED, cast down, 6404.
 ABELL, son of the prince of Turkey, 1921 ; constable and standard-bearer to the Persian army, 2017, 2023 ; slain by Belen, 2963.
 ABIDENG, *sb.* dwelling, 4199 ; *part.* awaiting, 5957.
 ABISSHID, *v. pret.* was abashed or confounded, 1260.
 ABODE, *v. pret.* remained, 6147.
 ABRAYDE, *v. pret.* started, 2320, 4717.
 ABSERUYD, *v. pret.* observed, 6941.
 ACCORDENG, *adj.* corresponding, 143, 1936, 2179, 6824.
 ACCORDYNG, *adj.* appropriate, becoming, 245, 395.
 A COMPAYNED, *pp.* accompanied, 1283.
 ACQUEYNTAUNCE, *sb.* familiar friends, 6970.
 ADO, *sb.* dealings, 2518. We use 'to do' in the same sense.
 ADRED, *pp.* afraid, 844. ADREDE, 3867, 5965, 6073.
 AFERDE, *adj.* afraid, 85, 1435, 5601, 6771.
 AFFENDID, *pp.* offended, 4580, 6496.
 AFFRAY, *sb.* affright, terror, 6545.
 AFFRONTE, *adv.* in front, 4811.
 AFORE, *prep.* before, 5979.
 AFRAYE, *sb.* assault, attack, 2533.
 AFTER, *adv.* afterwards, 3407.
 AFTER, *prep.* 'After me,' according to my advice, 6795.
 AGAST, *adj.* aghast, frightened, 5936.
 AGE. 'Wele in age,' advanced in years, 1905.
 AGEYN, *prep.* against, 1476 ; 'ther ageyn' = against it, 973.
 AGREYD, *pp.* 'Was agreyd' = had agreed, 5638.
 A HYE, *adv.* on high, 3051.
 AISSHES, *sb.* ashes, 4406.
 A LANDE, *adv.* on shore, 93.
 A LATE, *adv.* of late, 4635.
 ALIGHT, *v. pret.* alighted, 4562, 4576.
 ALL AND SOM, everything, generally and particularly, 5570, 6442.
 ALL IN ONE, *adv.* altogether, 1319.
 ALLONLY, *adv.* only, 6411.
 ALL ONLY, *adv.* only, alone, 881, 1432.
 ALLOWE, *v. t.* to approve, 2783.
 ALL SONE, as soon, 3778.
 ALL THE HAST. 'In all the hast,' in all haste, 1293, 1444, 2807, 2886, 5566, 5878, 5931, 6442, 6685.
 ALL THE HOOLE, all the whole, 3600, 6673. ALL THE HOLE, 5911.
 ALL THE HOOLL, 6670.
 ALL UTTERLY, *adv.* entirely, 1500, 1757, 1867.

- ALOW, *adv.* in a low voice, 5717.
- ALTO, *adv.* altogether, 1559. ALL TO, 4272, 6094.
- ALWAY, *adv.* always, 415, 490, 899, 1044. In 3948 it appears to be an error for 'all away.'
- AMELOK, the false steward of Aferius, and usurping King of India, 28, 2129. AMALOK, 2381.
- AMEND, *pp.* amended, 6592.
- AMONG, *adv.* 'Euer among,' continually from time to time, 1373, 1853. Palsgrave gives, 'Amonge, parfoys.' See also Prof. Zupitza's note to Guy of Warwick, l. 950.
- AMYSELL, sworn brother to Ananyell, 4833.
- ANANYELL, brother of Amelok, slain by Generydes, 4825, 5016, 5830, 5844.
- ANASORE, a knight of Persia, keeper of the prison, 1460, 5575, 6961. Son of Croves, 1906.
- ANASAR, 1471. ANASOR, 1503.
- ANOSORE, 2852, 3023, 3029.
- ANCERS, *sb.* anchors, 3653.
- ANCETORS, *sb.* ancestors, 3139.
- AND, *conj.* if, 214, 354, 889, 3415, 4436, 6432.
- AN HUNTYNG, 37.
- ANONE VPPON, *adv.* immediately after, 78. ANON VPON, 141. See VPPON.
- A PASE, *adv.* apace, swiftly, 988, 4453. A PACE, 2316, 3076.
- APAYDE, *pp.* pleased, 848, 3485, 4206, 4419, 5072. APAYD, 1932.
- APAYED, 856, 1162, 2430, 2828.
- APAYN, an error for 'and payn,' 5915.
- APOYNTMENT, *sb.* arrangement, 5424.
- APOYNTID, *pp.* arranged, 5347.
- APOYNTED, 5589. APPOYNTED, 5624. APPOYNTID, 5887.
- APPARELL, *sb.* provision, 641. In the next line the word is repeated, apparently in error, perhaps for 'peril;' or it may merely be used in the other sense of 'preparation,' like Fr. *appareil*.
- AQUYTE, *v. pret.* requited, 1876.
- ARABYE, Arabia, 1901.
- ARAY, *sb.* condition, 1193. ARRAYE, 1258.
- ARAYED, *pp.* 'Thus hath arayed me,' hath made me in this guise, 515.
- ARKADYE, Arcadia, 1952.
- ARMYS. 'To do armys' = to do battle, 6078.
- As, redundant in the phrases 'as for that nyght,' 138, 152, 383; 'As for a nyghtis space,' 230; 'as in this case,' 442, 582; 'as for a space,' 568; 'as after hir avise,' 702; 'as for a tyme,' 902; 'where as,' 1191; 'as for his hartys ease,' 1354; 'as for the landes right,' 1846; 'as for more witnesse,' 2382; 'As now,' 2409; 'as towching,' 2805, 5443; 'as after myn avise,' 2892; 'as for a daye or twayne,' 2990; 'as for this landis right,' 3345; 'as for a litill space,' 3789; 'as for this day,' 3887; 'as for that nyght,' 3897; 'as this nyght,' 3902; 'As for the cheve guerdon,' 3912; 'as for on nyghte reste,' 4030; 'as for Generides,' 4623; 'As late me see,' 5233; 'as yesterday,' 5278; 'as for a certeyn space,' 5313; 'As for a dreyme,' 5634; 'as for a certeyn space,' 6293; 'As for to me,' 6579.
- ASKAPYD, *v. pret.* escaped, 6096.
- ASKRY, *v.* to descry, 5999.
- ASKERYE, 6014.
- ASPIED, *v. pret.* espied, spied, 437.
- ASPIED, *pp.* 2476. ASPYED, 2674.
- ASPYE, *v.* to spy, watch, 1357, 1409, 2600.
- ASSE, *v.* to assay, 6074.
- ASSEMBELYD, *pp.* assembled, 1317.
- ASSEMBELID, 2046.
- ASSENT, *sb.* 'Ar of hir assent,' are in league with her, 983.
- ASSIRYE, Assyria, 2166. ASIRYE, 2545.
- ASTATE, *sb.* state, 389.

- ASTERTE, *v.* escape from, avoid, 173.
 ASTOINYD, *pp.* astonished, stunned, 2498.
 ASTOWNYD, *pp.* astounded, 3506, 4013.
 A SURANCE, *sb.* assurance, 5450.
 AT, *pron.* that, 591, 4388. ATT, 347.
 ATT, *prep.* In the phrase 'toke good hede att hym,' 660.
 ATTE, at the, 2797, 2947, 4106, 6912.
 ATTE, in the phrase 'atte after none' = in the afternoon, 3715.
 A TWO, *adv.* in two, 6097.
 AUCTOR, *sb.* author, 6002.
 AUFERIUS, King of India, father of Generydes, 7, &c.
 AUFRIKE, Africa, 16. AUFERYK, 2138.
 AUNCETOURS, *sb.* ancestors, 6522.
 AVAILE, *sb.* advantage, 4259. AVAYLE, 4487.
 AVAUNCE, *v.* to advance, 489, 2021, 3417, 4840, 5060.
 AVAUNSED, *v. pret.* advanced, 650. AVAUNSID, 2214, 2673.
 AVAUNTE, *v.* to vaunt, boast, 1008.
 AVENTURE, *sb.* adventure, fortune, 370, 2597, 4893, 4969, 6928. 'Att all aventure' = at all events or hazard, 3494, 6355. 'At aventure' or 'Att aventure,' by chance, 1238, 2791, 4414.
 AVISE, 258, 981, 1402, 1762, 2683; or AVYSE, *sb.* advice, 101. 'Toke gode avise,' considered well, 449; consideration, 702.
 AVISE, *v.* to advise, 6063.
 AVISEMENT, *sb.* advice, consideration, 4761.
 AVOYDE, *v. i.* to remove, disappear, 4239.
 AVOYDID, *pp.* cleared away, removed, 3293.
 AVOWE, *v.* to avouch, acknowledge, 894.
 AWAITENG, *pr. p.* waiting, 648.
 AWAYWARD, *adv.* away, 3813.
- AWISE, in the phrase 'maner awise' = maner wise, 4797.
 AWREKE, *v.* to avenge, 508, 5122.
 AWYSE. In 146 'sothe awyse' is probably an error for 'soche a wyse.'
 AXKID, *v. pret.* asked, 309.
 AYE, *adv.* again, 4426.
 AYEN, *adv.* again, 133, 1098.
 AYENST, *adv.* against, 5472, 6122.
 AYENWARD, *adv.* again, 128, 1876, 3366, 3944, 4492.
 AYERIS, *sb.* heirs, 2016.
 AYEYN, *adv.* again, 2718, 2735, 3942.
 AYRE, *sb.* heir, 5187, 6669; *pl.* AYRIS, 6130.
 BALAM, King of Damascus, 1957, 2090.
 BANYERE, *sb.* standard-bearer, 2014. BANEER, 2055. BANER, 2105. BANERE, 2128, 2213, 2963.
 BARACHIAS, King of Europe, 2147.
 BARONAGE, *sb.* the barons as a body, 4218, 6936.
 BATELL, *sb.* a body of troops, 2077, 2101. BATAYLL, 2090.
 BE, *pp.* been, 352, 811, 1209, 5220, &c.
 BE, *prep.* by, 412, 635, 2445, 2761, &c.; with regard to, 610.
 BE CAUSE, *conj.* in order that, 4279.
 BEDDE, *v. pret.* bade, 1336.
 BEFALL, *pp.* befallen, 1087, 3388.
 BEFORN, *adv.* before, 521, 3139, 4603.
 BEGELY, *adv.* bigly, hugely, 2075.
 BEHAVINGE, *sb.* behaviour, 433.
 BEHEST, *sb.* promise, 4499, 4690.
 BEHIGHT, *v.* to promise, assure, 812, 2231, 2695, 3508.
 BELEN the bold, King of Egypt, 1735. BELLEYN, 2451. BELLYN, 3291. BELYN, 3285. BOLEYN, 3059. BELLYNG, 3463. BOLYN, 3074.
 BEN, *v. inf.* be, 2685; *ind.* 3 *pl.* 2738.

- BE RAFT, *v. pret.* bereft, 6551.
 BERY, *v.* to bury, 5883; *pret.* BERIED, 5877.
 BESEN, *pp.* beseen, provided, 1978. BE SENE, 2068.
 BESETE, *v.* to set, bestow, 5021.
 BESY, *adj.* busy, 5303.
 BESYNESSE, *sb.* in the phrase 'did all ther besynesse' = busied themselves, exerted themselves to the utmost, 1167.
 BE TROST, *pp.* trusted, 1049, 3615.
 BETWIX, *prep.* between, 108, 905, 3117, 5259.
 BE TYME, *adv.* betimes, in good time, 522.
 BEWYAYED, *pp.* exposed, 3885.
 BE WREYE, *v.* to expose, betray, 4155.
 BLAME, *sb.* 'To take a blame' = to take blame, 1628.
 BLANCHARD, the name of King Belen's steed, 2458; given to Gwynan, 2265; and won by Generydes, 2247, 6066.
 BLODE, ON. 'Braste on blode,' burst out bleeding, 546.
 BLYSSYNG, *sb.* blessing, 236. BLISSYNG. 'On his blissyng,' as he expected to receive his blessing, 5346.
 BOLDITH, *v. pres.* emboldens, 5803.
 BOLEYN, BOLYN. See BELEN.
 BOORE, *pp.* born, 5635. BORE, 6132.
 BOTE, *sb.* use, advantage, 4681, 5853; *v.* 'It botith not,' is of no use, 4901.
 BOTELER, *sb.* butler, 424.
 BOUNDEN, *pp.* bound, 1458.
 BOUSTOUS, *adj.* boisterous, rough, 2152.
 BRAKE, *pp.* broken, 3489.
 BRAST, *v. pret.* broke, 2326, 2677, 3047, 4926, 6094, &c.
 BRASTE, *v. pret.* burst out, 546.
 BRAYDE, *sb.* a sudden movement, a start, 2218, 2342, 2736, 6069.
 BRAYDED, *v. pret.* started, 165.
 BREDE, *sb.* breadth, 2075.
 BRODER, *sb.* brother, 4826, 6915.
 BRODEREN, *sb.* brethren, 2656.
 BRODERHODE, *sb.* brotherhood, 6252.
 BROWGTH, *pp.* brought, 4874.
 BUSCOMMEST, *adj.* buxomest, most compliant or obedient, 2505.
 BUSHMENT, *sb.* ambush, 950. BUSCHEMENT, 5977.
 BUT IF, *conj.* except, 322, 332.
 BY AND BY, *adv.* 2048, 2072, 3287, 4766.
 BYTWIX, *prep.* between, 2188.
 BY WARE, *v.* beware, 4590.
 CALLED or CALLID, reputed; in the phrases 'called passing wight,' 4573; 'callid good,' 4994. See 5186.
 CAME, *v. pres.* come, 6745.
 CAPADOCE, Cappadocia, 2087.
 CAPADOOR, Cappadocia, 1954. Elsewhere CAPADOCE.
 CAREFULL, *adj.* full of care, sorrowful, 4161, 6434, 6583.
 CASARE, elsewhere CESARE, 6702.
 CAST, *v.* to intend, purpose, 4423; *pret.* 3654.
 CAWDE, could, 373. A scribe's error for 'Cowde.'
 CERTAYNE. 'In certayne,' 462, 476, 4856; 'For certeyn,' 419; 'For certayn,' 4934; 'The certayn,' 2036, 6600.
 CERUICE, *sb.* service, 4675.
 CESALL, one of the Sultan of Persia's allies, 1965.
 CESARE, Cesarea, 1926, 6681.
 CESELL, Sicily, 2070.
 CHARGID. Perhaps for 'chargeth,' the imperative, 6429.
 CHARISSE, *v.* to cherish, 6664.
 CHARITE, OWT OF, 502. SEYNT CHARITE, 4282.
 CHASE, *v. pret.* chose, 1325.
 CHASTELYN, *sb.* the keeper of a castle, 1520, 1609. CHASTELAYN, 1632.

- CHAUNBOUR, *sb.* chamber, 1407.
 CHAUNBYR, *sb.* chamber, 69;
 CHAUNBER, 71, 3792, 4629.
 CHEFF, *adj.* chief, 5893, 6735.
 CHER, *sb.* aspect, countenance, 129;
 condition, 2594, 6031. CHERE,
 239, 433, 2953; happiness, 2580.
 'To make chere' = to be cheer-
 ful, 571; 'To make better
 chere' = to treat better, 2660;
 'To take chere,' 751; 'To
 make frendly chere' = to treat
 in a friendly manner, 5764;
 'To make chere' = to cheer,
 6341; 'Made hevvy chere,' were
 sad in countenance, 6737.
 CHERYDONE, Prince of Cesarea,
 and father of Darell, 1928.
 CHESE, *v.* choose, 1232, 1316.
 CHESE, an error for 'Chek,' 4778.
 CHEVE, *adj.* chief, 3912.
 CHOSE, *pp.* chosen, 5230.
 CLARIONAS, daughter to the Sultan
 of Persia, 686, &c.
 CLARIONAT, a town in Persia, 3677.
 CLARYET, the name of Generydes'
 sword, 3481.
 CLAYMETH, *v.* 3 *pl.* claim, 2016.
 CLEFE, *v. pret.* clave, cleft, 4598.
 CLEUE, *v. pret.* clave, 3035, 3523.
 COME, *v. pret.* came, 3017, 3042,
 3829, 4214, 4281, 5204, 6396.
 COMENAUTE, *sb.* the commonalty
 or commons, 254.
 COMFORT, *v. pret.* comforted, 3854.
 COMMANDITH, commendeth, 441.
 COMMAUNDITH, 5725.
 COMNE, *pp.* come, 9.
 COMPANABLE, *adj.* companionable,
 2261.
 COMPASSING, *adj.* 'False compass-
 ing' = with a false design, 4163.
 COMPASSION, 6419; an error for
 'compassing.' See 4163.
 COMPLAYNE, *v. t.* to lament for,
 6836.
 CON. 'To con thanke' = to thank,
 878.
 CONFORTABLE, *adj.* comfortable,
 able to help, 2212.
 CONFORTYNG, *pr. p.* comforting,
 2514.
 CONNYNG, *adj.* skilful, wise, 338.
 CONNYNG, *sb.* skill, wisdom, 404,
 1020.
 CONNYNGLY, *adv.* wisely, 398.
 CONSEYTE, *sb.* imagination, opinion,
 696, 6091. CONSAITE, 4352.
 CONSEITE, good opinion, favour,
 4638, 4739, 4902.
 CONTENTAUNCE, *sb.* 'Made no con-
 tentaunce,' did not change the
 expression of her face, 5116.
 COPPE, *sb.* a cup, 4406.
 CORAGEUS, *adj.* courageous, 2093.
 CORDE, *sb.* accord, 6399.
 CORNYSSH, the native county of
 Sampson, 6054. Called CORNYTH
 in the MS. l. 3137.
 CORYNTH, Corinth, 3137. The MS.
 has CORNYTH, and elsewhere
 CORNYSSH.
 COST, *sb.* coast, border, 6146.
 COSTOM, *sb.* custom, 2974.
 COSTYNG, *part.* traversing, 5923.
 COUENAUNDE, *sb.* covenant, agree-
 ment, 3807.
 COUERTURE, *sb.* pretext, 4596.
 COUMFORT, *v.* comfort, 1019; *sb.*
 comfort, 1023.
 COUNFORT, *sb.* comfort, 61, 3565.
 COUNFORT, *v.* to comfort, 76, 1014.
 COURSE. 'Toke ther course, or
 coursis,' a term of tilting, when
 the combatants rode at each
 other with their spears, 2462,
 2627, 3360, 3383; 'Rode a
 course,' 5098.
 COWDE, could, 381.
 COWD GOOD SKILL, was skilful, 932.
 CRAFT, *sb.* 'A craft' = a cunning
 contrivance, 4233.
 CREDENCE, *sb.* 'To take credence'
 = to believe, 4680.
 CROPPE, *sb.* the top of a plant or
 tree. "Crophe and rote," 4940.
 CROSSYNG HYM THE WAY, crossing
 his path, 5814. See 6076.
 CROVES, King of Arabia, 1901.

- CRYED, *pp.* proclaimed, 5573, 6146.
 CRYES, *sb.* proclamations, 4757.
 CURTESLY, *adv.* courteously, 166, 392, 602, 694, 5091, 6700.
 CURTEYS, *adj.* courteous, 3, 307.
 COURTEYSE, 338. CURTES, 425, 2026, 6617, 6866. CURTESE, 1946, 6672.
 DALAY, *sb.* delay, 1842.
 DAMAS, Damascus, 4744.
 DAMASK, Damascus, 3140.
 DANGER, *sb.* 'Made danger = made a difficulty, hesitated, 5073.
 DARELL, a knight of Persia, son of Cherydone, Prince of Cesarea, 1505, 1929, 5058.
 DAVID, eldest son of the Prince of Turkey, 1920.
 DAY, *sb.* space of time; in the phrases 'ij monethis day,' 5882, 5888; 'a moneth day,' 1717, 1890.
 DAYLE, a mistake for 'daye,' 3959.
 DEBATE, *sb.* quarrel, strife, 2296, 5221.
 DEBONERLY, *adv.* 279; perhaps for 'deboner' = debonair.
 DED, 'Don to ded' = put to death, 1487.
 DEDE, *v. pret.* did, 692, 1327, 5216; 'Dede of' = put off, 4343. DED, 3925, 4798.
 DEFAUTE, *sb.* fault, 875.
 DEFENDE, *v.* to forbid, 900, 4479, 6590.
 DEFENSABLE, *adj.* 'In defensible wise,' in a defensive manner, fully armed, 1888.
 DELAY. In l. 5300 'eny delay' is found to rhyme with 'batell,' where it must be a mistake for 'fayle.'
 DELE, *sb.* a part or portion. 'Euery dele,' every bit, 112, 605, 892, 2717; 'Some dele,' somewhat, 261. DEELL, 698.
 DEME, *v.* to judge, 461, 1614; *pret.* DEMYD, 1455, 4710.
 DEMEANE, *v.* to deal with, treat, manage, 788, 4622.
 DEMEANYD, *pp.* 'To be demeanyd' = to behave, conduct oneself, 1719.
 DEMEANYNG, *sb.* demeanour, 398, 2195, 5981. DEMEANENG, 662, 5179. DEMEANING, 929. DEMENING, 1345. 'Att his demening,' under his command, 2052.
 DEPARTE, *v. t.* to part, separate, 2747, 5851; and *i.* to share, divide, 3418; *pp.* DEPARTID, 3080, 6254.
 DEPARTENG, *sb.* parting, separation, 209, 2661.
 DETERMYTTE, *v. t.* to put an end to, 1695.
 DEVER, *sb.* endeavour, 6506.
 DEWTE, *sb.* 'Of dewte,' as their due, 2016.
 DIGHT, *v.* to make ready, prepare, 382, 1110, 2027; *pp.* prepared, 3636.
 DILIGENCE, *sb.* 'Dede diligence' = was diligent, 6756.
 DISCOMFETE, *pp.* discomfited, 2411.
 DISCOMFETURE, *sb.* 'Were att discomfiture' = were discomfited, 2511.
 DISCOMFEYTE, *pp.* discomfited, distressed, 6112, 6292.
 DISCOMFORTID, *pp.* deprived of comfort, 5913.
 DISCOMFORTURE, *sb.* discomfiture, 2571.
 DISENTE, *sb.* descent, 1314.
 DISFORTLES, an error for 'comfortles,' 6645.
 DISMAY, *v.* used as a reflexive verb, 5328.
 DISPLEAUNCE, *sb.* displeasure, 4268, 4691, 5189, 5319, 6481.
 DISPORTE, *sb.* sport, 36, 3836. 'Disporteng place,' pleasure ground, 647.
 DISSENTE, 956; apparently an error for 'assent.' See 983.
 DISSSE, *sb.* discomfite, 292, 713, 878.

- DISSEYUED, *pp.* deceived, 959.
 DISTEYNE, *sb.* destiny, 1097.
 DISTEYNEY, *sb.* destiny, 175.
 Do, in the phrases 'do ordeyne' = arrange, 748; 'Do calle' = call, 6428.
 Do, *pp.* done, 11, 416, 555, 606, 960, 1179, 2881, 2955, 4646, &c.
 Doo, 3249.
 DO AWAY = put it away, 6590.
 DOBILNESSE, *sb.* duplicity, 3890.
 DOLVYN, *pp.* dug, 5207.
 DON, *v. inf.* to do, 5737.
 DOON, *adv.* down, 4094.
 DOTI, 3 *pl.* 6655.
 DOUGHT, *v.* to doubt, 661.
 DOUTELYS, *adv.* doubtless, 430.
 DOWTE, *v. i.* to fear, 2519.
 DRAWWE, *pp.* drawn, 1778, 3398.
 DREDE, *v. pret.* dreaded, 996.
 DREMYD, WAS, *pret.* dreamed, 5464, 6158; *pp.* BE DREMYD, 5727.
 DRESSE, *v.* make ready, prepare, 1164, 3587, 4602; prepare to go, 3769, 3981; *pret.* DRESSID, 2028, 2477, 2830, 4563, 6626.
 DROW, *v. pret.* drew, 1000.
 DURED, *pp.* endured, continued, 4618.
 DURENG, *part.* continuing, 2766.
 DYAMAUNTEZ, *sb.* diamonds, 2036.
 EGIDIAS, a city of Egypt, 4200.
 Ellipsis of verb of motion, 2901, 6947.
 ELLYS, *adv.* else, otherwise, 4859, 5693.
 EMBOSED, *pp.* embossed, foaming at the mouth. A hunting term, 80.
 ENBATELL, *v. t.* to set in battle array, 2904. ENBATELID, *pret.* 2919. ENBATELYD, *pp.* 2925.
 ENBROWDERYD, *pp.* embroidered, 3287. ENBROWDRED, *v. pret.* embroidered, 3253.
 ENCONTINENT, *adv.* incontinently, immediately, 1769. ENCONTYNENT, 2819.
 ENDLY, *adv.* inwardly, thoroughly, 849, 4844, 6698. See INLY.
 ENDURYD, *v. pret.* continued, 2976.
 ENGENYS, *sb.* engines, 2887.
 ENMY, *sb.* enemy, 4951; *pl.* ENMYS, 2005, 2082, 2524, 4605.
 ENSURE, *v.* assure, 169, 223, 431, 893, 2751.
 ENTENT, *sb.* endeavour, 954. See INTENT.
 ENTENT, *sb.* design, thought, 4668. 'To ther entente,' 220; 'To ther intent,' 1323; 'To myn entent,' 808; 'In ther entent,' 924; 'After ther entente,' 1070, 2099; 'As to his entente,' 2666; 'Aftur your own entent,' 2868; 'In his entent,' 2880, 6404; 'In myne entent,' 5286; 'The effecte of his entente,' 4217, 4275, 5810. See also 6740.
 ENTRETYD, *pp.* treated, 3428.
 ERANTE, *adj.* arrant, 1007.
 ERITAGE, *sb.* heritage, 3115, 4642.
 ERMONES, the King of Higher Ind, 2150, 3017; slain by Generydes, 3053. See HARMONES.
 ERMONYE, 1958.
 ERTELY, *adv.* heartily, 4057.
 ESAUNCE, King of Nicomedia, 1945.
 ESCHETE, *sb.* escheat, forfeiture, 6963.
 ESCHEW, *v.* to avoid, 1377.
 ESKEPYD, *pp.* escaped, 2374.
 ESPECIALL. 'In especiall' = especially, 5739, 6411.
 ESTATIS, *sb.* persons of state and dignity, 6919.
 ETHIOPE, Ethiopia, 1947, 3143.
 EUER IN ON, *adv.* continually, 5594. EUER IN ONE, 6182.
 EUERYCHONE, *pron.* every one, 5866, 5872.
 EXCEPT, *v.* to accept, receive, 406.
 EYNE, *sb.* eyes, 1483, 4398.
 EYTHER, *pron.* each, 3447.
 FADER, *sb.* father, 134.
 FALL, *pp.* befallen, happened, 5487.

- FALL, rhyming with 'will' and 'still,' 5858.
- FALLOW, *sb.* fellows, 1766.
- FALSED, *sb.* falsehood, 958.
- FALSHUDE, *sb.* falsehood, 1539, 5221, 5267.
- FANTESIES, *sb.* fancies, 4652.
- FANTESYCE, 4676.
- FARDE, *v. pret.* behaved, seemed, 4786.
- FARE, *sb.* course of life, 4495.
- FATID, *v. pret.* faded, 6761.
- FAWTE, *sb.* fault, 4386, 5686.
- FAYNE, *adj.* glad, 27, 3801, 5649.
- FAYN, 1145, 1284, 2329, 4560.
- FEBELID, *v. pret.* grew feeble, 6646.
- FELASHEPE, *sb.* company, 1667, 1956. FELASSHEPE, 2855.
- FELAW, *sb.* companion, 134, 4833.
- FELD, *sb.* field. To 'sette a feld' is to put an army in order of battle, 2914, 2921, 4806; 'Made ther feld,' 4813; 'made a feld,' 4817; 'To make a feld,' 5301.
- FELE, *adj.* much, 6701.
- FELISCHEPE, *sb.* company, 1886.
- FELISSHEPE, 2540, 4830, 5982, 6326. FELISSHEPPE, 2869, 2969.
- FENDE, *sb.* fiend, 3069; *pl.* FENDEZ, 2520.
- FENYALL, *adj.* final, 5038.
- FER, *adv.* far, 911.
- FERD, *adj.* afraid, 3389. FERDE, 4425.
- FERDER, *adv.* further, 6154.
- FERE. 'In fere' or 'in feere' = together, 422, 527, 728, 1326, 1378, 2113, 4353, 4604, 6210, 6620, 6973.
- FERLY, *adv.* strangely, wonderfully; and hence, impetuously, 2203, 5815.
- FERRE, *adj.* far. 'Ferre in age,' advanced in life, 66, 228, 3666; *adv.* 3118.
- FEYNTID, *pp.* rendered faint, 6647.
- FISYKKE, *sb.* physic, 6876.
- FLATRISE, *sb.* flattery, 4042.
- FOR BECAUSE, *conj.* because, 2959, 6947.
- FOR BLED, *pp.* weakened by loss of blood, 4946, 6112; bleeding, 6403.
- FOR BLODE. It is difficult to say whether 'sore for blode' (3528) signifies 'sore for loss of blood,' or 'having bled sore.' Most likely the latter. Compare 'sore forbled,' 4946.
- FOR BY CAUSE, *conj.* because, 6037, 6184.
- FORDER, *v.* to further, 336.
- FORGETE, *pp.* forgotten, 2352, 5367, 5558, 6090, 6961.
- FORGEVE, *pp.* forgiven, 4730.
- FORGEVYN, *pp.* forgiven, 6125.
- FORGEVEN, 6323.
- FORGROWE, *pp.* misshapen, 3667.
- FORMEST, *adj.* first, foremost, 1998, 2023, 2971.
- FORS, *sb.* care. 'Gave butt litill fors,' took but little care, 2268.
- FORSAKE, *pp.* forsaken, 4671.
- FORSOKE, *pret.* gave up, abandoned, 5674.
- FORSTER, *sb.* forester, 975, 4803, 6674.
- FORTHERAUNCE, *sb.* furtherance, advancement, 6664.
- FORTHERMORE, *adv.* furthermore, 103.
- FOR THOUGHT, *v. pret.* repented, 1456.
- FORTUNE, *v.* to chance, happen, 3977, 4234, 5895.
- FOR WHYE, *conj.* because, 996.
- FOR WONDID, *pp.* severely wounded, 6384.
- FORYERAUNCE, *sb.* furtherance, 6482.
- FOR YETE, *pp.* forgotten, 1916.
- FOUGHTEN, *pret.* 3 *pl.* fought, 3512.
- FOUNDEN, *pp.* found, 5614.
- FOUNDRED, *v. pret.* were worn out with fatigue; used of horses, 3385.
- FOURTHNYGHT, *sb.* fortnight, 5342.
- FOYS, *sb.* foes, 2491, 5157.
- FRAUNCHESSE, *sb.* franchise, 1273.

- FRE, an error for 'fere' or 'faire,' 5100.
- FRELY, *adv.* 2415; perhaps for 'ferly.'
- FRENDLEHEDE, *sb.* friendship, 5170.
- FRESSEST, *adj.* freshest, 2037, 3562.
- FRO, *prep.* from, 792, 5712. FROO, 3483, 3945.
- FURMABELY, *adv.* formally, conformably to precedent, 1728.
- FYENCE, *sb.* affiance, trust, 5611.
- FYLLE, *v. pret.* fell, 4095.
- FYND, *v.* to provide, 1013.
- FYNE, *sb.* end, 1757.
- FYNIALL, *adj.* final, 5427, 6251.
- GADERID, *v. pret.* gathered, 2917.
- GADERYNG, *sb.* gathering, 1335.
- GAILE, *sb.* gaol, 1696.
- GALAD, King of Assyria, 2167, 2545.
- GANNE, *v. pret.* began; 243, 390, 933, 1998, 4870, 5701. GAN, 5711.
- GEERE, *sb.* gear, equipment, 2104, 2670. GERE, 2857, 4563.
- GENERYDES, son of Auferius and Sereyne, 291, &c.
- GETE, *v. imper.* get, 6063.
- GETEN, *pp.* gotten, begotten, 187.
- GEVE, *v.* to give, 4249; *pp.* given, 3581, 4642.
- GIDE, *sb.* guide, 4803.
- GIDID, *v. pret.* guided, 4800.
- GIRDE, *pp.* girt, 3557.
- GISE, *sb.* guise, 2974, 4203.
- GLAD, *sb.* gladness, joy, 1255.
- GLYNT, *v. pret.* glanced, 2421; flashed, 6088.
- GOFFORE, the Sultan of Persia, 651.
- GOO, in the phrase 'goo sett,' 2914.
- GOO, *pp.* gone, 4003, 4783, 6781.
- GOOD, *sb.* goods, possessions, 237.
- GOOD, *interj.* 2770.
- GOODLYHEED, *sb.* goodness, 679.
- GOODLY HEDE, 2803, 6340.
- GOOD MAN, *sb.* master, proprietor, 1122.
- GOTEN, *pp.* begotten, 4287.
- GOTH, *v. imper.* go, 6484.
- GOVERNAUNCE, *sb.* government, 674, 1094, 1948.
- GOULYS, *adj.* gules, 2306.
- GRAMERCY, *int.* Fr. grand merci, great thanks, 452, 2653.
- GRAUNT, *pp.* granted, 1671.
- GRE, *v.* to agree, 1141.
- GRE, *sb.* pleasure; to take in gre = to be pleased, 103, 998.
- GREE, *v.* to agree, 5294.
- GREKE, *sb.* Greece, 356, 402.
- GRESELY, *adj.* grisly, 2153.
- GRESES, *sb.* steps, 1531.
- GRISSELL, the name of Generydes' horse, 3301.
- GROW, *pp.* grown, 804. GROWE, 1343.
- GUSARE, an Ethiopian in the service of Serenydes, 5245.
- GWYNAN, son of Belen, King of Egypt, 2127, 3595, 5787. GUY-
NAN, 2238, 4198. GWAYNAN, 2241.
- GWYNOT, chamberlain to Clario-
nas, 2688, 3244, 6800.
- GYE, *v. t.* to guide, 2049.
- HAKENEY, *sb.* hackney, 1249.
- HAN, an, 5269.
- HAND. To 'bere in hand' = to treat, 2780.
- HAND BE HAND = hand to hand, 1827.
- HANDE. 'Of his hande,' 1930; 'Of his handis,' 5186; 'Aside hand of' = beside, 2453, 2825.
- HANGED, *adj.* 'An hanged bedde,' a bed with curtains, 71.
- HAP, *v.* to happen, 156.
- HAPPYD, *v. pret.* happened, 435, 3622. 'Hym happyd in,' he lighted upon, 57. HAPPID, 3524, 6161.
- HARD, *v. pret.* heard, 516, 659, 2740, 3347, 3663, 5730. HARDE, 49.
- HARD, *pp.* heard, 897.

- HARKENYD, *v. pret.* heard: followed by 'of,' 2949.
- HARKYN, *v.* to hear: followed by 'of,' 4016.
- HARMES, *sb.* arms, 614, 2305.
- HARMYS, 2405.
- HARMONES, the king of higher Ind, 2956.
- HARNES, *sb.* armour, 605, 2028, 2965. HARNESSE, 2945. HARNESYS, 6088.
- HAROWED, *sb.* a herald, 2249.
- HARTID, *pp.* encouraged, 2418.
- HATH, 3 *pl.* 2659.
- HAUE. In the phrase 'have here' = take here, 6587, 6770. 'Had hym awaye,' took him away, 6643. HAUE, apparently for 'hath,' 1710.
- HEDYR, *adv.* hither, 75. HEDER, 168, 5667, 6219.
- HEERE, *sb.* hair, 545. HERE, 501, 6584.
- HELME, *sb.* helmet, 6106, 6107.
- HELVYS, *sb.* helves, handles, 2162.
- HEM, *pron.* them, 5931.
- HEM SELF, *pron.* himself, 4786.
- HERE, *pron.* her, 4247.
- HERE BEFORE, *adv.* heretofore, 1134.
- HERIS, *hers*, 4675.
- HEVILLY, *adv.* sorrowfully, 5513.
- HEVY, *adj.* sorrowful, 239, 595, 2665, 3038, 5847, 6602.
- HEUYNESSE, *sb.* sorrow, 887, 2548, 2604, 2987. HEVYNES, 2969, 3585, 4625.
- HIDE, *sb.* head, 2342. *
- HIGH. 'On a high' = on high, aloud, 2456.
- HIGHE, *v.* to hie, go, 4067.
- HIGHT, *v. pret.* was called, 21, 639, 1291; *v. pres.* am or is called, 2756, 4144, 4159, 4694, 5063.
- HIR, *pron.* their, 635, 4789; *adv.* here, 5892.
- HIRE, *v.* to hear, 576.
- HIS, *is*, 4675.
- HOLD, *pp.* holden, 495, 1710, 1930.
- HOLPYN, *pp.* holpen, helped, 5862.
- HOLTYS, *sb.* holts, woods, 43.
- HOLY, *adv.* wholly, 76.
- HONOUR, *sb.* 'Hir honour' = for her credit, 4511.
- HOO, *adv.* how, 868. HOUGH, 1068.
- HOOLE, *adv.* wholly, 124.
- HOOLE, *adj.* whole, sound, 5205.
- HOOLY, *adv.* wholly, 32, 6533.
- HOUGH, *adv.* how, 1069.
- HOVYD, *v. pret.* tarried, 4028.
- HUDE, *sb.* hue, colour, 1560.
- HUSHT, *adj.* hushed, silent; and so, secret, 320.
- HYE, *v.* to go, 41, 1955, 3056, 5153, 5934.
- HYM, *pron.* them, 2919, 3280, 4542, 6150, 6348.
- HYMSELF, *pron.* themselves, 3083.
- HYNG, *v. pret.* hung, 5236.
- IAPE, *sb.* a jest, 3377.
- IAPYNG, *sb.* jesting, jest, 6135.
- ICHE, *pron.* each, 2662, 4381.
- ICHEON, each one, 1800, 1942.
- ICHON, 1691.
- IE, 1980. IEE, *sb.* eye, 1874, 2772.
- IENTILEST, *adj.* gentlest, 929.
- IENTILL, *adj.* gentle, 3, 307, 664.
- IENTILLES, *sb.* gentles, gentlemen, 1326.
- IENTILLY, *adv.* gently, 1261.
- IENTELLY, 3428.
- ILL FARYNG, *adj.* ill-conditioned, ugly looking, 2152, 3020, 3025.
- IMAGENINGE, *sb.* plotting, devising, 122.
- IMPORTABILL, *adj.* intolerable, 1477.
- IN. 'In swounyng,' 1257, 6754, 6787; 'In falling,' 4425.
- INCONTENENT, *adv.* incontinently, immediately, 2865.
- INDE, *sb.* India, 2.
- INDERLY, *adv.* 675. Like INLY.
- INLY, *adv.* inwardly, thoroughly, 3361, 4986. See ENDLY.
- I NOW, *adv.* enough, 2006, 3637.

- INPERT, *v.* to injure, 4480.
 INPRENTID, *pp.* imprinted, 6698.
 INTENT, *sb.* endeavour, 1263.
 INTO, *prep.* unto, 3593, 6166, 6271.
 IOATAN, a knight overthrown by Sir Darell, 4977.
 IONATHAS, a knight of Ethiopia, 3143.
 Is, *pron.* his, 237.
 ISMAELL the Savage, brother to Generydes and King of Thrace, 1344, 2621, 6914.
 IT. Apparently an error for 'yet,' 4723.
 IUELL. See YUELL.
 IULYAN, Emperor of Rome, 3402.
 IURNAY, *sb.* journey, 607.
 I WIS, *adv.* certainly, surely, 718, 732, 5448. I WISE, 2774.
 KECHWE, an error for 'kerchewe,' a kerchief, 4424.
 KERCHE, *sb.* kerchief, 3827, 4398.
 KIRTILL, *sb.* kirtle, mantle, 4380, 4393, 4395.
 KNOW, 3365. KNOWE, *pp.* known, 262; *pret.* knew, 323, 450, 974, 1170.
 KNOWIT, *v. pres. 3 sing.* knoweth, 87. Probably an error of the scribe for 'knoweth it.'
 KNOWITH, acknowledgeth, 6621.
 KNOWLACHE, *sb.* knowledge, 1251, 5050.
 KNOWLACHING, KNOWLACHYNG, *sb.* knowledge, 1236, 2182, 2606, 2640, 3218, 4118, &c.
 KNOWLENGINGE, *sb.* knowledge, 235, 277, 316.
 KNYGHTWOODE, *sb.* knighthood, 5032.
 LAMADONE, King of Libya, 2171.
 LAMADON, 3123. LAMEDON, 4842, 5098.
 LARGE, *adj.* 'ij myle large,' a space of two miles, 3223.
 LARGELY, *adv.* liberally, 3418, 5296.
 LATE, *v.* to let; *inf.* 132; *imper.* 607, 940, 2806, 3592, 4405.
 LAUGH, *sb.* law, 6941.
 LAUNDE, *sb.* lawn, 73.
 LAVENDER, *sb.* laundress, 282 1167, 4363, 6969. LAVENDERE, 4354.
 LAWDE, *sb.* praise, 2877.
 LAYEN. 'Withoute layen,' without concealing, 2302.
 LAYNE, *v.* to conceal, 717, 772, 810, 2646. LAYN, 4385, 4885.
 LECHE CRAFT, *sb.* doctor's skill, 5658.
 LEESE, *sb.* falsehood, 5992.
 LEFE, *v.* to learn, 1316.
 LEFE, *adj.* In the phrase 'wheder she were lefe or lothe,' whether she were willing or unwilling, 5507.
 LEKE, *v. i.* to like, 2010.
 LEKE, *adv.* like, 6732.
 LEKELY, *adv.* likely, 670.
 LEKID, *v. pret.* liked, 661.
 LENAGE, *sb.* lineage, 413, 2438, 2639, 3114, 3873.
 LENGER, *adv.* longer, 190, 572, 2897, 5355. LENGGER, 2712.
 LENGEST, *adv.* longest, 4374.
 LEPPE, *v. pret.* leaped, 2262.
 LESE, *sb.* to lose, 13, 1133, 2573, 6057.
 LESE, *sb.* falsehood, 20, 289, 319, 794, 4936. LEESE, 2622, 2652.
 LESING, *sb.* falsehood, 4661. LESYNG, 5732.
 LESSE, *sb.* falsehood, 3902.
 LESSE, a mistake for LESTE, 39.
 LEST, *v.* to last, 899.
 LEST, *adj.* active, nimble. Fr. *leste*, 1923, 2146.
 LESTE, *subj.* would please, 406.
 LET, *v. pret.* let be, allowed it to be supposed, 5067.
 LETE, *v. imper.* let, 5731.
 LETT, 2200. LETTE, *sb.* hindrance, 11, 2873.
 LETTE, *v. t.* to hinder, stop, 1752,

- 2671, 6019; *v. i.* to stop, cease, 2470.
- LEVE, *v.* to believe, 186, 1389; to live, 589, 1074, 5948; *imper.* LEVITH, 5619.
- LEVING, *part.* living, 4210.
- LEVER, *adv.* rather, 5616.
- LEYNE, *v.* to conceal, 2284.
- LEYSER, *sb.* leisure, 358, 838. LEYSERE, 3276.
- LIFF, *sb.* life, 3181. LYFFE, 2699.
- LIFT, *v. pret.* left, 4131.
- LIGGING, *pr. p.* lying, 2475. LIGGENG, 3027.
- LIGHT, *v. pret.* lighted, 3046.
- LIKE, *v.* to please; *pret.* LIKID, 5165, 5653.
- LIKENG, *sb.* condition, 6760.
- LIST, *v.* to desire, 154, 656, 5758. 'What here lyst,' what she pleased, 266.
- LIST, *sb.* pleasure. 'On my list' = at my pleasure, 2459.
- LONDYD, *v. pret.* landed, 4193.
- LONG, *adv.* 'To think long' = to long, 6225.
- LONG, *v.* to belong; *pres.* LONGITH, 347; *pret.* LONGYD, 26.
- LOSE, *sb.* a string or lace, 5236.
- LOTHE, *adj.* loathsome, 4302.
- LUCAS, a knight of Persia, slain by Gwynan, 1652, 6028, 6964.
- LUCIDAS, daughter of Amelok, 4843.
- LYBIE, Libya, 2171.
- LYGHT, lieth, 1027.
- LYSTE, *v. pret.* desired, 33.
- LYVEZ. 'A lyvez creature' = a living creature, 3381. Compare Chaucer, Clerk's Tale.
- MADANE, King of Thrace, 2144. In the Roxburgh Club version he is called King of Greece. MADAN, 2920.
- MAGRY, *sb.* ill will, 877.
- MALICHIAS, a knight of Persia, slain by Generydes, 938, 1484.
- MANASSEN, one of the King of Egypt's allies, 2169. Slain by Lucas, 2482. MANESSEN, 2476.
- MANER. 'Some maner trayne,' some kind of snare or plot, 83, 1438; 'In no maner a wyse,' 259; 'No maner harnessse,' no kind of armour, 2945; 'All maner vitayle,' all kinds of provisions, 3111; 'Some maner waye,' in some way or other, 4478; 'What maner thing,' 4708; 'All maner right,' 5472.
- MANERLY, *adv.* in a becoming maner, 653.
- MASEDEYN, Macedon, 1952. MASEDOYNE, 2085.
- MASSAGE, *sb.* message, 364, 2377, 3165, &c.
- MASSENGER, *sb.* messenger, 1892, 5162. MASSANGER, 3173, 3329. MASSINGER, 5152.
- MASTEREYS, *sb.* efforts, displays of skill, 2778.
- MEANE, *sb.* means, 594, 952, 3160, 6035.
- MECHE, *adj.* much, 1275, 1670, 1949, 5146; *adv.* 3199, 3419, 3445, 5635.
- MEDEN, Sereyne's maid, 264.
- MEDEYN, 274, 298, 299, 304. MEDEYNE, 281.
- MEDLED, *v. pret.* 'Medled with' = encountered, 6134.
- MEKILL, *adv.* much, 6451.
- MEND, *sb.* mind, memory, 412, 1073, 3032, 6413; mention, 2506. 'Sithe tyme of mend' = since time within memory, 1772.
- MENDE, 3198, 3434, 4796, 6406. Rhyming with 'fynde,' 5698.
- MENY, *sb.* retinue, attendants, 277; company, 3002.
- MERCAUNDEZ, *sb.* merchants, 4203.
- MERTHIS, *sb.* joyful songs and cries, 3563.
- MERVELYS, *sb.* marvels, 109.
- MESELL, *sb.* a leper, 4237, 4311.
- MESSAVENTURE, *sb.* misadventure, 3848.

- METELY, *adj.* Of good measure, tall, 432; moderate, 768.
- ME THINK, methinks, 2362, 3243.
- MEVE, *v. t.* to move, 1760, 4909.
- MIRABELL, Clarionas's maid, 716, &c. MYRABELL, 797. MIRABILL, 3804.
- MO, *adj.* more, 2722, 3908.
- MOAB, King of Cappadocia, 1954.
- MONNE, *sb.* sorrow, complaint, 2695. 'To make mone' = to complain, lament, 2662.
- MONPERSON, a town of Persia, 5987. MONPERSONE, 6058. MOUNPERSON, 6190.
- MOO, *adj.* more, 955, 1110, 1977.
- MORE, with a comparative, more bolder, 1628; more wrother, 1568; more stronger, 2160.
- MORELL, the name of King Belen's horse, 3286.
- MORTUALL, *adj.* mortal, deadly, 6399.
- MOST, with a superlative, 929.
- MOST, *adj.* greatest, 2708.
- MOTE, *v.* may, 668. 'So mote I goo,' 2900, 4639, 5043.
- MOUNTENER, the chief city of Persia, 639, &c.
- MYDDES, *sb.* midst, 538, 852, 6042.
- MYNDE, *sb.* 'To make mynde' = to make mention, 2131. MYND, 3016, 4866.
- MYSGOVERNAUNCE, *sb.* misgovernment, 4873.
- MYSTREST, *v.* to mistrust, 1399, 1413.
- MYSTREST, *sb.* mistrust, 1673.
- MYSTROST, *sb.* mistrust. An error for 'mystrest,' as it rhymes with 'list,' 5760, 6184.
- MYSTROSTE, *v.* to mistrust, 5695, 5762; *pp.* MYSTROSTID, 6238.
- NATANELL, tutor to Generydes, 337, &c.
- NAY or NAYE. 'That is noo nay,' there is no denying it, 2277; 'This is noo nay,' 4159, 4288, 4539; 'Said nay' = opposed, 4755, 5456.
- NAYED, *pp.* denied, refused, 1797.
- NAYDE, 5248.
- NE, *conj.* nor, 4368.
- NEDE, *v.* 'That hym nede,' that may be needful for him, 350; 'Them nede,' they needed, 4400.
- NEE, *conj.* nor, 3317.
- NEER, *adv.* nearer, 5715.
- Negative, double, 3317, 3413, 4205, 5361, 5374.
- NEW. 'We are new to begynne,' we have to begin anew, 3108.
- NICOMEDE, Nicomedia, 1940. NY-COMEDE, 2073.
- NONYS. 'For the nonys,' for the occasion, 3289, 5139.
- NORISE, *sb.* nurse, 288, NORYSE, 286.
- NOT FOR THY, *adv.* nevertheless, 235, 813, 917, 3127.
- NOTHER, *conj.* neither, 1749, 1817, 3181.
- NOTHER, *pron.* other, 1749.
- NOWNBER, *v. t.* to number, 1561.
- NOYETH, *v. pres.* annoyeth, 5728.
- NOYTHET, *conj.* neither, 4470.
- NYE HANDE, *adv.* near, 2273.
- NYERE, *adv.* near, 2531.
- NYGH HANDE, *adv.* near, 62, 6335.
- NYHAND, *adv.* near, 951.
- O. 'o length' = at length, 1778; 'o trougth' = in truth, 4286, 4501; 'o my trowth,' 4723.
- OBEISEAUNCE, *sb.* obedience, 1096.
- OBEYSAUNCE, 6630. OBYSEAUNCE, 2435.
- OBESEAUNCE, *sb.* obeisance, 652.
- OBEYSAUNCE, 2020, 6897.
- OBETH, King of Sicily, 1934.
- OBEY, TO, *v.* For this construction see 19, 5782.
- OBSERVAUNCE, *sb.* 'To do observance' = to shew respect, 6655.
- OF = for, in construction with 'beseech,' 325, 6315, 6498; 'thank,' 5093; 'praye,' 6263, 6432; = on, in construction with

- 'avenge,' 565; 'Sory of,' 597; 'To be of assent' = to assent, 3609; 'Abiding of,' 4328; 'Purveyd of' = provided with, 4649.
- OF, *prep.* off, 2798.
- OFFEND, followed by 'to,' 6171.
- ON. In the phrases 'on huntyng,' 962, 965, 3765, 3775, 5966; 'On lyve' = alive, 3375; 'On sleppe' = asleep, 4063.
- ON, *adj.* one, 1316, 4791; redundant in 2909, 6978.
- ON, *prep.* in. 'On twayn' = in two, 2242, 2632, 4569, 4926; 'On twoo,' 2933, 4598. Of, 4597.
- ON- in compounds = un.
- ONCOPELYD, *pp.* uncoupled, 42.
- CNFORTUNE, *sb.* misfortune, 5339.
- ONHAPPY, *adj.* unhappy, unlucky, 4874; mischievous, 5561.
- ONHORSID, *pp.* unhorsed, 2464.
- ONNESE, *adv.* perhaps for 'vn-nethe,' scarcely, 3453.
- ONNETHE, *adv.* scarcely, 977.
- ONTO, *prep.* unto, until, 282, 1288, 3136, 5178.
- ON TOKE, *v. pret.* took on, 3951.
- ONTREW, *adj.* untrue, 120.
- ONTROWTH, *sb.* untruth, 4896.
- ONYS, *adv.* once, 1182, 2492, 2785, 4242, 4303, 5401.
- O PECE, *adv.* quietly, uninterruptedly (? Fr. *en paix*), 1385, 1681, 2417, 2544, 2620, 2766, 3739, 3755, 3920, 4189, 4328, 4581, 4911, 5254, 5627, 6182, 6237, 6347, 6719. OPEESE, 2313. OPESE, 3391, 3500, 4512, 4618.
- OR, *prep.* before, 1185.
- OR, *adv.* before, 917, 1005, 2232, 2968, 6540. OR EUER, 6459.
- ORDENAUNCE, *sb.* array, 2084, 2142; arrangement, 4769.
- ORKENAY, Orkney, 1961.
- OSTAGE, *sb.* hostelry, 64.
- OTHER, *pl.* others, 1587, 3132.
- OTRAN, king of Spain, 3064, 5957.
- OUER, *adj.* upper, 2996.
- OVERTHROWE, *pp.* overthrown, 4979.
- OUER WILARTE, *prep.* across, 6604.
- OUGHT. 'As hym ought,' as was due to him, 142.
- OUREZ, *pron.* ours, 2989; *sb.* hours, 4201.
- OUTRAYTH, outrageth, 2426.
- OWE, *v.* to regard as owing or due, 922, 1329.
- OWTTRAYED, *pp.* outraged, violently treated, beaten, 3491.
- OUTRAYED, 4841. OVTRAYDE, 6068.
- OYTHER, *conj.* either, 2610.
- PACIENT, *adj.* 'In pacient' = patiently, 6748.
- PALES, *sb.* palace, 4247, 6759.
- PARAVENTURE, *adv.* peradventure, perhaps, 2586.
- PARDE, *int.* verily! Fr. *par dieu*, 731, 3441.
- PARENTYNE, the chief city of India, 5771. PARENTYNNNE, 378. PAREYNTYN, 970.
- PARTID, *v. pret.* departed, set out, 2113.
- PARTISE, *sb.* parts, 1706.
- PASSITH, *v. pres.* exceedith, 5954.
- PAYDE, *adj.* pleased, 2246.
- PAYN. 'On a payn,' in 1727, is on pain of something which is not mentioned.
- PAYN, *sb.* pains, 68, 1018, 5213. PAYNE, 3412.
- PECE, *adj.* quiet, 320.
- PEERLYS, *sb.* pearls, 3306.
- PEKYS, *sb.* pikes or pickaxes, 2509. See 2161.
- PENSELL, *sb.* a small penon or flag, 2686, 2947, 3245.
- PEOPILL, *sb.* a body of people, 2670.
- PEOPLE. 'A grete people' = a large multitude, 5279.
- PERAVENTURE, *adv.* perchance, 153, 781. PERAVENTOUR, 888.
- PERCE, Persia, 6780.
- PERISSHED, *v. pret.* pierced, 3367.
- PERSE, *sb.* Persia, 620, &c.
- PETEUOSE, *adj.* piteous, 3556.

- PETEVIOUS, 3953. PETUOSE, 5594, 6584. PETUESE, 6622.
- PETEVIOUSLY, *adv.* piteously, 1529.
- PHARES, one of the Sultan of Persia's allies, 2097.
- PIGHT, *v. pret.* pitched, 5134.
- PITEVIOUS, *adj.* piteous, 2954.
- PLAYN, *adj.* honest, 6948.
- PLEASE IT = may it please, 3720, 6843. PLESE IT, 4309, 5400. PLEASIT, 4060.
- PLENTEVIOUS, *adj.* plenteous, 620, 1031.
- PLESAUNCE, *sb.* pleasure, delight, 31, 126, 654, 4650, 5114, 6711.
- PONYSSHENG, *sb.* punishing, 6662.
- Possessive case, mark of, omitted, 'Suster sonne,' 283; 'Hevyn kyng,' 2642, 4002, 4427; 'Sowdon powre,' 3420; 'maister harnes,' 3845; 'nyghte rest,' 4030; 'auferius right,' 4134; 'auferius comyng,' 4772; 'prince sonne,' 5185.
- POSTRENE, *sb.* a postern, 2559.
- POYNTE DEVISE, ATTE, perfectly, completely, 3307, 5995.
- POYNTE, *v. pret.* appointed, 2125, 2149.
- POYNTEMENT, *sb.* appointment. 'In ther poyntement,' under their command, 2100, 2178; arrangement, 3006, 3086, 4762.
- PRATYE, *adj.* pretty, 302. PRATY, 4422.
- PRECE, *sb.* crowd, 2453, 6641.
- PREFE, *sb.* proof, 1453, 1496.
- PRELETYS, *sb.* prelates, 3561.
- PRESE, *sb.* press, crowd, 538, 852, 2708, 2726, 5311. PREESE, 2299, 6277.
- PRESENT. 'In present' = present, 3104.
- PREUYD, *pp.* proved, 4.
- PREVYED, *pp.* provided, 5887.
- PRICE, *sb.* value, worth, 2036.
- PRIUTE, *sb.* secrecy, 263.
- PROCESSE, *sb.* story, narrative, 1509, 4615, 5911, 6213.
- PROMES, *sb.* promise, 1328; *v.* to promise, 4654.
- PROWSE, *sb.* prowess, 4231, 4950.
- PUESSENCE, *sb.* puissance, power, 3419.
- PURCHASE, *v.* to acquire, procure, 877, 5198, 5260; *sb.* acquisition, 2812.
- PURVAYE, *v.* to provide, 59, 1026, 1365; *pret.* PURVAYDE, provided, 1298. PURVAYED, 1288; *pp.* PURVAYDE, provided, 1771.
- PURVEY, *v.* to provide, 6455; *pret.* PURVEID, provided, 5310. PURVEYD, 3220, 4276; *pp.* PURVEID, provided, 2082. PURVEYD, 1115, 2889, 3196, 4649, 5139.
- PURVYAUNCE, *sb.* providence, 272.
- PUSAUNCE, *sb.* power, 1951. PUYSAUNCE, 1970.
- PUT TO, *v.* to apply, 4948, 5213.
- PYTUES, *adj.* piteous, 6283.
- QUARELL, *sb.* cause of quarrel, claim, 3536, 4561.
- QUIETE, *v. pret.* acquitted, 2861.
- QUYK, *adj.* alive, 2576.
- QUYTE, *v. t.* to acquit, 1500; to requite, 3498, 5700; *pret.* requited, 2327; acquitted, 3013; yielded, gave up, 3608; *pp.* requited, 3495, 6975.
- QUYTE AND CLENE, 6364, 6376.
- REAMES, *sb.* realms, 4332.
- REANE, *sb.* rein, 3474.
- REBELL, *adj.* rebellious, 6421.
- RECOMAUNDID, *v. pret.* commended, 5907, 6174.
- REDE, *v.* to advise, 625, 871, 2575.
- REDELY, *adj.* ready, 6305.
- REDEN, *pp.* ridden, 5597.
- REDY, *adj.* near, 3706, 6890.
- REDYEST, *adj.* quickest, nearest, 3700.
- REHERSID, *pp.* mentioned, 1114.
- Relative omitted, 5272.
- REME, *sb.* realm, 19, 496, 1028, 2649, &c.

- REMEMBRYD, *pp.* reminded. 'Am remembryd' = remember, 619, 2690, 5290.
 REMEVE, *v. t.* to remove from, 3223.
 REMEVID, *v. pret.* removed, 3015.
 REMEVYNG, *part.* removing, 5069.
 RENNE, *v.* to run, 930.
 REPORTE, *v.* to refer, 4526.
 REPREF, *sb.* reproof, 1451.
 REQUERE, *v.* to require, 619, 6586.
 RESAN, *sb.* reason, 1061.
 RESKEWSE, *sb.* rescue, 4928.
 RETEYNE, *v. t.* to restrain, 1543.
 REUER, *sb.* river, 1151.
 REWITH, *v. pres.* repenteth, 3971.
 REWLE, *sb.* revel, 5592. The line is corrupt. Order, 6629.
 REWLE, *v.* to rule, 5892.
 REYNYNG, running, 3825.
 RIAL, *adj.* royal, 1950.
 RIALY, *adv.* royally, 1308, 6910.
 RIGHTWISE, *adj.* righteous, 1322; Rightful, 2960, 6669, 6934.
 RISSH, *sb.* rush, 1680.
 RODE, *sb.* rood, 2445; roadstead, 4106.
 ROMANS, *sb.* romances, 1.
 ROUGHT, *v. pret.* recked, cared, 50, 1076.
 ROWNDE, *adv.* direct, straight, 3364; and so, swiftly. 'Ranne to rownde,' 2627. ROUNDE, 3362, 4922.
 RUBEN, son of Manassen, 2170, 2792.
 RUMBER, *sb.* turmoil, 1377.
 RYALL, *adj.* royal, 245.
 RYNESHED, *v. pret.* rinsed, 1182.
 SAD, *adj.* grave, serious, 3926. SADDE, 5832.
 SADNESSE, *sb.* soberness, gravity, 1346, 3141.
 SAFF, *adj.* safe, 3147.
 SAMPSON, one of the King of Egypt's knights, 6053; slain by Generydes, 6362, 6365. SAMPSONE, 3138.
 SANYK, King of Africa, and father of Serenydes, 2136, 2931, 4864.
 SAUGYS, *sb.* sages, wise men, 88.
 SAVE, *adv.* safe, 6470.
 SAVELY, *adv.* safely, 6127, 6456.
 SAYE, *v. pret.* said, 6017.
 SCOMFITE, *pp.* discomfited, 570.
 SEASON, *sb.* 'Take your season' = take your time, 5825.
 SECHE, *v.* to seek, 3997, 4150, 5566. SECEITH = seeketh, 2451.
 SECHING, *part.* seeking, 5812.
 SECRELY, *adv.* secretly, 3786.
 SEIGH, *v.* to sigh, 1416.
 SEKE, *adj.* sick, 714, 6632, 6759.
 SEKERLY, *adv.* secretly, 359, 867, 5298, 5538; certainly, 2095, 2911, 3695, 3840, 5373. SEKYRLY, 6273.
 SEME, *v.* 'Him seme,' appear to him, 1981; 'Me semyth' = it seemeth to me, 2427; 'Ye semes' = it seems to you, 6007; 'Her semyth' = she seemeth, 6846.
 SEMELY, *adj.* comely, 1918, 2000, 4827.
 SEMLANTE, *sb.* semblance, appearance, 4019.
 SEMYD, 'Hym semyd' = it seemed to him, 40, 1988; = he seemed, 3311.
 SEMYNG, *sb.* 'To his semyng,' as he thought, 4986.
 SENDE, *v. pret.* sent, 1896.
 SENT, sendeth, 445, 2812, 3334.
 SEOSYNNE, *sb.* season, 271.
 SERENYDES, wife of Auferius and afterwards of Amelok; daughter of the King of Africa, 21.
 SEREYNE, the mother of Generydes, and Queen of Syria, 255; her death, 6638.
 SERTEYN, 'In serteyn,' 4978.
 SERUAGE, *sb.* servitude, 1848.
 SERVAGE, *sb.* slavery, 3344.
 SERYS, *sb.* sirs, 6018.
 SESE, *v. i.* to cease, 941; *pp.* 6399.
 SESE, *v. t.* to stop, 1489, 6435.

- SESILL, Sicily, 1933.
 SETT, 680. SETTE, *pp.* seated, 387.
 SEVRE, a city of Syria given to Natanell on his marriage, 6955.
 SHAPE, *pp.* shapen, 175.
 SHENDE, *v. t.* to injure, ruin, 1657, 4403; *pp.* SHENT, 4669.
 SHETT, *pp.* shut, 5773.
 SHETTE, *v. pret.* shut, 5133, 5876.
 SICHE, *adj.* such, 1126.
 SIDE, *adj.* long and flowing, 4398.
 SITHE, *conj.* since, 587, 800, 805, 1215. In 800 'a' is repeated in error.
 SKAPE, *v. i.* to escape, 2534, 2849, 5781; *pret.* SKAPID, 4567.
 SLEE, *v.* to slay, 520, 2367. SLE, 3913, 3927, 4591.
 SLEPPE, *v. pret.* slept, 3934, 3937, 4037.
 SLEPPYD, *v. pret.* slept, 161.
 SMETE, *v. pret.* smote, 2388, 6110. SMETTE, 2355; *pp.* smitten, 579. SMETTE, 6378. SMETYN, 553.
 So, *adv.* as, 4837.
 SOFTELY, *adv.* gently, quietly, 2528.
 SOKYD, *pp.* 234.
 SOMTYME, *adv.* at one time, 4801.
 SONE VPPON, *adv.* soon after, 243.
 SONNER, *adv.* sooner, 6329, 6330.
 SORGEONS, *sb.* surgeons, 3572.
 SOTHE, *sb.* truth, 507, 612, 4885. SOTH, 996.
 SOTHFASNES, *sb.* truth, 4834, 5612.
 SOTILTE, *sb.* subtilty, 122; trick, device, 1538.
 SOWDON, *sb.* sultan, 640, &c.
 SOWNNE, *v. i.* to sound, tend, 1750. SOWNYNG, *part.* 6339.
 SPACE, *sb.* 'While I haue lyffe and space' = while I live and move, 2699, 3181.
 SPECIALLY, error for 'special,' 3570.
 SPERKELYD, *v. pret.* dispersed, scattered themselves, 6049.
 SPORYD, *v. pret.* spurred, 217.
 STERE, *v.* to stir, move, 5156.
 STERT, *sb.* 'Made a stert' = rushed, 6699.
 STOND, *v.* to stand, 4373. STOND-ENG, *part.* 5323.
 STORE, *sb.* story, 3481.
 STORY, *sb.* history, 2167.
 STOUND, *sb.* space of time, 5659.
 STRAKE, *pret.* struck, 2793, 2794, 2946, 3366, 5126, 6375.
 STRAYTE, *adv.* strictly, 1462.
 STRENTHE, *sb.* strength, 6821. A doubtful reading.
 STRIFF, *sb.* strife, 3160.
 STROKE, *pret.* struck, 2628, 3514.
 STRONGETH, an error for 'strongest,' 5779.
 STRYFF, *v.* to strive, 3373.
 SUERTE, *sb.* surety, certainty, 2264; security, 4444.
 SURAUANCE, *sb.* an assurance, bond, 6252.
 SURE, *adj.* secure, safe, 2732, 4575, 4605.
 SURRE, Syria, 93. SURRY, 99.
 SUSTELY, 5070. Perhaps an error for 'softely.'
 SUSTER, *sb.* sister, 4937.
 SWARD, *sb.* sword, 519, 3400, 3406, 3921. SWARDE, 3480. SWERD, 2707, 3486.
 SWORNE, *sb.* swoon, 2359.
 SWORN BRODER. Knights who had taken an oath of brotherhood to each other were called 'sworn brothers,' 4834.
 SWOUNE, *sb.* swoon, 4095, 6605.
 SWOUNYD, *v. pret.* swooned, 4099.
 SWOUNYNG, *sb.* an error for 'swoune,' 6569; in swounyng, 1257, 6754.
 SYGHENYNG, *sb.* sighing, 162.
 SYGREM, a herald, 2256, 4987, 5001, 5044. SEGREM, 6764. SEGRYM, 5986. SEGYREM, 5983.
 TAK, *pp.* taken, 887.
 TAKE, *v.* to deliver, 361, 447. TOKE, *pret.* 907.

- TAKE, *pp.* taken, 226, 946, 2566, 3240, 3977, 5472, 5763, 6882; *pret.* took, 4070, 5536, 6422.
- TARED, *v. pret.* tarried, 1287, 2757, 2926, 3352, 4347. TARYD, 2240, 2950.
- TARYNG, *sb.* tarrying, 1293, 2513.
- TEGER, Tigris, 1738.
- TENDER, *v.* to treat kindly, 3734; to propose, 5210.
- THANK, *sb.* thanks, 2879, 5915. THANKE, 3093, 3645.
- THAT, redundant in 'what thing that euer fall,' 6789; 'what that she was,' 6832.
- THE, *pron.* thy, 4086.
- THERED, *adv.* thither, 217, 1337, 6278.
- THEREDWARD, *adv.* thitherward, 1269.
- THEE, *v.* to thrive, 668.
- THEMSELF, *pron.* themselves, 2596, 3057.
- THER AS, *adv.* where, 2668.
- THERFRO, *adv.* therefrom, 893.
- THERYS, *pron.* theirs, 2989.
- THING, *sb.* things, 1153.
- THINK. 'Me think' = I think, 3243, 5408. THYNK. 'Vs thynk' = we think, 1782; 'Thinkith me' = seemeth to me, 3337; 'Hym thought' = seemed to him, 5639, 6861.
- THIS, *pron.* these, 4402. THISE, 1706.
- THO, *pron.* those, 26, 2486. THOO, 888, 1965, 2958, 4090, 4525, &c.
- THO, *adv.* then, 2828.
- THORE, *adv.* there, 3394, 4316.
- THOROUGH, *prep.* through, 557, 2452.
- THOROUGHOWT, *adv.* throughout, 2946.
- THOUGHT, *sb.* anxiety, trouble of mind, 2725, 2985, 3234, 4612, 6647.
- THRETFTE, *adj.* thriving, 280, 1342.
- THREFTY, *adj.* thrifty, 1134.
- THRETE, *v. pret.* threatened, 500.
- THRETING, *part.* threatening, 539.
- THRETYNG, *sb.* threatening, 4086.
- THROUGHELY, *adv.* thoroughly, 388.
- THYNG, *sb. pl.* things, 202, 466.
- TIDE, *sb.* time, 5925.
- TIDENG, *sb.* tidings, 1159, 6619. TIDING, 2512.
- TO, *prep.* until, 2781, 5714, 6012. 'Stroke to' = struck at, 3514; at, 6218; for, 6808.
- TO AND TOO, more and more, 3378. TO AND TO, 5550.
- TO BRAST, *v. pret.* broke asunder, 2356, 2495, 5837, 6107.
- TODER, *adj.* other, 67, 1504, 2338, 3002, 3012, 3454, 3929, 6736.
- TO GEDER, *adv.* together, 179, 1440.
- TOKE, *v. pret.* delivered, 683, 1184, 2716, 5238.
- TOKENYNG, *sb.* token, sign, 2608. TOKENNING, 4626.
- TOKKYD, *pp.* tucked, 4397.
- TONE, *adj.* one, 1957, 2338.
- TOO, *adj.* two, 5879.
- TRACE, *sb.* Thrace, 1028, &c. The Roxburghe Club version reads 'Tharse' in these passages, and this removes the difficulty in 2144 compared with 2288. TRASE, 2920.
- TRAPPOUR, *sb.* trappings, 3305.
- TRAVELL, *sb.* labour, toil, 111, 159.
- TRAYN, *sb.* stratagem, artifice, 1069, 2140, 4503, 5752, 6419. TRAYNE, 4027.
- TRAYTURLY, *adv.* traitorously, 2272, 4038, 6417. TRAYTOURLY, 6551. This is probably the reading in 2130.
- TRESONE COLOUR. If this be the true reading it seems to mean 'treasonable pretext,' 5474.
- TREST, *sb.* trust, 4621.
- TRETE, *v.* to entreat, 5853.
- TRETE, *sb.* treaty, 6355.
- TREW, rhyming with 'now,' 5793.
- TREWAGE, *sb.* tribute, 1792. TREV-AGE, 3343.

- TREWSE, *sb.* truce, 5887. TREWYS, 3006.
- TRIFOLYS, *sb.* trifles, 4664.
- TROBELYD, *pp.* troubled, 54, 3737.
- TROBOLD, 3730. TROBOLYD, 5550.
- TROST, *sb.* trust, 265, 786, perhaps for 'tryst,' or 'trest,' as it rhymes with 'lyst.'
- TROST, *v.* to trust, 994, 3760. 'That is to trost' = that is to be trusted, 4356. Perhaps we should read 'trest,' as it rhymes with 'wist' and 'list,' as in 4621.
- TROUGH, *sb.* truth, 107, 816, 2279, 3722, 4473, 5447, &c. TROUGHT, 5437, 6316.
- TROW, *v. i.* to think, 1598, 5455, 5519.
- TROWLY, *adv.* truly, 144.
- TRUSE, *sb.* truss, 4425; truce, 5882.
- TRUSHED, *v. pret.* trussed, packed up, 605.
- TWAYN, *adj.* two, 65. TWAYNE, 108, 1218, 1763. THWAYNE, 155.
- TWYES, *adv.* twice, 3952, 3969, 6641.
- TYME. 'To tyme,' or 'To the tyme' = until, 2471, 2746, 4228, 6755.
- VAILE, *sb.* valley, 216.
- VALOUR, *sb.* value, 6957.
- VARIAUNCE, *sb.* strife, 5756.
- VELANYE, *sb.* villany, 1358.
- VENGE, *v.* to avenge, 5149.
- Verb of motion omitted, 5282, 6606.
- VERY, *adj.* true, actual, 2623.
- VIAGE, *sb.* journey, 3146, 3331, 5162, 5271.
- VICE, a city of India, 4770, 5778.
- VISITE, *pp.* visited, 4293.
- VITALLE, *sb.* victuals, 3637.
- VMBLY, *adv.* humbly, 600. VM-BELY, 6170, 6567.
- VNCURTESE, *adj.* uncourteous, 6244.
- VNDERTAKE, *v. t.* to be surety for, 3583.
- VNKYLL, *sb.* uncle, 5017. VNKILL, 5028.
- VNNETHE, *adv.* scarcely, 2534, 4946.
- VNQUYTE, *adj.* unrequited, un-avenged, 6038.
- VNWURCHIPFULL, an error for 'And wurchipfull,' 4850.
- VNWYMPILL, *v.* to unveil, 6879.
- VOWARD, *sb.* vanguard, 2018.
- VOYDE, *v.* to avoid, remove oneself, 6101.
- VPON, an error for 'open,' 5721.
- VPPON, *adv.* after, in point of time; in the phrases 'sone vppon,' 1926, 1041; 'anon vppon,' 6009, 6632. On, 2035. 'Came so hastily vppon' = came upon him so hastily, 4787.
- VRE, *sb.* usage, custom, 2788, 4594; use, practice, 6825.
- VTERLY, *adv.* entirely, fully, 3516.
- WAGE, *sb.* wages, hire, 2441, 6511.
- WALOPING, *part.* galloping, 3325.
- WANNE, *v. pret.* won, 1133, 2130, 2237, 2609, 2814; conquered, 3688, 4766.
- WARANTISE, *sb.* 'O warantise,' of a surety, 5938, 6470.
- WARD. 'As to me-ward' = as regards me, 4331.
- WARE, *adj.* careful, cautious, 351, 1084; aware, 2315, 2625, 3040.
- WARENTICE, *sb.* 'O warentice,' of a surety, 174; 'O warentyce,' 287, 6803.
- WARK, *sb.* work, 1171.
- WAWIS, *sb.* waves, 91.
- WAX, *pret.* waxed, 2472.
- WAY, *pl.* 5923.
- WAYTITH AFTER = waiteth for, 2440.
- WEDDER, *sb.* weather, 1403.
- WEDE, *sb.* dress, 4258.
- WEIGHT, *sb.* wight, person, 331, 3852.
- WEIGHT, *adj.* active, nimble, 3361.
- WELCOMYNG, *sb.* welcome, 392, 663.

- WELE, *adv.* well, 5733.
 WELEWILLYNG, *adj.* well-disposed, 964.
 WELLYD, *pp.* 'Wele wellyd,' well-disposed, 2089.
 WENE, *v.* to think, 4655; *pret.*
 WEND, 6317. WENDE, 3947.
 WENYNG, *part.* 2502, 5636.
 WENT, *pp.* gone, 2667, 6443.
 WERRE, *sb.* war, 898, 6153.
 WERS, *adj.* worse, 1365.
 WESHT, *v. pret.* washed, 1182.
 WESSH, 4316.
 WETE, *v.* to know, 132, 180, 333, 714, 4153, 4432; *pres.* WOTE, 739, 777, 778 (read 'Ye wote ye what;'; see 6858); WOOTE, 891; *pret.* WIST, 153; WYSTE, 53, 913; *imper.* 2 *pl.* WETE, 1300, 2739.
 WEX, *pret.* waxed, 3349, 5065, 6608. WEXE, 5173.
 WEXEN, *pp.* waxen, grown, 306, 430, 2765.
 WHAT SOME EUER, *pron.* whatsoever, 4556.
 WHAT TYME, whenever, 4225.
 WHECHE, *pron.* which, 5389.
 WHEDER, whether, 914.
 WHEL, *adv.* whiles, 4037.
 WHERE, *adv.* whereas, 1134.
 WHO IS, whose, 353.
 WIDDED, *pp.* wedded, 1080.
 WIGHT, *sb.* weight, 2163.
 WIGHT, *adj.* nimble, swift, 3634, 4573, 5055.
 WILL, *adv.* well, 371, 899, 1835, 3698, 6941. WILE, 581. WILL, 'And it wilbe' = if it may be, 6516. See WOLD.
 WISE, *sb.* manner, 1036, 1045, 5780.
 WITHOUTEN, *prep.* without, 341, 794, 1171, 3706; WITHOUTYN, 20.
 WITHOUTEN, *adv.* without, 3917.
 WITTE, *sb.* blame, 869.
 WITTELY, *adv.* wisely, 1051.
 WOLD, would, 376, 1036. 'And it wold be' = if it might be, 214, 6432; 'If it wold be,' 6500. WULD, 374.
 WOLLE, *v.* will, 4403, 4432.
 WONDER, *adj.* wonderful, 501, 1171, 1418, 2074, 4307, 5327; *adv.* wonderfully, 1414, 3447, 4696.
 WONNE, *pp.* conquered, 6398.
 WOO, *adj.* sorrowful, 915, 2371, 2578, 3484, 6652.
 WOODE, *adj.* furious, mad, 2983.
 WOOTE, *v. pres.* knoweth, 891; *imper.* know, 6858.
 WORLD. 'A world to here,' 2205.
 WORTH, in the phrase 'woo worth' = woe be to, 4871.
 WOTE, *v.* to know, 2696.
 WOWETH, *v. pres.* wooeth, 4442.
 WRAUGHT, *sb.* wrath, 1373.
 WREKE, *pp.* avenged, 1824.
 WULL, *v.* will, 2807.
 WURCHIPPE, *sb.* honour, dignity, credit, reputation, 35, 404, 616, 882, 2896, 2911, 3417.
 WURCHIPPE, *v.* to honour, 5179.
 WYMPELYD, *pp.* wrapped in a wimple or veil, 6858.
 WYNNE, *v.* to conquer, 5159.
 WYSE, *sb.* manner, 34. 'In lyke wyse,' in like manner, 102.
 YAE, *int.* yea, 294.
 YCHE, *pron.* each, 698.
 YDONYE, a town of Persia, 6964.
 YEDE, *pret.* went, 2503, 3458.
 YEE, *sb.* eye, 4549, 4984.
 YEFERUS, King of Ermony, 1957. Called also Zeferus.
 YEFT, *sb.* gift, 3441; *pl.* YEFTEZ, 3569. YEFTYS, 3094.
 YELDE, *pp.* yielded, 4781. YELD, 6620.
 YENDER, *adv.* yonder, 1027, 2318, 2425, 2869, 4552, &c.; *adj.* 2777, 3704, 6019.
 YMAGENING, *sb.* device, plot, 5747.

YMAGENYNG, *pr. p.* plotting, de-
signing, 963.

YND, *sb.* India, 375, 2505, 5598.

YNDLY, *adv.* 3096. See INLY.

YOUR, *pron.* yours, 5096.

YOUREZ, *pron.* yours, 2869.

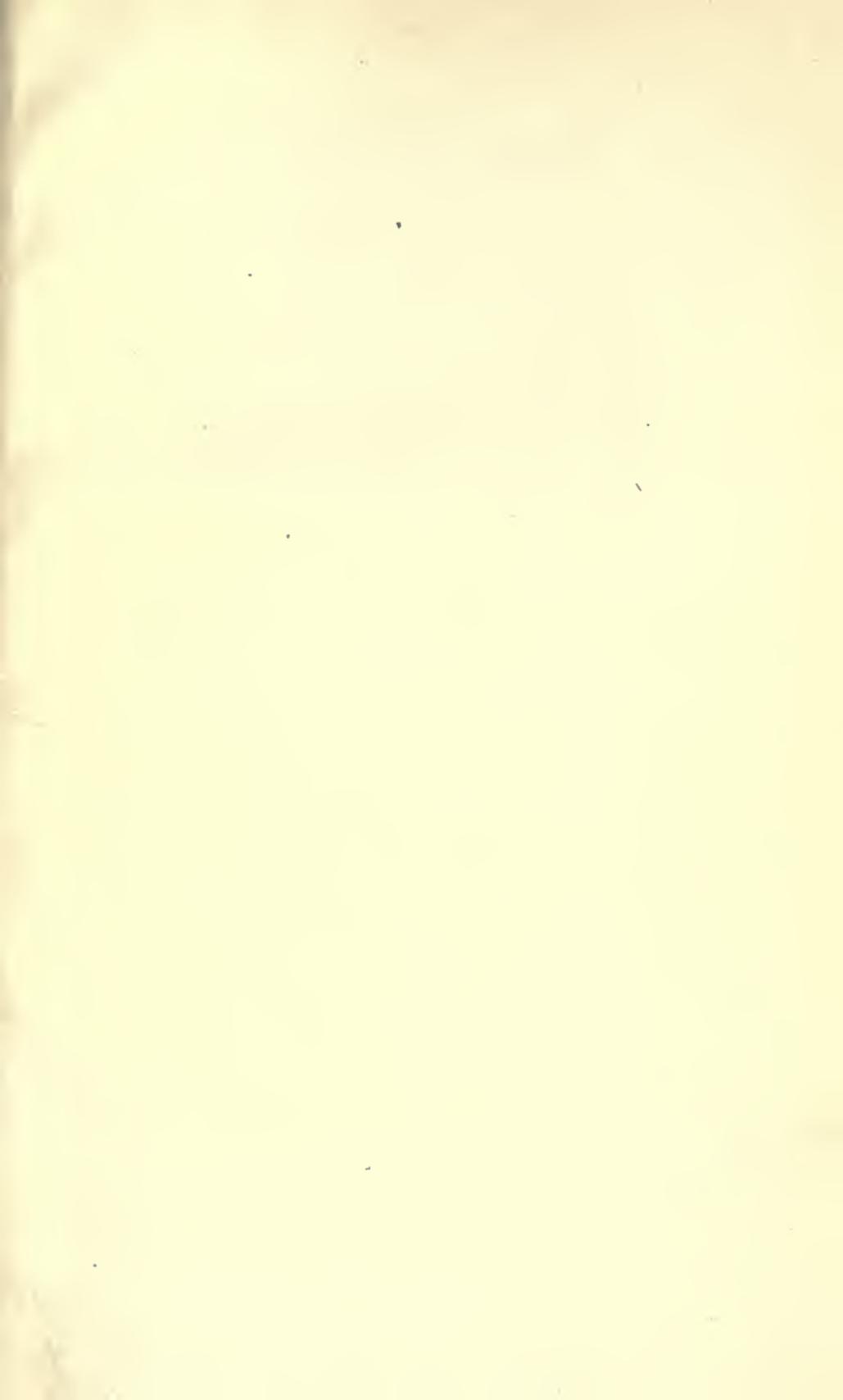
YSORES, son of Sanyk, 4869.

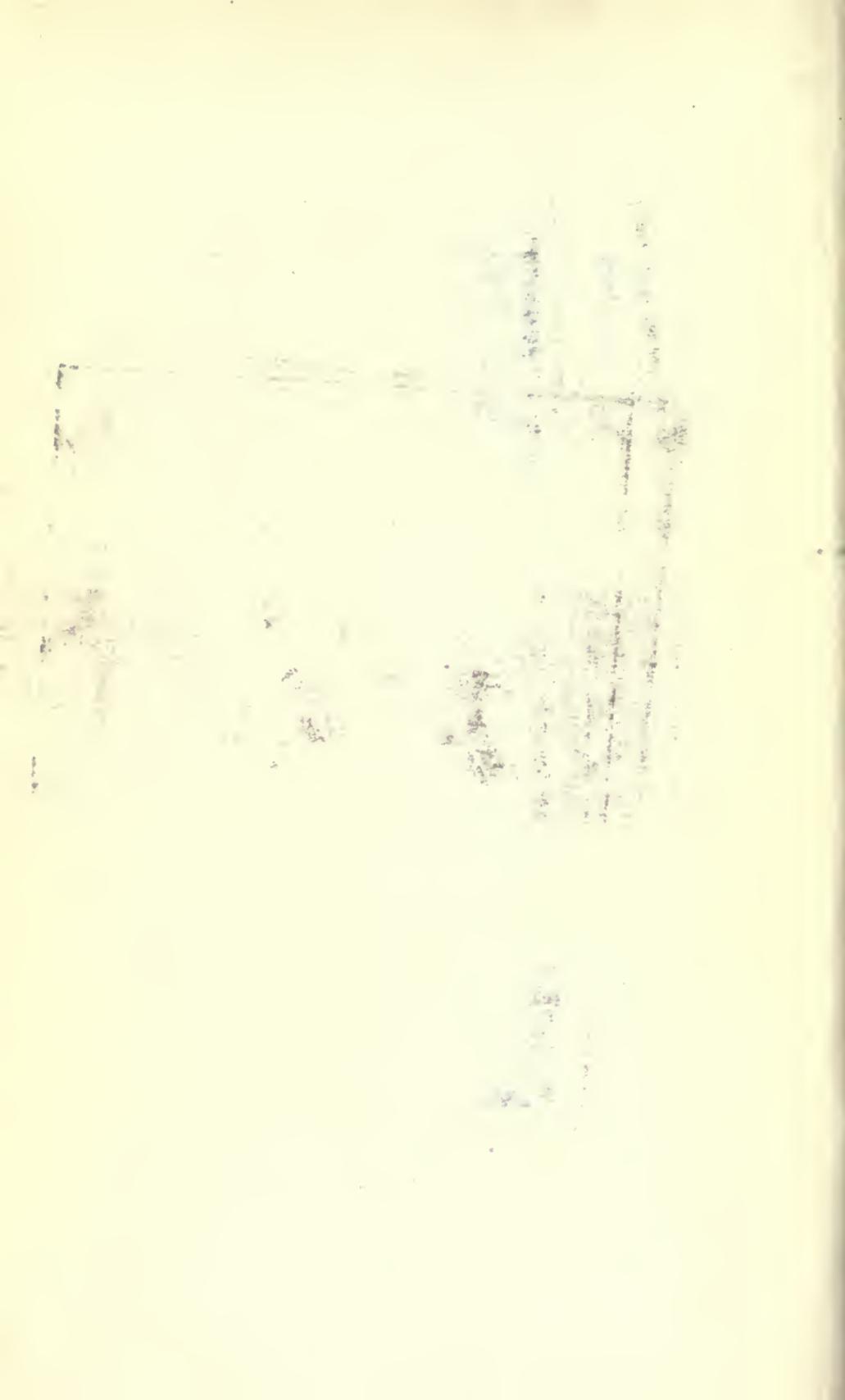
YUELL the Barn, a knight of Egypt,
3618, 4167. IUPELL, 3717.

ZEFERUS, King of Ermony. Called
also Yeferus, 2092.

ERRATUM.

p. 235, col. 2, line 12, under HUDE, *for* hue, colour, *read* hide.





PR Early English Text
1119 Society
A2 [Publications]
no.51 Original series. no. 51,55,70

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

